GAGE & CO'S
EDUCATIONAL
SERIES.

NEW CANADIAN READERS

BOOK V.

109

DISCARDED
FROM
LEGISLATIVE LIBRARY

W. J. Gage & Co.'s Educational Series.

THE

CANADIAN READERS

BOOK V.

Authorized for use in the Schools of Quebec.
Authorized for use in the Schools of Manitoba.
Authorized for use in the Schools of British Columbia.
Authorized for use in the Schools of North-west Territories.
Authorized for exclusive use in the Schools of Prince Edward Island.

W. J. GAGE & COMPANY,
TORONTO.

PROVINCIAL LIBRARY
VICTORIA, B. C.

B.C.
428.6
B862
v.5

HAUNTED BOOKSHOP
$1.50
AUG 27 '58

Entered, according to Act of Parliament, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture, in the year of our Lord 1883, by W. J. GAGE & Co., Toronto.

PREFACE.

In preparing the Fifth Book, the chief aim has been to give pupils an acquaintance with what is most interesting and most important in connection with the world, past and present. The past is seen in a series of some of the striking events of History, and in sketches of the lives of a few noble men. The present condition of the earth and its people is clearly given, both by description and by pictures, in the numerous articles on travel, by the three lessons based on Montgomery's Voyage Round the World, and by the instructive selections relating to fire and water in deciding the physical formation of the earth.

The pupil is introduced to social phenomena on a large scale; and he is placed in a position to begin to think rightly and clearly about them. For this reason, a prominent feature in the book is the life of human beings in large towns and cities. An article on the Social Aspects of Temperance has also been inserted; as it was felt that this question, to be fully understood, must be regarded as one of the influences which strongly affect society as at present constituted. This important subject has also been treated in its physiological relations — from the point of view of its effect on the nervous system, and the vital organs of the human body.

The poetical selections are such as cannot fail to have an elevating influence on the minds of the pupils. A number of poems, *printed as prose*, have been introduced into this volume. It is hoped that the teacher will find this exercise useful. The Editors have observed that the strongest tendency of the young pupil in reading is to be carried away by the metre, and to forget the emphasis, or sense-accent, in favor of the ictus, or verse-accent It is believed that these exercises will train him to prefer the sense to the sound, the thought to the rhythm, the reason to the rhyme, the emphasis to the mere accent; and that he will leave the metre and rhyme to take care of themselves, as in all English verse they can very well do.

206775

Selections from eminent Canadian writers, and articles relating to Canada, have been continued in this book.

The last of the articles on Hygiene has also been inserted.

The Exercises will, it is hoped, be found useful in many ways. A large variety has been intentionally given, that the teacher may be able to adapt the work to the different sections and ages of the classes, and that the pupils may be able to allow their minds free play over the forms of language. Great attention has been paid to working out the exact meaning of words and phrases. The Latin and Greek Derivatives at the end come in to close the series of Derivations. In the Fourth and Fifth Books, the learner has a pretty clear general view of the composition of the English language — in its Teutonic, Norman-French, and Latin and Greek elements. Armed with these, he will probably now be able to examine the nature of the different threads which exist in every ordinary English sentence.

The spacings, italics, cautions, and directions for reading the poetical extracts will, it is hoped, be very useful both to teachers and to pupils.

CONTENTS.

		PAGE
Municipal Government	*Sir Francis Hincks,*	9
The School System of Ontario		14
The Barmecide Feast	*From the "Arabian Nights,"*	17
The Day of Rest	*Lord Lytton*	23
Up with the Dawn	*Thomas Elliot*	24
Water Destroying and Fire Building up	*Sir John Herschel*	26
The White Ship	*Charles Dickens*	33
"He Never Smiled Again"	*Mrs. Hemans*	38
The Brave Man	*From the German of Bürger,*	40
Ingratitude		46
Magna Charta		50
The Battle of Morgarten		56
The Sailor's Life	*Barry Cornwall*	60
The Battle of Otterburn	*Sir Walter Scott*	61
Alcohol	*A. S. Day*	66
The Humble-bee	*R. W. Emerson*	73
The Battles of Cressy and Poitiers	*Dean Stanley*	76
Edwin and Paulinus — Conversion of Northumbria		86
The Life of Man	*Freeman*	88
Joan of Arc, the Maid of Orleans	*DeQuincey*	89
Self-sacrifice		98
A Bear-hunt	*Atkinson*	102
Nature her own Physician	*Crashaw*	107
Robert Bruce Victorious	*Sir Walter Scott*	108
An Iceberg	*Dana*	115
To a Waterfowl	*W. C. Bryant*	117
Method and its Advantages	*S. T. Coleridge*	119
Virtue	*Anonymous*	122
The Origin of Rivers	*Tyndall*	124
A Dinner in an Old Manor-house	*Longman*	127
Tropical Scenery	*Trollope*	130
The last Charge of the French at Waterloo,	*Sir W. Scott*	135
Thoroughness in Work	*Address by Mr. Walter, M. P.*	138
"I'll Find a Way, or Make It"	*Saxe*	140
The Character of Nelson	*Southey*	142
The Retreat from Moscow		147
Spring is Come	*William Allingham,*	150
The Death of Nelson	*Southey*	151
Trial and Execution of Marie Antoinette	*Carlyle*	156
Snow and Ice		161
Boiling Water, Hot Springs and Geysers		167
Great Cities — London		172
Consolation in Exile	*Shakespeare*	179

		PAGE
"You Will Repent It"	*DeQuincey*	181
Great Cities — Rome		185
Political Power	*George Eliot*	195
Great Cities — Paris		200
A Forest Scene	*Matthew Arnold*	208
Character of Sir Walter Scott	*Lockhart*	210
The Spanish Armada	*J. R. Green*	215
The Spanish Armada	*Lord Macaulay*	222
Great Cities — Berlin		230
A Voyage Round the World. Part I.		234
The Skylark	*James Hogg*	246
The Castle by the Sea	*Uhland (translated by Longfellow)*	247
The Forests of the Amazons		248
Kilmeny	*James Hogg*	253
The Social Aspects of Temperance		255
The Power of Short Words	*Rev. J. A. Alexander*	261
Rosabelle	*Sir W. Scott*	262
A Brave Sailor	*Dickens*	265
The Ferry	*Ludwig Uhland*	269
Great Cities — St. Petersburg		270
The Suez Canal	*Sterne*	278
Contentment		282
A Voyage Round the World. Part II.		285
Night	*Robert Southey*	295
The Gentleman	*Chaucer*	296
Battle of Waterloo	*Sir W. Scott*	296
Incidents of the Battle	*Creasy*	303
A Winter Day in the Arctic Regions	*Osborn*	312
The Lost Expedition with Franklin	*Hood*	317
Great Cities — Vienna		318
One by One		325
The Battle of Hohenlinden		326
Heroism and Discipline		330
The Rabbi and His Children		336
A Voyage Round the World. Part III.		340
The Land We Live In	*T. D. McGee*	351
Sunset	*Ruskin*	356
"Till the Doctor Comes"	*Dr. McLaughlin*	356
Canadian Confederation	*Sir John A. Macdonald,*	362
American Fugitive Slave-Bill	*Hon. George Brown,*	368
Gems from Great Authors		372
Foreign Elements in the English Language		374

MUNICIPAL GOVERNMENT.

Appropria'tions, portions set apart for particular purposes (Lat. *ad*, and *proprius*, one's own).
Aver'sion, a dislike.
Contin'gent, happening by chance; or dependent on something else.
Essen'tial, necessary, very important.
Exec'utive, those appointed to carry out the acts of Parliament.
Expe'dient, fit, proper, convenient.
Mod'ified, changed in form.
Muni'cipal, belonging to a public corporation (Lat. *munia*, official duties, and *capere*, to take, whence *municipium*, a free town).
Or'dinance, a decree, law, or rule.
Pri'or, previous.
Tena'city, the power of holding fast; obstinacy.

1. The establishment of municipal institutions is coeval with the union of Upper and Lower Canada, in 1841. Prior to that event, there was no machinery whatever in Lower Canada for collecting local taxes, while in Upper Canada the magistrates in Quarter Sessions were empowered to levy rates for defraying certain contingent expenses of the administration of justice, and some other charges, among which was included the sessional payment to the representatives of the people, popularly known as "members' wages."

2. The expenditure on the public roads, beyond what was provided for by statute labor, was annually voted by Parliament, and placed in the hands of commissioners named in the acts by which the appropriations were made. It is a singular circumstance, and well worthy of being recorded, that no efforts were made by the

representatives of the people, prior to the union, in either of the Provinces, to procure the establishment of municipal institutions. 3. In the report of the Earl of Durham, who was sent to Canada in 1838, as a High Commissioner, to inquire into the political institutions of the two Provinces, and to suggest remedies for the existing dissatisfaction, the establishment of municipal institutions was strongly recommended; and when Mr. Poulett Thompson (afterwards Lord Sydenham) was appointed Lord Durham's successor, in order to carry out his Lordship's recommendations that the Provinces should be united, he advised that provision should be made in the Act of Union for establishing municipal institutions. 4. So strong was the aversion at that time on the part of the people of Lower Canada to local taxation, that when the Municipal Council clauses were struck out of the bill for uniting the Provinces which was sent to England by Governor-General Thompson, it was deemed essential by that statesman to procure the enactment by the Special Council of an ordinance establishing those institutions in Lower Canada. It was, moreover, deemed expedient, in order to insure the practical working of the system, that the various executive officers, such as the Warden, Treasurer, and Clerk, should be appointed by the Governor, because it was apprehended that, if those officers were made elective, the ordinance would be a dead letter.

5. When the united Parliament met in 1841, the Government was most anxious, not only to extend the municipal system to Upper Canada, but also to procure the assent of an elected House of Assembly to the system which had been established in Lower Canada by an ordinance of the Special Council. The difficulties of the situation were very great. The first session of

the first Parliament opened with a political crisis, which had no connection whatever with the question of municipal institutions, although it had a most important bearing on the course taken in regard to that measure by the political parties. 6. Whatever may be the opinion formed as to the details of the municipal ordinance for Lower Canada, it must be acknowledged that it would have been difficult for the government which had procured its enactment to have introduced a more liberal system in Upper Canada than had been established in the sister Province. The municipal bill for Upper Canada was, therefore, substantially the same as the Lower Canada ordinance, and it soon became evident that a formidable opposition would be met with. In both Upper and Lower Canada there were many members who were strongly opposed to the introduction of municipal institutions, and yet these members did not belong to the same political party; indeed, there has been no period since 1841 when parties were so disorganized as during that first session. 7. The Conservative party, whose recognized leader was Sir Allan Macnab, was opposed altogether to the introduction of municipal institutions. The Lower Canadians had no desire to sanction a measure which had been forced on them by the Special Council, and the consequence of which would be the introduction of direct taxation, such as the Upper Canadians had long been subject to. The Upper Canadian Liberals, who followed the leadership of Mr. Baldwin, grounded their opposition on the provisions made in the bill for the appointment of municipal officers by the Executive. 8. The members of the government soon gave notice to the House, that if the bill were altered in any important particular it would be withdrawn, and this announcement led those

members who were strongly convinced of the importance of establishing municipal government to lend their aid to procure the passage of the bill, believing, as they avowed, that it was more prudent to trust to future amendments to the system than to risk the consequences of its rejection. 9. The contest was a severe one, a most important clause having been carried in committee of the whole only by the casting vote of the chairman. The Upper Canada bill, like the ordinance, provided only for county municipalities, which were successfully organized during the recess. These were worked with tolerable success until the complete remodelling of the system, in 1849, by the late Hon. Robert Baldwin, who framed the one which still exists, modified to suit the requirements of the people, and which was characterized many years ago by an impartial writer as "a monument of labor and wisdom." 10. In that bill the organization of townships as municipal bodies was first provided for, and it was characteristic of Mr. Baldwin that he adhered with great tenacity to the designation of "Reeve" for the President of the Township Council, although there was a very great desire, even among his own supporters, to adopt a more familiar name. Whatever improvements may have been made in the municipal system in modern times, the main feature of Mr. Baldwin's act have been adhered to, and are not likely to be disturbed in the future.

Sir Francis Hincks.

NOTES.

1. Sir Francis Hincks was born in Cork, Ireland, in 1807. After receiving a good education in the Royal Belfast Institution he came to push his fortunes in Canada. His aptitude for finance brought him under the notice of prominent public men, and led to his being elected at an early age to Parliament. He was shortly afterwards made Inspector General, —as the Minister of

Finance was then called, — a position he filled again in 1869–70 for the Dominion. He took an active part in the agitation for responsible government, and was a far-seeing and earnest promoter of railway projects at a time when few believed in them. He filled for some years the governorship of Barbadoes and of British Guiana, but retired into private life in 1873.

2. The "magistrates" referred to as having formerly the right to levy rates in Ontario were the ordinary justices of the peace appointed by the government. The magistrates of each district met, or held a "session," once every three months, for the transaction of business, and hence these meetings came to be called "Quarter Sessions." The chairman was the judge of the county, and he still holds what are called "General Sessions of the Peace," though at these sittings other magistrates are seldom present as his associates. The "Sessions" are now held for the trial of persons charged with minor crimes.

3. The sum paid to members of Parliament is now regarded, not as wages for services rendered, but as compensation for loss of time and for expenses incurred during the sessions of the legislature. The name given to it is "sessional indemnity."

4. "Statute labor" is prescribed in Ontario by act of Parliament, each male person between twenty-one and sixty being required to work two days in each year on the public highway, if he is not assessed for property. If he is so assessed, the amount of statute labor required is graduated according to the amount of his assessment.

5. "Reeve" — an old English word signifying "steward," or "governor" — is the name given to the chairman of a township council: "sheriff" (*shire-reeve*) is from the same root.

6. "Warden," from an old Germanic word through the French *wardein*, modern French *gardien*, a "guardian," or "keeper," is the title of the chairman of the County Council.

7. The "Special Council" was a body created by an act of the Imperial Parliament, which suspended the representative constitution granted to Lower Canada in 1791. The members of the "Special Council" were appointed by the government, half of them being French and half English. One of their first ordinances decreed the suspension of the Habeas Corpus Act, in order that the rebels of 1837 might be more summarily dealt with. The Council, as a substitute for a Parliament, lasted from 1838 to 1840.

THE SCHOOL SYSTEM OF ONTARIO.

Defect'ive, wanting in some quality or part.
Details', minor parts.
Expe'diency, desirableness.
Instrumental'ity, agency.
Legisla'tive, set apart by act of Parliament.
Machin'ery, the means for carrying on work.
Organiza'tion, a plan or arrangement for government; a regularly formed society.
Portfo'lio, a case for holding loose papers; the office of a minister of state.
Remod'el, to fashion anew.
Sal'ary, wages; literally, money for salt (Latin *sal*, salt).

1. The present admirable school system of Ontario dates back to 1844, the year in which the late Rev. Dr Ryerson was appointed Chief Superintendent of Education for Upper Canada. Previous to that time the Province had a very defective municipal organization, and no systematic provision whatever for the establishment and maintenance of public schools. 2. From 1844 to 1848 the Chief Superintendent was employed in acquiring a knowledge of the systems of public instruction in the United States and England, and in devising one based upon and adapted to the defective municipal system then in force. In 1849 the remodelling of the latter system afforded an opportunity for improving the educational machinery, and an act of Parliament making the necessary changes was passed in 1850. In this act were embodied the principles on which the school system of Ontario is still based, any changes made since that time having been rather in the details than in the general features of the system.

3. The most important modification of all took place when, on the retirement of Dr. Ryerson, in 1876, from the position of Chief Superintendent, the administration

of the Department of Education was transferred to a member of the Executive Council of the Province. The first Minister placed in charge of the portfolio of Education was the Hon. Adam Crooks, of whom, in his farewell circular to the teachers, Dr. Ryerson says: "In my retirement I shall have the satisfaction of knowing that the honorable gentleman who succeeds me, with the rank and title of Minister of Education, is animated by the warmest zeal, and possesses much higher qualifications and greater power than I have been able to command, to advance your interests and promote the sound and universal education of our beloved country."

4. Amongst the causes which have chiefly contributed to the marked success of the educational system of Ontario, its removal as far as possible from the conflict of political parties is one of the most important. While members of all parties have been active in its support and interested in its improvement, there never has been any organization banded together in hostility to it.

Equally important is the practice — which was adopted at the outset, and constantly adhered to — of consulting the people from time to time about changes which seemed to be desirable. No important alteration has been made in the school law since 1850 without the people of the Province having first been directly consulted, and afforded an opportunity of expressing their opinion on the expediency of the proposed changes. 5. From the outset the purpose has been kept steadily in view of making the school system popular, that is, not merely acceptable to the people, but supported and controlled by them. The means of doing this to the fullest extent has been found in the municipal organization of the Province. Through its instrumentality the taxes for school purposes are collected,

and the annual legislative grant is distributed. By means of this latter grant, and in other ways, it has been steadily impressed upon the people that the school system is their own, that the chief part of its cost must be provided by themselves, and that any assistance afforded them will be in direct proportion to what they do on their own behalf. In this way there has been fostered a spirit and a habit of self-reliance which are quite as valuable as the educational ends more directly achieved.

6. As the result of the enlightened management of a good system the educational progress of the Province has been extremely rapid. Between 1844 and 1880 the number of public-school teachers increased from 2,706 to 6,747, and the sum paid them in salaries from $206,000 to $1,701,870. The amount paid each year by the Province to promote education is $250,000, and the total sum expended on the schools, $2,822,051. All of this latter amount, except what comes from the Province, is raised by taxation imposed by the people on themselves.

7. The school law of Ontario makes provision for other than public schools. The adherents of the Roman Catholic Church are permitted under certain conditions to establish separate schools, and those who contribute to their support are free from public-school taxation. Provision is also made by law for the establishment of separate schools for the children of the colored population, which is quite numerous in certain localities that became a resort for runaway slaves before the negroes were emancipated in the United States. And, lastly, provision is made by law for the establishment of secondary schools, known as "High Schools," in which pupils can obtain an advanced education in English,

mathematics, science, and languages, both ancient and modern. These High Schools, over one hundred in number, form a connecting link between the public schools and the colleges and universities.

NOTES.

1. Rev. Dr. Ryerson was born in the county of Norfolk, Ontario, in 1803. His father fought in the British service during the Revolutionary war, and as a U. E. Loyalist had to take refuge in Canada. Dr. Ryerson received as good a preliminary education as the country then afforded, and after teaching a short time entered the ministry of the Methodist Church. In 1829 he became editor of the *Christian Guardian*, and in 1840 was chosen the first President of Victoria College, Cobourg. This position he gave up on receiving the appointment of Chief Superintendent of Education. After a long and useful life he died in 1882.

2. Hon. Adam Crooks, the first Minister of Education for the Province of Ontario, was born in the county of Wentworth, in 1827. He was educated at Upper Canada College and at the University of Toronto, graduating with the highest honors of his year in classics and metaphysics. He entered the legal profession, and had won in it a high position when he began his public life, in 1871. He has filled successively the offices of Attorney-General, Treasurer, and Minister of Education, for his native Province, and all of them alike efficiently.

THE BARMECIDE FEAST.

Ab′solute, complete.
Acquit′ted himself, conducted himself.
Address′, cleverness.
Appre′ciation, power of setting the true value on.
A profound′ rev′erence, a deep bow.
Dessert′, dishes of fruit, etc., brought in after dinner.
Out′rage, act of violence.
Reclin′ing, resting.

The following story is taken from the "Arabian Nights' Entertainments," a collection of stories which illustrate the habits, manners, and customs of the people in the East, and which are full of the most incredible marvels, such as are still gravely told in Asia Minor, Turkey, and

other Mohammedan countries. This is the story which has given origin to the phrase, *a Barmecide feast*. The Barmecides were descendants of Barmec, a very able adviser of the Caliph or ruler of all the Mohammedans; he was also tutor, and afterwards vizier (or prime minister) to the great Haroun-al Raschid (about A.D. 800). His descendants were wealthy, and renowned for their wit and wisdom; and it is of one of them that the following story is told.

1. My sixth brother was called Schacabac, the hare-lipped, who, by reverse of fortune, was reduced to the necessity of begging his bread. In this occupation he acquitted himself with great address, his chief aim being, through bribing the officers and domestics, to procure admission into the houses of the great, and, by thus having access to their persons, to excite their compassion.

2. By this means he one day gained admission to a magnificent building, in which, luxuriously reclining on a sofa, in a room richly furnished, he found the master, a Barmecide, who, in the most obliging manner, thus addressed him: —

"Welcome to my house. What dost thou wish, my friend?"

Schacabac. "I am in great want. I suffer from hunger, and have nothing to eat."

3. The Barmecide was much astonished at this answer. "What!" he cried. "What! Nothing to eat! Am I in the city, and thou in it hungry? It is a thing I cannot endure. Thou shalt be happy as heart can wish. Thou must stay and partake of my salt. Whatever I have is thine."

Schac. "O my master! I have not patience to wait, for I am in a state of extreme hunger. I have eaten nothing this day."

Barm. "What! is it true that even at this late hour thou hast not broken thy fast? Alas! poor man, he will die with hunger. Hallo there, boy! bring us

instantly a basin of water, that we may wash our hands."

4. Although no boy appeared, and my brother observed neither basin nor water, the Barmecide nevertheless began to rub his hands, as if some one held the water for him, and while he was doing this he urged my brother to do the same. Schacabac by this supposed that the Barmecide was fond of fun; and, as he liked a jest himself, he approached and pretended to wash his hands, and afterwards to wipe them with a napkin held by the attendant.

Barm. "Now bring us something to eat, and take care not to keep us waiting. Set the table here. Now lay the dishes on it. Come, my friend, sit down at the table here. Eat, my friend, and be not ashamed; for thou art hungry, and I know how thou art suffering from the violence of thy hunger."

5. Saying these words, although nothing had been brought to eat, he began as if he had taken something on his plate, and pretended to put it into his mouth and chew it; adding, "Eat, I beg of thee; for a hungry man, thou seemest to have but a poor appetite. What thinkest thou of this bread?"

Schac. (*Aside.*) "Verily this is a man that loveth to jest with others. (*To the Barmecide.*) O my master, never in my life have I seen bread more beautifully white than this, or of sweeter taste. Where didst thou procure it?"

Barm. "It was made by a female slave of mine, whom I purchased for five hundred pieces of gold. (*Calling aloud.*) Boy! bring to us the dish the like of which is not found among the viands of kings. Eat, O my guest! for thou art hungry, — vehemently so, and in absolute want of food."

Schac. (*Twisting his mouth about as if eating heartily.*) "Verily this is a dish worthy the table of the great Solomon."

Barm. "Eat on, my friend. Boy! place before us the lamb fattened with almonds. Now, this is a dish never found but at my table, and I wish thee to eat thy fill of it."

6. As he said this, the Barmecide pretended to take a piece in his hand and put it to my brother's mouth. Schacabac held his head forward, opened his mouth, pretended to take the piece, and to chew and swallow it with the greatest delight.

Schac. O my master, verily this dish hath not its equal in sweetness of flavor."

Barm. "Do justice to it, I pray, and eat more of it. The goose, too, is very fat. Try only a leg and a wing. Hallo, boy, bring us a fresh supply."

Schac. "O, no, by no means; for in truth, my lord, I cannot eat any more."

Barm. "Let the dessert, then, be served, and the fruit brought. Taste these dates; they are just gathered, and very good. Here, too, are some fine walnuts, and here some delicious raisins. Eat, and be not ashamed."

7. My brother's jaws were by this time weary of chewing nothing. "I assure thee," said he, "I am so full that I cannot eat another morsel of this cheer."

Barm. "Well, then, we will now have the wine. Boy, bring us the wine! Here, my friend, take this cup; it will delight thee. Come, drink my health, and tell me if thou thinkest the wine good."

But the wine, like the dinner and dessert, did not appear. However, he pretended to pour some out, and drank the first glass, after which he poured out another for his guest.

8. My brother took the imaginary glass, and, first holding it up to the light to see if it was of a good bright color, he put it to his nose to examine the perfume; then, making a profound reverence to the Barmecide, he drank it off with marks of intense appreciation.

The Barmecide continued to pour out one bumper after another so frequently that Schacabac, pretending that the wine had got into his head, feigned to be tipsy. This being the case, he raised his fist, and gave the Barmecide such a violent blow that he knocked him down.

9. *Barm.* (*Very angry.*) "What means this, thou vilest of the creation? Art thou mad?"

Schac. "O my master, thou hast fed me with thy

provisions, and treated me with old wine; and I have become intoxicated, and committed an outrage upon thee. But thou art of too exalted dignity to be angry with me for my ignorance."

10. He had hardly finished this speech before the Barmecide burst into laughter. "Come," said he, "I have long been looking for a man of thy character. Come, we shall now be friends. Thou hast kept up the jest in pretending to eat; now thou shalt make my house thy home, and eat in earnest."

Having said this, he clapped his hands. Several slaves instantly appeared, whom he ordered to set out the table and serve the dinner. His commands were quickly obeyed, and my brother now enjoyed the reality of what he had before partaken only in idea.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a short composition on "A Barmecide Feast" from the following heads: (1) A hungry man obtains admission into the house of a Barmecide. (2) The Barmecide pretends to invite him to dinner. (3) The courses set before the hungry man. (4) Wine; its pretended effect, and what it led to. (5) Explanation. (6) The Barmecide's conduct afterwards.

2. Explain the following phrases: (1) He acquitted himself with great address. (2) By reverse of fortune. (3) This dish hath not its equal in sweetness of flavor. (4) He made a profound reverence. (5) I committed an outrage upon thee. (6) My brother now enjoyed the reality of what he had before partaken only in idea.

3. Learn to parse all the words in the following sentence: The Barmecide began to rub his hands with great delight.

4. Analyze the above sentence.

5. Select from section 4 all the words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used. (Such as *water*, *hold*, etc.)

6. Give the verbs or the adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *occupation*, *admission*, *access*, *magnificence*, *description*, *patience*, *pretence*, *continuance*, *obedience*.

7. With each of the first six words mentioned in the foregoing exercise, make a sentence illustrating its proper use.

8. Learn the spelling of the following words, and notice where *au* is used, and where *aw* : —

Author	Hawthorn	Sausage	Mawkish
Gaudy	Tawdry	Saucer	Sawyer
Pauper	Lawyer	Faulty	Tawny
Auction	Awkward	August	Awful

NOTES.— *Tawdry* is a contraction of *St. Awdry* (short form for *Etheldrida*). At St. Awdry, in the isle of Ely, a kind of lace, called "Sin Tawdry's lace," was sold.— *Pauper* is a pure Latin word for *poor*.— *Auction* comes from the Latin *augeo*, [*auctum*], I increase; which also gives *Aug-ust* and *auctumn-us*, the season of increase.— *Sausage* comes from *salsus*, salted; hence, too, *sauce*.

9. Write down all the words you can remember descriptive of *dinner*.

THE DAY OF REST.

Fresh glides the brook and blows the gale,
  Yet yonder halts the quiet mill;
The whirring wheel, the rushing sail,
  How motionless and still!

Six days stern Labor shuts the poor
  From Nature's care-free banquet-hall;
The seventh, an Angel opes the door,
  And, smiling, welcomes all!

Lord Lytton.

UP WITH THE DAWN.

Brawn'y, stout and muscular.
Grap'ple, to seize and struggle with.
Joc'und, merry, cheerful.
Lep'rosy, an incurable, contagious disease, marked by inflamed spots covered with whitish scales.
Prime, highest point of excellence.
Trav'erse, to cross.
Ty'rant, oppressor.

1. Up with the dawn, ye sons of toil!
And bare the brawny arm,
To drive the harnessed team afield,
And till the fruitful farm;

To dig the mine for hidden wealth;
Or make the woods to ring
With swinging axe, and steady stroke,
To fell the forest king; —

2. With ocean car and iron steed
To traverse land and sea,
And spread our commerce round the globe,
As wind that wanders free.
Subdue the earth and conquer fate,
Outspeed the flight of time:
Old earth is rich, and man is young,
Nor near his jocund prime.

3. Work! and the clouds of care will fly;
Pale want will pass away.
Work! and the leprosy of crime
And tyrants must decay.
Leave the dead ages in their urns:*
The present time be ours,
To grapple bravely with our lot,
And strew our path with flowers.

Thomas Elliot.

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1. — Line 1: Take care not to place the accent upon *with*. Line 6: Make the words *to ring* run into the next line.

VERSE 3. — Line 1: Do not accent *and*. Line 2: *Pale* must be as strongly accented as *want*. Line 5: Do not accent *the*. Hurry on to the emphatic word *dead*. Line 7: Avoid the verse-accent on *with*, and make *with-our-lot* one word.

* It was the custom among the ancient Romans to burn the bodies of the dead, and place the ashes in a vase or urn, which was kept in the house of the dead man's relatives.

WATER DESTROYING AND FIRE BUILDING UP.

Antag'onism, opposition.
Concep'tion, notion, idea.
Cone, a round, solid, pointed figure like a sugar-loaf.
Convul'sion, a violent and sudden movement.
Cube, a solid square.
Cur'rent, a body of water (or air) moving in a certain direction.
Demonstra'tion, proof.
Es'timate, calculate.
Geol'ogy, the science which deals with the structure of the earth; from the Greek *ge*, the earth, and *logos*, a discourse.
Insignif'icance, unimportance.
Nep'tune, the Roman god of the sea.
Pre'cipice, a very steep place; Lat. *præceps*, headlong.
Sound'ing, a measuring of the depth of water by means of a line and plummet.
Volca'no, a burning mountain; from the Latin *Vulcanus*, the god of fire.

1. We see everywhere, along every coast line, the sea warring against the land, and everywhere over-

coming it; wearing and eating it down, and battering it to pieces; grinding those pieces to powder, carrying that powder away, and spreading it out over the ocean-floor, by the continued effect of the tides and currents. Look at the chalk cliffs, which once, no doubt, extended across the English Channel to the similar cliffs on the French coast. 2. What do we see? Precipices cut down to the sea-beach, constantly hammered by the waves, and constantly crumbling; the beach itself made of the flints still remaining after the softer chalk has been ground down and washed away; and the flints in their turn gradually grinding one another under the same ceaseless discipline, — first rounded into pebbles, then worn into sand, and then carried out farther and farther, to be replaced by fresh ones from the same source.

3. Well, the same thing is going on *everywhere, round every coast* of Europe, Asia, Africa, and America. Foot by foot, or inch by inch, month by month, or century by century, down everything *must go*. Time is as nothing in geology. And what the sea is doing the rivers are helping it to do. 4. Look at the sandbanks at the mouth of rivers. What are they but the materials of the land carried out to sea by the streams? The Ganges carries away from the soil of India, and delivers into the sea, twice as much solid substance *weekly* as is contained in the great pyramid of Egypt.[1] The Irrawaddi sweeps off from Burmah an average of 62 cubic feet of earth in every second of time, and there are 86,400 seconds in every day, and 365 days in every year; and other rivers have a like effect. 5. What has become of all that great bed of chalk which once covered all the weald of Kent,[2] and formed a continuous mass from Ramsgate and Dover to Beechy Head, run-

ning inland to Madamscourt Hill and Sevenoaks? All clean gone, and swept out into the bosom of the Atlantic, and there forming other chalk-beds. 6. Now, geology assures us, on the most conclusive and undeniable evidence, that ALL our present land, all our continents and islands, have been formed in this way out of the ruins of former ones. The old ones which existed at the beginning of things have all perished, and what we now stand upon has most assuredly been at one time or other, perhaps many times, the bottom of the sea.

7. Well, then, there is power enough at work, and it has been at work long enough, utterly to have cleared away and spread over the bed of the sea all our present existing continents and islands, had they been placed where they are at the creation of the world. From this it follows, as clear as demonstration can make it, that, without *some* process of renovation or restoration to act in antagonism to this destructive work of old Neptune, there would not now be remaining a foot of dry land for a living thing to stand upon.

8. Now, what *is* this process of restoration? Let the volcano and the earthquake tell their tale. Let the earthquake tell how, within the memory of man, in the presence of eyewitnesses, — one of whom (Mrs. Graham) has described the fact, — the whole coast-line of Chili, for about one hundred miles around Valparaiso, with the mighty chain of the Andes, — mountains compared with which the Alps shrink into insignificance, — was suddenly raised (in a single night, November 19, 1822) from two to seven feet above its former level, leaving the beach *below* the old low-water mark high and dry; leaving the shell-fish sticking on the rocks out of reach of water; leaving the sea-weed rotting in the air, or

rather drying up to dust under the burning sun of a coast where rain seldom falls. 9. The ancients had a fable that Titan[3] was hurled from heaven and buried under Ætna, where his struggles caused the earthquakes

AN ACTIVE VOLCANO.

that desolated Sicily. But here we have an exhibition of Titanic forces on a far mightier scale. One of the Andes upheaved on this occasion was the gigantic mass of Aconcagua, which overlooks Valparaiso. To bring home to the mind the conception of such an effort, we

must form a clear idea what sort of mountain this is. It is nearly 24,000 feet in height. 10. Chimborazo, the loftiest of the volcanic cones of the Andes, is lower by 2,500 feet; and yet Ætna, with Vesuvius at the top of it, and another Vesuvius piled on that, *would little more than surpass the midway height of the snow-covered portion of that cone*, which is one of the many chimneys by which the hidden fires of the Andes find vent. On the occasion I am speaking of, at least 10,000 square miles of country were estimated as having been upheaved; and the upheaval was not confined to the land, but extended far away to sea, which was proved by the soundings off Valparaiso and along the coast having been found considerably shallower than they were before the shock.

11. Again, in the year 1819, during an earthquake in India, in the district of Cutch, bordering on the Indus, a tract of country more than fifty miles long and sixteen broad was suddenly raised ten feet above its former level. The raised portion still stands up above the unraised, like a long perpendicular wall, which is known by the name of the "Ullah Bund," or "God's Wall." And again, in 1538, in that convulsion which threw up the Monte Nuovo (New Mountain), a cone of ashes 450 feet high, in a single night, the whole coast of Pozzuoli, near Naples, was raised twenty feet above its former level, and so remains, permanently upheaved, to this day. Innumerable other instances of the same kind could be readily mentioned.

12. Thus, then, is the manner in which the earthquake does its work, — *and it is always at work*. Somewhere or other in the world there is perhaps not a day, certainly not a month, without an earthquake. In those districts of South and Central America where the great

chain of volcanic cones is situated, — Chimborazo, Cotopaxi, and a long list with names unmentionable, or at least unpronounceable, — the inhabitants no more think of counting earthquake shocks than we do of counting showers of rain. Indeed, in some places along that coast a shower is a greater rarity. Even in Great Britain, near Perth,[4] a year seldom passes without a shock, — happily, within the records of history, never powerful enough to do any mischief.

Sir John Herschel (abridged).

NOTES.

1. The pyramids are huge, broad-based structures, sloping off to a point. Those of Egypt, some of which are over four thousand years old, were intended as tombs for the kings. The highest reaches an elevation of four hundred and eighty feet, and covers a space of seven hundred and sixty-four feet square. See page 291.

2. Weald is another form of the words *wood* and *wold*. That part of Kent and Sussex which is now called the Weald was in early English times a forest, stretching for 120 miles along the northern frontier of the South-Saxon kingdom.

3. The Titans were the ancient gods of Greece, who were supposed to have been destroyed by Jupiter or Zeus.

4. In the neighborhood of Comrie, in Perthshire.

SUMMARY.

1. The sea is constantly wearing away the land, and carrying it down into the bed of the sea. 2. The rivers help the sea to do this. 3. The Irrawaddi sweeps off from Burmah 62 cubic feet of earth every second. 4. The restorative powers are the volcano and the earthquake. 5. A hundred miles of the whole coast of Chili was raised in the night of November 19, 1822, from two to seven feet above its old level. 6. Along with the coast-line, the peak of Aconcagua, 24,000 feet high, was also upheaved. 7. On the same occasion 10,000 square miles of land were upheaved. 8. In the year 1819, 800 square miles of country in Cutch were raised by an earthquake ten feet above the former level. 9. In 1538 the coast of Italy, near Naples,

was raised twenty feet above its old level. 10. The earthquake, like the sea and the rivers, is always at work.

Composition. — Write a short paper on the contents of this lesson from the following heads: 1. The land constantly worn down. 2. The materials carried out to sea. 3. Chalk cliffs of England. 4. Action of rivers, with illustrations. 5. Means of restoring the land. 6. The Chili earthquake. 7. The earthquake of 1819. 8. Monte Nuovo. 9. Volcanic fire always at work.

Exercises. — 1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: There is hardly an instance of an active volcano at any considerable distance from the sea-coast.

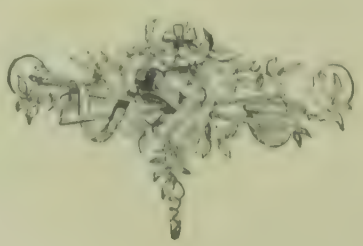
2. Analyze the above.

3. Select, from section 12, words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used.

4. Write in columns, with definitions, a number of words, some descriptive of the earth, others of the sea; also a number of compound or derivative words, some of *earth*, others of *sea*.

5. Distinguish the meaning of *soil*, *mass*, *chain*, *ashes*, *substance*, in the following pairs of sentences: (1) The *soil* of Egypt is fertilized by the overflowing Nile. Be careful not to *soil* the silk. (2) The Catholic soldiers go to *mass*. What a *mass* of useful facts the book contains. (3) The great *chain* of the Andes runs from north to south of South America. What a *chain* of evidence. (4) Here lies the *ashes* of the dead. Vesuvius threw out a great shower of *ashes*. (5) He was a man of *substance*. Write out the *substance* of the lecture.

Also indicate any connection in meaning between the words *soil*, etc., etc., in the various pairs of sentences.



THE WHITE SHIP.

Exhaust'ed, worn out.
Liege, lord; originally a lord of a free band (from a German word meaning *free*).
Main'-yard, the largest cross spar on a ship's mainmast.
Ret'inue, set of followers or attendants.

Henry the First was the youngest son of William the Conqueror. He had to go to Normandy on business: for, though he was King of England, he was still Duke of Normandy. He was, in fact, much more at home in

Normandy, and was much more of a Norman than he was an Englishman. Indeed, he could not be called an Englishman at all, either by birth or in language. He reigned from 1100 to 1135.

1. King Henry I. went over to Normandy with his son, Prince William, and a great retinue, to have the prince acknowledged as his successor by the Norman nobles, and to contract the promised marriage between him and the daughter of the Count of Anjou. Both these things were done with great show and rejoicing; and the whole company prepared to embark for home.

2. When all was ready, there came to the king Fitz-Stephen, a sea-captain, who said: "My liege, my father served your father all his life upon the sea. He steered the ship with the golden boy upon the prow, in which your father sailed to conquer England. I beseech you to grant me the same office. I have a fair vessel in the harbor here, called the White Ship,[1] manned by fifty sailors of renown. I pray you, sire, to let your servant have the honor of steering you to England."

3. "I am sorry, friend," replied the king, "that my vessel is already chosen, and that I cannot therefore sail with the son of the man who served my father. But the prince, with all his company, shall go along with you in the fair White Ship, manned by the fifty sailors of renown."

4. An hour or two afterwards the king set sail in the vessel he had chosen, accompanied by other vessels, and sailing all night with a fair and gentle wind arrived upon the coast of England in the morning. While it was yet night, the people in some of the king's ships heard a faint wild cry come over the sea, and wondered what it was.

5. Prince William went aboard the White Ship with one hundred and forty youthful nobles like himself,

among whom were eighteen noble ladies of the highest rank. All this gay company, with their servants and the fifty sailors, made three hundred souls.

"Give three casks of wine, Fitz-Stephen," said the prince, "to the fifty sailors of renown. My father the king has sailed out of the harbor. What time is there to make merry here, and yet reach England with the rest?"

6. "Prince," said Fitz-Stephen, "before morning my fifty and the White Ship shall overtake the swiftest vessel in attendance on your father, if we sail at midnight."

Then the prince commanded to make merry, and the sailors drank out the three casks of wine; and the prince and all the noble company danced in the moonlight on the deck of the White Ship.

7. When, at last, she shot out of the harbor of Barfleur,[2] there was not a sober seaman on board. But the sails were all set, and the oars all going merrily, Fitz-Stephen himself at the helm.

The gay young nobles, and the beautiful ladies, wrapped up in mantles of various bright colors to protect them from the cold, talked, and laughed, and sang. The prince encouraged the fifty sailors to row harder yet, for the honor of the White Ship.

8. Crash! a terrific cry broke from three hundred hearts. It was the cry the people in the distant vessels of the king heard faintly on the water. The White Ship had struck upon a rock and was going down!

Fitz-Stephen hurried the prince into a boat with some few nobles. "Push off," he whispered, "and row to the land. It is not far off, and the sea is smooth. The rest of us must die."

9. But as they rowed away fast from the sinking ship the prince heard the voice of his sister Marie

calling for help. He never in his life had been so good as he was then. He cried, in an agony, "Row back at any risk! I cannot bear to leave her!"

They rowed back. As the prince held out his arms to catch his sister, such numbers leaped in that the boat was upset. And in the same instant the White Ship went down.

10. Only two men floated, — a nobleman named Godrey, and Berold, a poor butcher of Rouen. They both clung to the main-yard of the ship, which had broken from the mast, and now supported them.

By-and-by another man came swimming towards them, whom they knew, when he pushed aside his long wet hair, to be Fitz-Stephen. When he heard that the prince and all his retinue had gone down, Fitz-Stephen, with a ghastly face, cried, "Woe, woe to me!" and sank to the bottom.

11. The other two clung to the yard for some hours. At length the young noble said, faintly, "I am exhausted and chilled with the cold, and can hold on no longer. Farewell, good friend! God preserve you!" So he dropped and sank; and, of all the brilliant crowd, the poor butcher of Rouen alone was saved. In the morning some fishermen saw him floating in his sheepskin coat, and got him into their boat, — the sole relater of the dismal tale.

12. For three days no one dared to carry the intelligence to the king. At length they sent into his presence a little boy, who, weeping bitterly, and kneeling at his feet, told him that the White Ship was lost with all on board.

The king fell to the ground like a dead man, and never afterwards was seen to smile.

Charles Dickens.

NOTES.

1. **The White Ship.**— The French name was *La Blanche Nef* (from Latin *navis*, a ship).

2. **Barfleur**, a small seaport, fifteen miles east of Cherbourg. It was from this port that William I. started for his invasion of England.

SUMMARY.

1. King Henry I. went over to Normandy with his son William, to have him acknowledged as his successor by the Norman nobles. 2. A second purpose was to contract a marriage between William and the daughter of the Count of Anjou. 3. Fitz-Stephen, a sea-captain, offered to take the king back in his ship, called the White Ship, manned by fifty sailors. 4. The king's ship had been already engaged, so he sent the prince with Fitz-Stephen. 5. Prince William went on board with eighteen ladies and one hundred and forty young noblemen. 6. With their servants and the sailors, there were three hundred souls on board. 7. Before sailing the sailors had three casks of wine. 8. Trusting in the swiftness of his vessel, the captain did not sail till midnight. 9. When the ship shot out of the harbor of Barfleur there was not a sober man on board. 10. Fitz-Stephen himself was at the helm. 11. The fifty sailors were rowing their hardest, all sails were set, when the ship struck upon a rock. 12. Fitz-Stephen hurried the prince, with a few nobles, into a boat. 13. They were rowing off, when the prince heard the voice of his sister Marie calling for help. 14. They rowed back, and such numbers leaped into the boat that it was upset. 15. All were drowned except three. 16. Fitz-Stephen came up, swimming to the other two men, who were holding on to a yard, and asked them about the prince. 17. When he heard that all were gone, he sank to the bottom. 18. Only one man, a butcher of Rouen, held on till the last, and was saved. 19. No one dared to tell the king for three days. When at length the king was told, he fell to the ground like a dead man, and never afterwards was seen to smile.

Composition. — Write the story of "The White Ship" from the following outline: 1. Prince William returns from Normandy in the White Ship. 2. The sailors have drunk a great deal of wine. 3. The ship strikes on a rock. 4. The prince is put into a boat. 5. He hears a cry from his sister, and returns. 6. The boat is swamped, and all are drowned except one.

Exercises. — 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) The prince was acknowledged as his father's successor. (2) A marriage was contracted between him and the daughter of the Count of Anjou. (3) The boat was swamped. (4) Berold was the sole relater of the dismal tale. (5) No one dared to carry the intelligence to the king.

2. Parse the words in the following sentence: I have a fair vessel in the harbor here, manned by fifty sailors of renown.

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Distinguish the meaning of *succeeded*, *contracted*, *shoot*, *fair*, and *intelligence* in the following pairs of sentences: (1) Henry *succeeded* William. His plan has not *succeeded*. (2) A marriage was *contracted* between the two young people. His views on that subject are very *contracted*. (3) The gamekeeper will *shoot* the hawk. The leaves are beginning to *shoot*. (4) The bargain was not a *fair* one. I bought the horse at a *fair*. (5) He is a boy of wonderful *intelligence*. The *intelligence* of his death did not reach him.

Show also if these words have, in the pairs of sentences, any idea in common.

HE NEVER SMILED AGAIN.

[This poem relates to the event recorded in the story of "The White Ship."]

Blent, mingled.
Fes'tal, belonging to a feast.
Min'strels, musicians.
Tour'ney, a contest with spears or lances, on horseback, between knights.
Vows, promises of love.

1. The bark that held a prince went down,
The sweeping waves rolled on;
And what was England's glorious crown
To *him* that wept a son?
He lived, — for life may long be borne
Ere sorrow break its chain;
Why comes not death to those who mourn? —
He *never* smiled again!

2. There stood proud forms around his throne,
The stately and the brave;
But who could fill the place of one, —
That one beneath the wave?
Before him passed the young and fair,
In pleasure's reckless train;
But seas dashed o'er his son's bright hair, —
He *never* smiled again!

3. He sat where festal bowls went round,
He heard the minstrels sing;
He saw the tourney's victor crowned
Amidst the knightly ring:
A murmur of the restless deep
Was blent with every strain,
A voice of winds that *would* not sleep, —
He *never* smiled again!

4. Hearts, in that time, closed o'er the trace
Of vows once fondly poured;
And strangers took the kinsman's place
At many a joyous board;
Graves, which true love had bathed with tears,
Were left to heaven's bright rain;
Fresh hopes were born for *other* years, —
He never smiled again! *Mrs. Hemans.*

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1. — Line 1: Avoid accenting unemphatic words. VERSE 2. — Line 1: The words *proud* and *forms* must be equally accented. VERSE 3. — Line 5: Hasten on to *restless deep*, and place a slight emphasis on *every*. VERSE 4. — Line 1: Place the emphasis on *that*. Line 2: *Once* is the emphatic word. Line 3: *Strangers* has the weight of emphasis. Line 5: The emphatic words are *true love*. Line 6: Avoid the verse-accent on *left*, and pass on to *heaven's*. Line 7: *Fresh hopes* are the two emphatic words.

THE BRAVE MAN.

Aloof′, away.
Arrayed′, dressed.
Mien, manner and carriage.
Pistoles′, Spanish gold coins, worth about $3.86 each.
Of′fered, offered.
Stems, holds out against.
Surge, the billowy water.
Trib′ute, something to be paid.
Wrack, the blocks of ice and pieces of timber carried down by the flood.

1. Loud let the Brave Man's praises swell
As organ blast, or clang of bell!

Of lofty soul and spirit strong,
He asks not gold, — he asks but song!
Then glory to God, by whose gift I raise
The tribute of song to the Brave Man's praise!

The thaw-wind came from the southern sea,
Dewy and dark o'er Italy;
The scattered clouds fled far aloof,
As flees the flock before the wolf;
It swept o'er the plain, and it strewed the wood,
And it burst the ice-bands on river and flood.

2. The snow-drifts melt, till the mountain calls,
With the voice of a thousand waterfalls;
The waters are over both field and dell, —
Still doth the land-flood wax and swell;
And high roll its billows, as in their track
They hurry the ice-crags, a floating wrack.

On pillars stout, and arches wide,
A bridge of granite stems the tide;
And midway o'er the foaming flood,
Upon the bridge the toll-house stood;
There dwelleth the gate-man, with babes and wife;
O, seest thou the water? Quick! flee for thy life!

3. Near and more near the wild waves urge;
Loud howls the wind, loud roars the surge;
The gate-man sprang on the roof in fright,
And he gazed on the waves in their gathering might:
"All-merciful God! to our sins be good!
We are lost! we are lost! The flood! the flood!"

High rolled the waves! In headlong track
Hither and thither dashed the wrack!
On either bank uprose the flood;
Scarce on their base the arches stood!

The gate-man, trembling for house and life,
Out-screams the storm with his babes and wife.

4. High heaves the flood-wrack, — block on block,
The sturdy pillars feel the shock;
On either arch the surges break,
On either side the arches shake:
They totter! they sink 'neath the whelming wave!
All-merciful Heaven, have pity, and save!

Upon the river's further strand
A trembling crowd of gazers stand;
In wild despair their hands they wring,
Yet none may aid or succor bring;
And the hapless gate-man, with babes and wife,
Is screaming for help through the stormy strife.

5. *When* shall the Brave Man's praises swell
As organ blast, or clang of bell? —
Ah! name him *now*, he tarries long;
Name him at last, my glorious song!
O, speed! for the terrible death draws near;
O Brave Man! O Brave Man! arise, appear!

Quick gallops up, with headlong speed,
A noble Count on noble steed!
And, lo! on high his fingers hold
A purse well stored with shining gold.
"Two hundred pistoles for the man who shall save
You perishing wretch from the yawning wave!"

6. Who is the Brave Man, say, my song:
Shall to the Count thy meed belong?
Though, Heaven be praised, right brave he be,
I know a braver still than he;
O Brave Man! O Brave Man! arise, appear!
O, speed! for the terrible death draws near!

And ever higher swell the waves,
And louder still the storm-wind raves,
And lower sink their hearts in fear, —
O Brave Man! O Brave Man! haste, appear!
Buttress and pillar, they groan and strain,
And the rocking arches are rent in twain!

7. Again, again, before their eyes
High holds the Count the glittering prize;
All see, but all the danger shun, —
Of all the thousand stirs *not one.*
And the gate-man in vain, through the tumult wild,
Outscreams the tempest, with wife and child.

But who amid the crowd is seen,
In peasant garb, with simple mien,
Firm, leaning on a trusty stave,
In form and feature tall and grave?
He hears the Count, and the scream of fear;
He sees that the moment of death draws near!

8. Into a skiff he boldly sprang;
He braved the storm that round him rang;
He called aloud on God's great name, —
And back he a deliverer came.
But the fisher's skiff seems all too small,
From the raging waters to save them all.

The river round them boiled and surged;
Thrice through the waves his skiff he urged,
And back, through wind and waters' roar,
He bore them safely to the shore:
So fierce rolled the river, that scarce the last
In the fisher's skiff through the danger passed.

9. Who is the Brave Man? Say, my song,
To whom shall that high name belong?

Bravely the peasant ventured in,
But 't was, perchance, the prize to win.
If the generous Count had proffered no gold,
The peasant, methinks, had not been so bold.

Out spake the Count, "Right boldly done!
Here, take thy purse; 't was nobly won."

A generous act, in truth, was this,
And truly the Count right noble is;
But loftier still was the soul displayed
By him in the peasant garb arrayed.

10. "Poor though I be, thy hand withhold;
I barter not my life for gold!
Yon hapless man is ruined now;
Great Count, on *him* thy gift bestow."
He spake from his heart in his honest pride,
And he turned on his heel and strode aside.

Then loudly let his praises swell
As organ blast, or clang of bell;
Of lofty soul and spirit strong,
He asks not gold, — he asks but song!
Then glory to God, by whose gift I raise
The tribute of song to the Brave Man's praise!

From the German of Bürger.

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1. — Line 1: Avoid the verse-accent on *let*, and hasten on to *brave* and *swell*. VERSE 2. — Line 4: Do not accent *doth;* the emphatic word is *still*. Line 5: Avoid the verse-accent on *in*. Line 10: Do not place any accent on *upon*, but read *Upon-the-bridge* as one word. VERSE 3. — Line 1: Read *and-more-near* as one word. Line 2: *Loud* is the emphatic word. VERSE 4. — Line 7: Do not accent *upon*, but hasten on to *further strand*. VERSE 5. — Line 1: The word with the greatest weight of emphasis is *When; shall* has none at all. VERSE 6. — Line 1: The emphatic word is *Who*. Do not emphasize *is*. Line 2: Hasten on to the emphatic word *Count*. VERSE 7. — Line 2: *High* is more emphatic than *holds*. Line 3: *All* is emphatic, not *see*. Line 4: *Thousand* is the chief word; and then the two very emphatic words *not one*. VERSE 8. — Line 8: *Thrice* is emphatic, not *through*.

COMPOSITION. — Write the story of "The Brave Man" from the following heads: 1. A flood in the North of Italy. 2. The

blocks of ice come down and strike a bridge. 3. A large part of it is carried away. 4. The bridge-keeper and his family are in danger. 5. A nobleman offers a purse of gold to any one who will save them. 6. A peasant jumps into a boat, and brings the family away in safety. 7. The nobleman offers him the purse; but he says . . . .

EXERCISES. — 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) A bridge of granite stems the tide. (2) High heaves the flood-wrack. (3) The river's further strand. (4) Thrice through the wave his skiff he urged. (5) Loftier was the soul displayed by the peasant. (6) I barter not my life for gold. (7) Hones' pride.

2. Parse the words in the following sentence:

And back, through wind and waters' roar,
He bore them safely to the shore.

And is a conjunction, connecting this sentence with another sentence going before. Be careful to distinguish between *water's* and *waters'*.

INGRATITUDE.

Convince', to compel to believe.
Expos'tulated, remonstrated or protested against wrong.
Fells, barren, stony hills.
Finally, in the end; once for all.
Har'bored, gave shelter to.
Ranged, extended, went as far as.
Rec'ompensed, rewarded.
Refer', carry a question to a person to have it decided.
Requite', pay back.
With design to, with the intention of.
Wo'ful, sorrowful.

1. A traveller passing through a thicket, says a Persian fable, and seeing a few sparks of a fire, which some passengers had kindled as they went that way before, turned his steps and walked up to it. On a sudden the sparks caught hold of a bush in the midst of which lay an adder, and set it in flames. The adder entreated the assistance of the traveller, who, tying a bag to the end of his staff, stretched it towards the adder and

drew it out. He then bade it go where it pleased, but never more be hurtful to men, since it owed its life to a man's compassion. 2. The adder, however, prepared to bite him; and, when he expostulated how unjust it was to repay good with evil, "I shall do no more," said the adder, "than what you men practise every day, whose custom it is to requite benefits with ingratitude. If you can deny this truth, let us refer it to the first we meet." 3. The man consented, and, seeing a tree, put a question to it in what manner a good turn was to be recompensed. "If you mean according to the usage of men," replied the tree, "by its contrary. I have been standing here these hundred years to protect them from the scorching sun, and in requital they have cut down my branches, and are going to saw my body into planks." Upon this the adder looked insultingly at the man, who appealed to a second evidence, which was granted, and immediately they met a cow. 4. The same demand was made, and much the same answer given, that among men it was certainly so. "I know it," said the cow, "by woful experience; for I have served a man this long time with milk, butter, and cheese, and brought him besides a calf every year; but now I am old, he turns me into this pasture, with design to sell me to a butcher, who will shortly make an end of me." 5. The traveller upon this stood confounded, but desired of courtesy one more trial, to be finally judged by the next beast they should meet. This happened to be the fox, who, upon hearing the story in all its circumstances, could not be persuaded it was possible for the adder to get into so narrow a bag. The adder, to convince him, went in again; the fox told the man he had now his enemy in his power, and with that he fastened the bag and crushed the adder to death.

THE WARMED SNAKE.

6. Once on a time, as Æsop tells,
A man, in winter's iron weather,
Found on the bare and wind-swept fells
A snake, its coils frost-bound together.

He raised the creature from the ground,
And was about to fling it by,
When, lo! some spark of life he found
Still glowing in its evil eye.

7. The man, whose large compassion ranged
E'en to that reptile most unblest,
Sudden his idle purpose changed,
And placed the serpent in his breast.

Under his kindly bosom's glow
Slowly the stiffened coils outdrew;
The thickening blood resumed its flow,
The snaky instincts waked anew.

8. The man was glad to feel awake
The crawling life within his vest:
For to have harbored e'en a snake
Is pleasure in a generous breast.

Sudden he stops, with shriek and start,—
Then falls a corpse all swollen and black!
The snake's fell tooth had stopped the heart
Whose warmth to life had brought it back.

NOTE.

Æsop was a Greek slave who lived in the island of Samos (in the Ægean Sea) about the end of the sixth century B.C. He was fond of uttering wise thoughts in the form of fables; and a very large number of such is ascribed to him.

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 6. — Line 1: *on-a-time* to be read as one word; no accent upon *on*. Line 3: In the same way, no accent upon *on*. Line 6: Make *about-to-fling-it-by* one word. Line 8: No accent on *in*. VERSE 7. — Line 2: Avoid accent on *to*. VERSE 8.— Line 3: No accent on *to*. Line 7: Put an emphasis on *fell*.

COMPOSITION.— Give the story in "Ingratitude" under the following heads: 1. The traveller and the fire. 2. The conduct of the adder in the fire. 3. Its conduct when out of the fire. 4. The man's speech and the adder's reply. 5. Those to whom the question was referred, with the answer of each. Criticise the answer of the tree and of the cow. Reproduce in prose the substance of "The Warmed Snake."

EXERCISES.— 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) The adder owed its life to a man's compassion. (2) He expostulated with the adder. (3) It is unjust to repay good with evil. (4) Let us refer it to the first we meet. (5) In requital they have cut down my branches. (6) The traveller desired of courtesy one more trial. (7) His large compassion ranged even to reptiles. (8) The snaky instincts waked anew.

2. Parse the words in the following sentence: A man, in the iron weather of winter, found a frozen snake.

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Select from the first three sections those words which may be used either as nouns or as verbs, such as *pass*, *hold*, *flame*.

5. With each of the first four of these selected words make a pair of sentences, illustrating its use, in the first member of the pair, as a verb; in the second, as a noun.

6. Give all the derivatives and compounds you know of the following words: *pass*, *see*, *way*, *hold*, *treat*, *own*, *man*.

7. Give the verbs from which the following nouns come: *traveller*, *assistance*, *retaliation*, *requital*, *confusion*, *persuasion*.

8. Give the meaning of these words.

9. Write in columns, with their meanings, all the words you can think of descriptive of *mountains*.

THE PRESENTATION OF THE GREAT CHARTER.

MAGNA CHARTA.

Ar'bitrary, not according to settled law or custom; despotic.

Burgh'er, an inhabitant of a burgh; a citizen or freeman.

Compul'sory, forced.

Denounce', to accuse publicly.

Despot'ic, having all power.

Enact'ment, law, decree.

Ex'iled, sent out of one's native country; from Latin *ex*, out of.

For'feiture, losing the right to property by some fault or crime.

Ob'solete, gone out of use.

Out'lawed, deprived of the protection of the law.

Patriot'ic, loving one's country or fatherland.

Peer, an equal, an associate; from Latin *par*, an equal.

Shriv'elled, wrinkled, shrunk.

Ven'erable, worthy of honor or reverence.

Vil'lein, a man attached to a *villa* or farm, a villager.

1. Tyrannical and despotic as all the Norman kings had been, it was the utter greed, cruelty, and selfishness of John that drove his barons into rebellion against him, and led them to demand from their worthless sovereign a written charter of rights and privileges. This *Magna Charta*, or Great Charter, is still the basis of English law and English liberty. Although during the six hundred years which have passed since John granted the charter many of its details have become obsolete or unnecessary, its great principles of freedom still mark the difference which exists between a country constitutionally governed[1] and a despotism. 2. Another great and important step towards just and settled government was that this charter was *written;* hitherto promises of reform had been made only by word of mouth, and it is easy to see how such promises could be forgotten or evaded. One copy of the charter may still be seen in the British Museum, brown and shrivelled by age and injured by fire, but with the seal of John still hanging from the venerable parchment.

3. The king was under sentence of excommunication[2] by the Pope, and was in consequence cut off from all intercourse with Christian princes of Europe, whose help[3] he wished to obtain for the purpose of subduing his rebellious barons and of recovering his lost possessions in France. In order, therefore, to get the sentence of excommunication removed, and to win back the favor of the Pope, he gave both his crown and his kingdom into the hands of the papal legate,[4] and received them again only on condition that he was to be the servant or vassal of the Pope. 4. The king was in a position now to obtain his wished-for alliance, but it was too late. All England was roused by the king's cowardice and treachery; baron and burgher were alike indignant at being sold

to a foreign power. At Easter, 1215, the barons met at Stamford, with two thousand knights and squires, and agreed to carry their charter of rights to John for signature. Their leaders were Stephen Langton, Archbishop of Canterbury, and William, Earl of Pembroke. 5. The king, deserted by nearly all his barons, promised to grant them their desires, and demanded a day and place for the meeting. "The day, the 15th of June; the place, Runnymede," the barons replied. And there, below the walls of Windsor, on a broad green meadow, still known by the name of Runnymede, John met his barons and signed the charter dear to the heart of every patriotic Englishman. 6. But though he signed it, it was not of his own free will; he hated both it and the men who had forced him to sign it. When he left the meeting, and returned to Windsor, he flung himself on the floor in a rage, gnawing sticks and straws in his fury, and cursing his rebellious barons.

But the charter was signed. In the 61st, the last important clause, was the king's promise faithfully to observe all that was contained in it under pain of forfeiture of his power and lands. 7. Twenty-four barons were appointed to see that the charter was truly carried into effect; and if the king or his agents failed to obey its provisions in the smallest particular, it was the duty of these barons to denounce the abuse before the king, and demand that it should be instantly reformed. "They have given me four-and-twenty over-kings!" cried John, in his fury.

8. Magna Charta may be divided into three parts: the first relating to the affairs of the clergy; the second relating to the interests of the nobility; the third and most important providing for the protection of the life, liberty, and property of all freemen.

The interests of the clergy were already settled by a charter, and it was necessary only that this charter should be confirmed. The nobility were protected from arbitrary reliefs,[5] the abuses of the wardship of the crown were reformed,[6] and widows were secured from compulsory marriage, to which they had been before liable, to the profit of the crown, — either the king had the right to sell a widow's hand to a rich suitor, or she would have to pay a heavy fine for the privilege of choosing for herself.

9. These enactments redressed the worst grievances of the nobles, who held their lands as tenants of the king on condition of military service. The freedom of the city of London, and of all towns and boroughs, was secured. Permission to trade in England was granted to foreign merchants. The Court of Common Pleas[7] was no longer to follow the king's person, but was to sit in a fixed place. The tyranny exercised in the neighborhood of the royal forests was likewise checked.

10. But it is the 39th article of the charter which is the backbone of the English law. This declares: — "no freeman shall be seized or imprisoned, or be dispossessed of his freehold, or liberties, or free customs, or be outlawed, or exiled, or in any other way destroyed; nor will we go against any man, or send against him, but by lawful judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land. We will sell to no man, we will not deny or delay to any man, justice or right."

11. Further, the king promised to appoint only wise and upright judges; to forbid the conviction of any man until witnesses had been heard in his favor; to restore his position or property to every man who might have been deprived without legal judgment, and to forbid

all arbitrary grievances inflicted on townsmen, merchants, or villeins.

It is easy to see from these extracts that a man was sure of justice in any honest court of law, and that Magna Charta is the corner-stone of the great edifice of English liberty.

NOTES.

1. That is, governed according to a settled system of law and custom.

2. Excommunication deprived a person of all the privileges of the Church; he could not join in any of its services, and the clergy would not administer the rites of marriage or of burial.

3. It was once the custom to hire foreign soldiers, who were ready to fight for whoever would pay them best.

4. The ambassador from the Pope (Latin, *legatus*).

5. Taxes raised at the will of the king. Certain reliefs the barons agreed to pay the king; these were lawfully due, but no other.

6. An heir who was under age was in the wardship of the crown, and all profit from his estate went for the time into the king's exchequer; if the ward were an heiress, the king sold her hand to the highest bidder.

7. Then the highest court of appeal.

SUMMARY.

1. The greed and cruelty of King John drove the barons to demand a written statement or charter of their rights. 2. This has been called the *Magna Charta*, or Great Charter, and it is still the basis of English law and liberty. 3. There is a copy of it in the British Museum. 4. King John, being under sentence of excommunication, could receive no help from abroad. 5. To win back the favor of the Pope, he gave his crown and kingdom into the hands of the Pope's legate. 6. He received them back only as vassal and servant of the Pope. 7. The king now tried to get his foreign soldiers, but it was too late. 8. At Easter 1215, the barons met at Stamford, and agreed to ask John to sign their charter. 9. Their leaders were Stephen Langton and the Earl of Pembroke. 10. They appointed Runnymede, near Windsor, and the 15th of June, as the place and time of

meeting. 11. John signed the charter, but sorely against his will. 12. By the 61st article, the king swore to keep the charter, on pain of forfeiting his power and lands. 13. Twenty-four barons were appointed as a standing committee, to see the charter truly carried into effect. 14. Magna Charta regulated and provided for the interests of the clergy and of the nobility, while it also took care of the life, liberty, and property of all freemen. 15. The city of London and all the English boroughs had their freedom secured. 16. Foreign merchants were allowed to trade in England. 17. The 39th article is the backbone of English law. 18. This article declares that justice shall not be sold, nor delayed, nor denied to any man. 19. Upright judges were to be appointed and arbitrary grievances were not to be inflicted.

Composition. — Give an account of the meeting at Runnymede, and the principal clauses of the charter, from the following heads: 1. The circumstances that led to the demand for the charter. 2. John's conduct in reference to the signing of the charter. 3. Regulations regarding the fulfilment of the charter. 4. The important divisions of the charter. 5. The 39th article. 6. Enactments regarding wardship, widows, boroughs, trade, courts. 7. The importance of the charter, — the backbone of English law.

Exercises. — 1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: After signing the charter, John rode at daybreak from Windsor towards the sout

2. Analyze the above.

3. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *rebellion, difference, despotism, government, cowardice, signature, provision.*

4. Write out as many of the compounds of the following words as you know: *form, part, noble, settle, hold, serve, free, secure, trade, obey.*

5. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 4, page 32, but substitute *town* and *merchant* for *earth* and *sea.*

THE BATTLE OF MORGARTEN.

Bla'zoned stream'ers, long flags embroidered with figures and names.
Defile', narrow path between rocks.
Dell, narrow valley.
Lau'wine, avalanche.
Mien, appearance.
Prime, the highest condition of health and beauty.
Strait, narrow pass.
Their own (voices), the echoes.
Unhelmed', without his helmet.
Wine month, October.

In the year 1315 the Swiss had risen in rebellion against the rule of Austria, who marched twenty thousand men into their little country for the purpose of utterly crushing them. The Swiss could not meet the Austrians in the open field, so they lay in ambush on both sides of the narrow mountain pass of Morgarten, which lies between a lake and high cliffs; they also held both ends of the pass. When the Austrian army had fairly entered the pass, the Swiss hurled rocks from the top of the high cliffs, laming or killing the cavalry, and wounding many of the common soldiers. Then those who held the ends of the pass appeared and attacked the Austrians, and a terrible panic ensued. Most of the Austrians were driven into the lake; only a few escaped, among them the leader, Leopold, Archduke of Austria. For the next seventy years no further attempt was made to subdue the resolute mountaineers of Switzerland.

1. The wine month shone in its golden prime,
And the red grapes clustering hung,
But a *deeper* sound through the Switzer's clime
Than the vintage music rung, —
A sound through vaulted cave,
A sound through echoing glen,
Like the hollow swell of a rushing wave;
'T was the tread of steel-girt men.

2. And a trumpet pealing wild and far,
'Midst the ancient rocks was blown,
Till the Alps replied to that voice of war
With a thousand of their own.
And through the forest glooms
Flashed helmets to the day,
And the winds were tossing knightly plumes,
Like larch boughs in their play.

3. But a band, the noblest band of all,
Through the rude Morgarten [2] strait,
With blazoned streamers and lances tall,
Moved onward in princely state.
They came with heavy chains
For the race despised so long;
But amidst his Alp domains
The herdsman's arm is strong!

4. The sun was reddening the clouds of morn
When they entered the rock defile,
And shrill as a joyous hunter's horn
Their bugles rang the while.
But on the misty height,
Where the mountain people stood,
There was stillness as of night,
When storms at distance brood.

5. There was stillness as of deep dead night,
And a pause, — but not of fear, —
While the Switzers gazed on the gathering might
Of the hostile shield and spear.
On wound those columns bright
Between the lake and wood,
But they looked not to the misty height
Where the mountain people stood.

6. The pass was filled with their serried power,
All helmed and mail-arrayed;
And their steps had sounds like a thunder-shower
In the rustling forest shade.
There were prince and crested knight,
Hemmed in by cliff and flood,
When a shout arose from the misty height
Where the mountain people stood.

7. And the mighty rocks came bounding down
Their startled foes among,
With a joyous whirl from the summit thrown, —
O, the herdsman's arm is strong!
They came like lauwine hurled
From alp to alp[3] in play,
When the echoes shout through the snowy world,
And the pines are borne away.

8. The fir woods crashed on the mountain side,
And the Switzers rushed from high,
With a sudden charge, on the flower and pride
Of the Austrian chivalry:
Like hunters of the deer
They stormed the narrow dell;
And first in the shock, with Uri's[4] spear,
Was the arm of William Tell.[5]

9. There was tumult in the crowded strait,
And a cry of wild dismay,
And many a warrior met his fate
From a peasant's hand that day!
And the Empire's[6] banner then,
From its place of waving free,
Went down before the shepherd-men, —
The men of the Forest sea.[4]

10. With their pikes and massy clubs they brake
The cuirass and the shield;
And the war horse dashed to the reddening lake
From the reapers of the field.
The field, — but not of sheaves
Proud crests and pennons lay
Strewn o'er it, thick as the beech-wood leaves
In the autumn tempest's way.

11. O, the sun in heaven fierce havoc viewed
When the Austrian turned to fly,
And the brave, in the trampling multitude
Had a fearful death to die!
And the leader of the war
At eve unhelmed was seen,
With a hurrying step on the wilds afar,
And a pale and troubled mien.

12. But the sons of the land which the freeman tills
Went back from the battle toil
To their cabin homes 'midst the deep green hills,
All burdened with royal spoil.
There were songs and festal fires
On the soaring Alps that night,
When children sprang to greet their sires
From the wild Morgarten fight.

NOTES.

1. **Switzer.** — This is a German form of *Swiss*. The full German form is *Schweitzer*. The French form is *Suisse*.

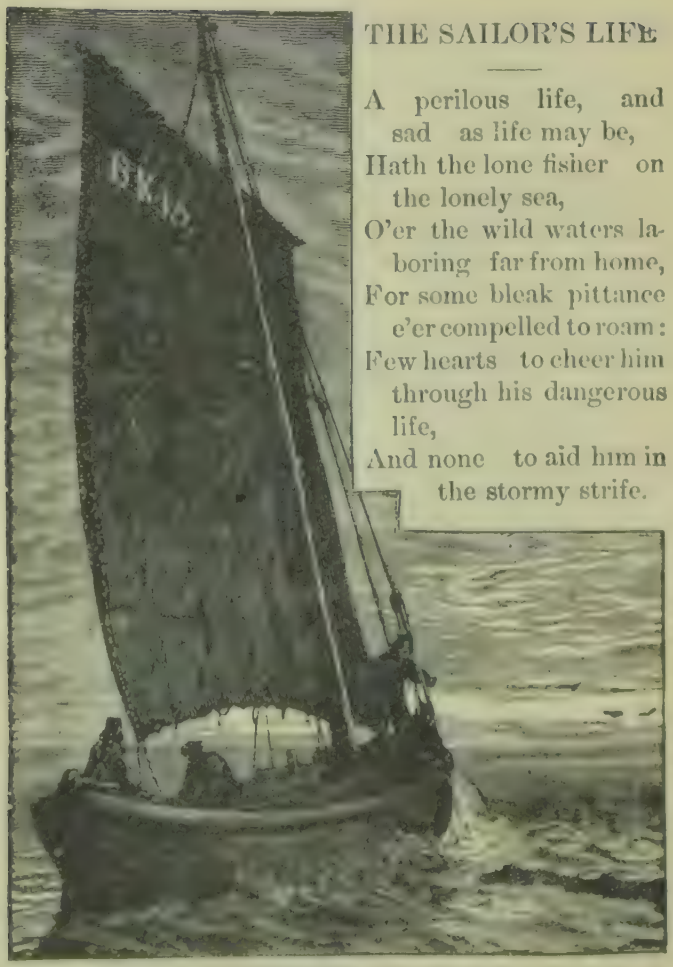
2. **Morgarten**, a mountain slope on Lake Egeri, in the canton (or state) of Zug.

3. **Alp**, the name for a hill or mountain among the Alps. (The word *alp* is a Celtic word, meaning a high mountain.)

4. **Uri**, one of the three Forest Cantons which lie around Lake (German *See*) Lucerne. The others are Schwytz and Unterwalden.

5. Careful research has lately shown that no such person as William Tell ever existed; he is entirely mythical.

6. **Empire**, the Empire of Germany. The Emperor was elected by the kings, electors, grand-dukes, and other powers of Germany. Leopold, the Archduke of Austria, who led their troops, was brother to the then Emperor of Germany.



THE SAILOR'S LIFE.

A perilous life, and sad as life may be,
Hath the lone fisher on the lonely sea,
O'er the wild waters laboring far from home,
For some bleak pittance e'er compelled to roam:
Few hearts to cheer him through his dangerous life,
And none to aid him in the stormy strife.

Companion of the sea and silent air,
The lonely fisher thus must ever fare:
Without the comfort hope, with scarce a friend,
He looks through life, and only sees its end!

Barry Cornwall.

THE BATTLE OF OTTERBURN.

Achieved′, brought to pass.
Cog′nizance, that by which one is known (such as the crest or arms on a shield).
Desert′ed, left by its holders.
Disas′trous, very unfortunate.
Encoun′ters, hostile meetings.
Enjoined′, commanded.
Ensued′, followed.
Impetuos′ity, eagerness amounting to rashness.
Pen′etrated, made his way into.
Sal′lied out, rushed out.
Tro′phy, prize taken in war.

1. In 1388 the Scottish nobles had determined upon an invasion of England on a large scale, and had assembled a great army for that purpose. But learning that the people of Northumberland were raising an army on the eastern frontier, they resolved to limit their incursion to what might be achieved by the Earl of Douglas with a chosen band of four or five thousand men.

With this force he penetrated into the mountainous frontier of England, where an assault was least expected; and, issuing forth near Newcastle, fell upon the flat and rich country around, slaying, plundering, and burning, and loading his army with spoil.

2. Percy, Earl of Northumberland, with whom Douglas had frequently had encounters, sent his two sons, Sir Henry and Sir Ralph Percy, to stop the progress of this invasion. Both were gallant knights; but the former, who, from his impetuosity, was called Hotspur, was one of the most distinguished warriors in England, as Douglas was in Scotland. The brothers threw themselves hastily into Newcastle, to defend that important town; and as Douglas, in an insulting manner, drew up his followers before the walls, they sallied out to skirmish with the Scots.

3. Douglas and Henry Percy encountered personally; and it so chanced that Douglas in the struggle got possession of Hotspur's spear, to the end of which was attached a small ornament of silk embroidered with pearls, bearing the representation of a lion, the cognizance, as it is called, of the Percys. Douglas shook his trophy aloft, and declared that he would carry it into Scotland and plant it on his castle of Dalkeith.

4. "That," said Percy, "shalt thou never do. I will regain my lance ere thou canst get back into Scotland."

"Then," said Douglas, "come to seek it, and thou shalt find it before my tent."

The Scottish army, having completed the purpose of their expedition, began their retreat up the vale of the little river Reed, which afforded a tolerable road, running northwestward towards their own frontier. They encamped at Otterburn, about twenty miles from the Scottish border, on the 19th of August, 1388.

In the middle of the night the alarm arose in the Scottish camp that the English host were coming upon them, and the moonlight showed the approach of Sir Henry Percy, with a body of men superior in number to that of Douglas. 5. He had already crossed the Reed water, and was advancing towards the left flank of the Scottish army. Douglas, not choosing to receive the assault in that position, drew his men out of the camp, and, with a degree of military skill which could scarcely have been expected when his forces were of such an undisciplined character, he altogether changed the position of the army, and presented his troops with their front to the advancing English.

6. Hotspur, in the mean time, marched his squadrons through the deserted camp, where there were none left but a few servants and stragglers of the army. The interruptions which the English troops met with threw them a little into disorder, when the moon arising showed them the Scottish army, which they had supposed to be retreating, drawn up in complete order, and prepared to fight.

The battle commenced with the greatest fury; for Percy and Douglas were the two most distinguished soldiers of their time, and each army trusted in the courage and talents of its commander, whose names were shouted on either side.

7. The Scots, who were outnumbered, were at length about to give way, when Douglas caused his banner to advance, attended by his best men. He himself, shouting his war-cry of "Douglas!" rushed forward, clearing his way with the blows of his battle-axe, and breaking into the very thickest of the enemy. He fell, at length, under three mortal wounds. 8. Had his death been observed by the enemy, the event would probably have

decided the battle against the Scots; but the English knew only that some brave man-at-arms had fallen.

Meantime, the other Scottish nobles pressed forward, and found their general dying among several of his faithful esquires and pages, who lay slain around him. A stout priest, called William of North Berwick, the chaplain of Douglas, was protecting the body of his wounded patron with a long lance.

9. "How fares it, cousin?" said Sinclair, the first Scottish knight who came up to the expiring leader.

"Indifferently," answered Douglas; "but, blessed be God, my ancestors have died in fields of battle, not on down beds. I sink fast; but let them still cry my war-cry, and conceal my death from my followers. There was a tradition in our family that a dead Douglas should win a field, and I trust it will this day be accomplished."

10. The nobles did as he had enjoined: they concealed the Earl's body, and again rushed on to battle, shouting, "Douglas! Douglas!" louder than before. The English were weakened by the loss of the brave brothers, Henry and Ralph Percy, both of whom were made prisoners, fighting most gallantly; and hardly any man of note among the English escaped death or captivity.

11. The battle of Otterburn was disastrous to the leaders on both sides, — Hotspur being made captive, and Douglas slain on the field. It has been the subject of many songs and poems; and the great historian Froissart says that, with one exception, it was the best-fought battle of that warlike time. *Sir Walter Scott.*

NOTES.

Otterburn. — *Burn* is an old English word (still in use in Scotland) for *brook*. The word is found in *Holborn* (which meant *Old Burn*), in *Tyburn* (a brook which joined the Kilburn).

and *Kilburn*, now the names of two suburbs of London. Otterburn is a tributary of the Reed, which falls into the Tyne.

Froissart (1337–1410). — He was a Norman-French historian and poet, who lived for a time at the court of Edward III. In 1364 he paid a visit to the court of Scotland, where he was well received by David II. His "Chronicles" give the chief battles and events of his time in France, England, and Scotland.

Composition.— Write a short paper on "The Battle of Otterburn" from the following heads: 1. Earl Douglas marches to Newcastle. 2. He is attacked at Otterburn by the English, under the two Percys. 2. The Scotch rush into battle with the cry of "Douglas!" 4. Douglas falls. 5. He tells his friends that there is a tradition in his family that a dead Douglas should win a field, and that they must conceal his death from his followers. 6. The Scotch win, and either kill or take captive all the Englishmen of note.

Exercises.— 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) They resolved to limit their incursion to what might be achieved by the Earl of Douglas with four or five thousand men. (2) A lion was the cognizance of the Percys. (3) Douglas's death would probably have decided the battle against the Scotch. (4) The nobles did as he enjoined. (5) No man of note among the English escaped death or captivity.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: Hotspur marched his squadrons through the deserted camp (*marched* is a neuter verb, used in an active sense, like *walked* in the sentence, "I walked my horse up and down").

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Select from the first three sections all the words that may be used either as nouns or as verbs; such as *purpose*, *people*, etc.

5. Give the verbs or the adjectives from which the following nouns come: *invasion*, *resolution*, *achievement*, *impetuosity*, *defence*, *importance*, *possession*, *superiority*, *advancement*.

6. Distinguish between the following pairs: *rise* and *raise*, *fall* and *fell*, *sit* and *set*, *drink* and *drench*, *lie* and *lay*.

ALCOHOL.

Ab'stinence (from Lat. *ab*, away from, and *teneo*, I hold), keeping or holding quite away from a thing.

Assim'ilate (from Lat. *similis*, like), to make like itself, or take in and absorb.

Au'ricle (from Lat. *auris*, an ear), a part of the heart shaped like the ear.

Bev'erage (from O. Fr. *berre*, to drink, Lat. *bibere*), something to drink.

Cap'illary (from Lat. *capillus*, a hair), hair-like in nature.

Car'bon (from Lat. *carbo*, a coal), the substance which forms a very large part of coal.

Cav'ities (from Lat. *cavus*, hollow), hollows.

Distilla'tion (from Lat. *stilla*, a drop), a process which reduces a substance to a liquid form, turns it into vapor, and then condenses it back into a liquid *drop by drop*.

Hy'drogen (from Gr. *hudor* water), an extremely light gas, which, in composition with oxygen, forms water.

Ox'ygen (from Gr. *oxus*, sharp), the gas which forms one fifth of ordinary air.

P ral'y is (from Gr. *paralusis*, a loosening).

Promote' (from Lat. *pro*, forward, and *moveo*, I move), to urge forward.

Propel' (from Lat. *pro*, forward, and *pello*, I drive), to push forward.

Putrefac'tion (from Lat. *putris*, rotten, and *facere*, to make).

Ram'ify (from Lat. *ramus*, a branch), to spread as a branch spreads.

Stim'ulant (from Lat. *stimulus*, a spur), that which is capable of exciting.

Ven'tricle (from Lat. *venter*, the stomach), a part of the heart in shape like a stomach.

1 The word *alcohol*[*] is an Arabic word which means *something burnt* to powder. It is now used to signify pure or *ardent* — that is, *burning* — spirit. It is obtained by distillation from beer, wine, and many other liquids. It is also obtained in the largest quantities from those solids which contain the largest amount of sugar or of starch, such, for instance, as sugar cane and grain. It is lighter in weight than water, boils much more

[*] The prefix *al* is the Arabic for *the*; and we find it in *Alcoran* (= the Koran), *algebra* (= the art of signs), *alguazil* (= the watchman). The word probably came to us from the Moors, who held most of Spain from the beginning of the eighth to the end of the fifteenth century.

easily, — that is, by the application of less heat, — and it cannot be frozen except by a cold of which, in even far northern countries, there is little experience. Cold as low as −166 degrees of Fahrenheit has been applied, and it has not frozen. 2. It has also the property of preventing putrefaction, — that is, of keeping animal and vegetable bodies from decaying; and hence scientific men use it to preserve specimens of animals, or of parts of animals, in bottles, as we see them in museums. It is quite colorless; and, if a light is applied to it, it burns away with a very small amount of smoke. In the form of spirits of wine it is frequently used by chemists and others in experiments, and is burned by them in a spirit-lamp.

3. Chemists tell us that water consists of two atoms of hydrogen and one of oxygen. They also tell us that alcohol consists of six atoms of hydrogen, two of carbon, and one of oxygen. Thus we see that alcohol differs from water in having three times as much hydrogen in it, and in the possession of two atoms of carbon, which water does not possess at all.

4. Alcohol is a substance which, when too much of it has been received into the stomach, takes away from human beings the power of rightly using their hands, arms, legs, eyes, and organs of speech. At first, and when taken in moderate doses, it acts as a stimulant, and gives these parts of the body greater power; but when taken continuously, or in large doses, it always ends by destroying a part — sometimes a large part — of the control which the mind has, or ought to have, over the limbs and powers of the body. Thus we know that the effect of a large dose of alcohol on dogs is nearly always to produce paralysis, or loss of power, in the hind legs. 5. The amount of alcohol

in different liquors varies very much, from the weakest small beer up to the strongest rum. If we examine liquors by measure, — or, as it is called, by *volume*, — we shall find that, out of a hundred "volumes" of rum, 77 are pure alcohol. Whiskey and brandy come next in strength, and may contain from 50 to 60 per cent. Port and sherry contain from 16 to 25 per cent.; claret, from 10 to 17 per cent.; and ordinary ale, from 3 to 5 per cent.

6. Persistent drinking of alcohol, whether in its weaker or in its stronger forms, even if it never goes so far as to take away the power of using our limbs rightly and accurately, slowly but surely undermines the health, and makes the internal organs, such as the stomach, the brain, and the liver, less and less able to perform their proper work. The blood, when examined by a microscope, is seen to be formed of little cells called corpuscles. These corpuscles, in the blood of a man who drinks much alcohol, are found to be very much changed in character and shape. 7. Even the brain itself, designed by our Creator to control our bodies and direct our course of action in relation to time and eternity, becomes altered in its structure by the use of alcohol. How unwise it is to pollute the "stream of life" and seriously injure the seat of intellect in order to get a little temporary stimulation! But if a drink is required merely for the purpose of refreshing and of enabling the body to get through a larger amount of labor, one which may be highly recommended is a mixture of oatmeal and water.

8. When alcohol or alcoholic drinks are taken into the stomach, they are at once absorbed or taken up by thousands of exceedingly small blood-vessels, termed capillaries, which run through every part of its walls. When these have absorbed the alcohol, they transmit

it to the fine blood-vessels of the liver, and into the larger blood-vessels or veins, and thence into the heart. The heart is the strong muscular organ or force-pump which propels the blood through every part of the body. It is divided into two parts, each of which consists of two hollow chambers or cavities. One of these cavities, called the left *auricle*, receives the pure blood from the lungs and passes it on into the other cavity, called the left *ventricle;* from this ventricle it is propelled or forced into the arteries. 9. Thus the arteries are the large pipes which carry the blood *from* the heart, while the veins are the pipes which carry it back *to* the heart. Connecting these two sets of vessels, there are all over the body, as we have already said, a number of very small vessels, called capillaries, some so small that only the microscope can show them, through which the blood circulates between the arteries and the veins. The blood which comes from the veins of the body is forced by the right ventricle of the heart into the lungs, where it passes through an intricate network of capillaries. In the lungs it comes in contact with the air, which takes away the carbon, gives it oxygen in exchange, and so purifies it. Then, in this purified state, it goes back to the left side of the heart, which pumps it into the arteries of the body to perform its work of nourishment.

10. Again, all the venous or impure blood that leaves the stomach and digestive organs passes through the liver, which may be compared to a kind of sieve placed between the stomach and the heart. Just as the lungs have an infinite number of fine tubes or capillary vessels, so the liver has an infinity of small branched veins, which ramify about every part of it, and in which the blood is cleansed, and has the bile secreted from it.

Then, when the blood has passed through the minute vessels of the liver, it is passed back into the right side of the heart by one large trunk or main pipe, which collects it from the smaller vessels. 11. The whole of the blood flows round and round the body several hundred times daily, through skin and muscle and nerves and brain, in a journey of perpetual motion, — a journey that is never ending, still beginning.

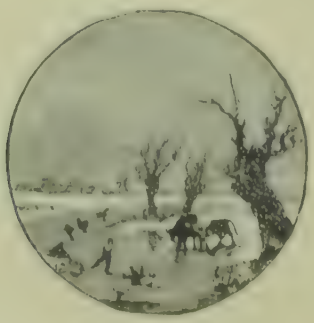
All, or nearly all, the alcohol which a person drinks, then, is sucked into or absorbed by the blood, carried on to the liver, to the heart, and to the lungs; then back to the heart again, which now distributes it all over the body. 12. Every beat of the heart — an organ which has been well compared to a force-pump — drives the blood, with the alcohol in it, through these networks of extremely fine capillaries. The effect of alcohol on the heart is to make it beat faster, and so to make it do more work in a given time. If liquors which contain four ounces of alcohol be taken in the course of a day, the action of the heart will be increased so much that in the course of the twenty-four hours it will have done more work than usual, to the extent, it has been calculated, of lifting fourteen tons to the height of one foot. 13. In a grown-up man the heart beats on an average about 73 times in each minute; that is, 4,380 strokes an hour, and 105,120 strokes in the twenty-four hours. But if alcohol is taken, whether in the form of beer or of wine, the number of heart-beats is increased, and the heart is compelled to do more work. Every four ounces of alcohol taken in the twenty-four hours increases the number of heart-beats by more than 12,000; and this number of beats, regarded as work done, — which it really is, — is equal to raising fourteen tons of stone to the height of one foot, or one ton of stone to the height of fourteen

feet. 14. Thus it is that the man accustomed to drink in immoderate quantity feels weary and exhausted. But not only does the whole body feel weary after too much alcohol; the heart itself becomes enfeebled and unfit for work. Then, the usual custom is to give it more alcohol, — to whip and spur it to do more work, because, according to its natural strength, it can do less; which is just as if one were to whip and spur a horse that had been hunting all day to make him gallop home, without giving him water, or oats, or rest.

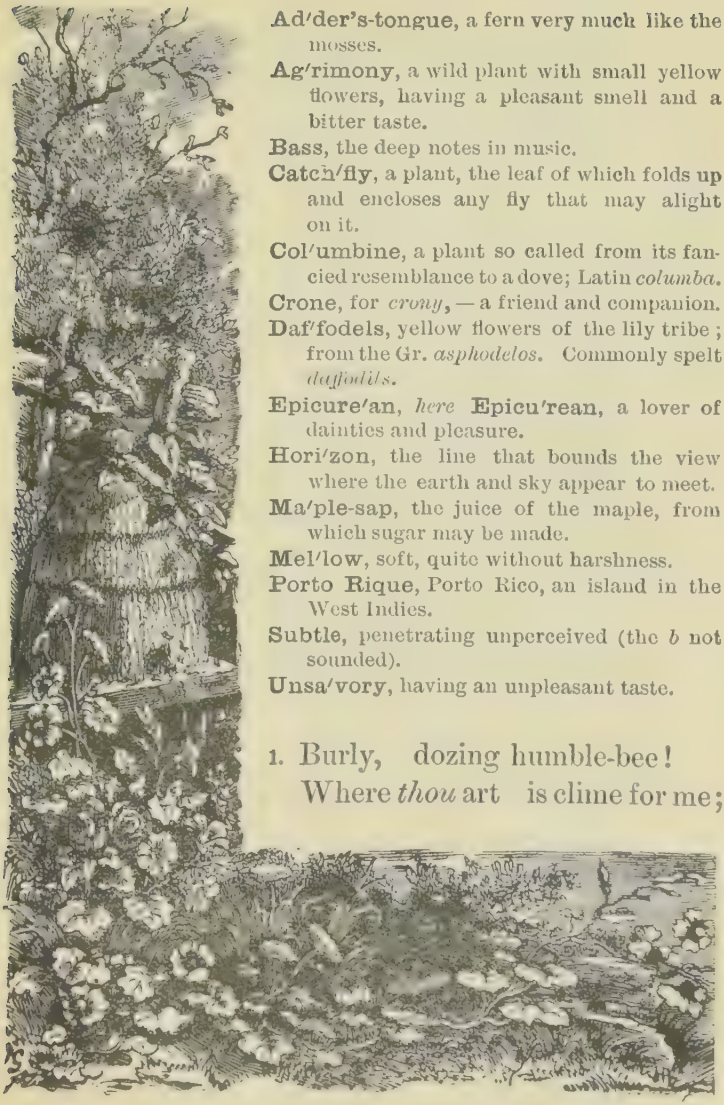
15. The best physicians now tell us that alcohol, though for the moment a stimulant, is, in the long run, a waster of strength, a robber of power, — in one word, a *depressant*. Work produces weariness and fatigue; and so does alcohol. But the weariness which comes from alcohol is not a healthy weariness. Exercise and labor quicken the motion of the blood; every part of the body is thrown into agreeable movement; the worn-out and useless matter of the body is thrown off; a good appetite is created; and the organs of the body are pleasurably excited to assimilate and put on new matter and healthy tissue. 16. But alcohol only excites; it produces unnatural activity; it leaves bad things behind it; it does not help the body to throw off matter that is hurtful; it makes the appetite weak; and it weakens the power of the stomach, — that power of digestion by which alone fresh blood is supplied. Very fine blood-vessels run through the brain, which rules our life; through the lungs, which help us to breathe; through the heart, which itself requires to be fed and nourished; through the liver, which cleanses the blood; through the kidneys, which distil all liquids; and through the stomach, which creates new blood. 17. If, then, these fine vessels become weakened, the sides of them sometimes give

way, and they burst like frozen pipes during a thaw. Then the blood overflows into the brain or the lungs, or into whatever organ the fine vessel is at work in, and the life of the person is endangered. It is a well-ascertained fact, that persons who are in the habit of drinking alcohol cannot resist the extremes of heat and cold so well as those who have accustomed themselves to beverages which are entirely free from alcoholic spirit. This is proved by the experience of sailors who have been on Arctic voyages, where the temperature is for the most part below zero; and is also proved by the daily experience of those who live in tropical countries, where strict temperance, or, better still, complete abstinence, is the best condition for maintaining life, health, and happiness.

18. From the above considerations we may learn that alcohol is injurious to the most important of our vital organs, the stomach and the brain; that it vitiates the blood on which every part of the body has to depend for support and growth; and that it frequently wrecks the health, the prosperity, the happiness, and the life of individuals and of whole families. *A. S. Day.*



THE HUMBLE-BEE.



Ad′der's-tongue, a fern very much like the mosses.

Ag′rimony, a wild plant with small yellow flowers, having a pleasant smell and a bitter taste.

Bass, the deep notes in music.

Catch′fly, a plant, the leaf of which folds up and encloses any fly that may alight on it.

Col′umbine, a plant so called from its fancied resemblance to a dove; Latin *columba*.

Crone, for *crony*, — a friend and companion.

Daf′fodels, yellow flowers of the lily tribe; from the Gr. *asphodelos*. Commonly spelt *daffodils*.

Epicure′an, *here* **Epicu′rean**, a lover of dainties and pleasure.

Hori′zon, the line that bounds the view where the earth and sky appear to meet.

Ma′ple-sap, the juice of the maple, from which sugar may be made.

Mel′low, soft, quite without harshness.

Porto Rique, Porto Rico, an island in the West Indies.

Subtle, penetrating unperceived (the *b* not sounded).

Unsa′vory, having an unpleasant taste.

1. Burly, dozing humble-bee!
Where *thou* art is clime for me;

Let them sail for Porto Rique,
Far-off heats through seas to seek,—
I will follow thee alone,
Thou animated torrid zone!
Zigzag steerer, desert cheerer,
Let me chase thy waving lines:
Keep me nearer, me thy hearer,
Singing over shrubs and vines.

2. Insect lover of the sun,
Joy of thy dominion!
Sailor of the atmosphere!
Swimmer through the waves of air!
Voyager of light and noon!
Epicurean of June!
Wait, I prithee, till I come
Within earshot of thy hum,—
All without is martyrdom.

3. When the south-wind, in May days,
With a net of shining haze
Silvers the horizon wall,
And, with softness touching all,
Tints the human countenance
With a color of romance,
And, infusing subtle heats,
Turns the sod to violets,—
Thou, in sunny solitudes,
Rover of the underwoods,
The green silence dost displace
With thy mellow, breezy bass.

4. Hot Midsummer's petted crone,
Sweet to me thy drowsy tone;

Tells of countless sunny hours,
Long days, and solid banks of flowers;
Of gulfs of sweetness without bound
In Indian wildernesses found;
Of Syrian peace, immortal leisure,
Firmest cheer, and bird-like pleasure.

5. Aught unsavory or unclean
Hath my insect never seen;
But violets and bilberry bells,
Maple-sap and daffodels,
Grass with green flag half-mast high,
Succory to match the sky,
Columbine with horn of honey,
Scented fern, and agrimony,
Clover, catchfly, adder's-tongue,
And brier-roses, dwelt among;
All beside was unknown waste,
All was picture as *he* passed.

6. Wiser far than human seer,
Yellow-breeched philosopher!
Seeing only what is fair,
Sipping only what is sweet,
Thou dost mock at fate and care,
Leave the chaff and take the wheat.
When the fierce northwestern blast
Cools sea and land so far and fast,
Thou already slumberest deep;
Woe and want *thou* canst outsleep;*
Want and woe, which torture us,
Thy sleep makes ridiculous. *Emerson.*

* The bee lies partially torpid all through the winter.

EXERCISE.—Explain the following phrases: (1) Thou animated torrid zone. (2) Sailor of the atmosphere. (3) Turns the sod to violets. (4) The green silence dost displace. (5) Immortal leisure. (6) Leave the chaff and take the wheat.

THE BATTLES OF CRESSY AND POITIERS

1346 AND 1356.

Car'nage, slaughter, dead bodies.
Chap'let, a garland or wreath for the head.
Chiv'alrous, daring, brave.
Copse, a wood of small growth for cutting; from the Greek *kopto*, to cut.
Exem'plify, to show by example.
Im'minent, near at hand.
In'cident, an event.
Involve', to include.
Mediæ'val, relating to the middle ages; from the Latin *medius*, middle, and *ævum*, an age.
Or'iflamme, the ancient royal standard of France; from the Latin *aurum*, gold, and *flamma*, a flame.
Palm, a tree. Branches of palm were carried as a sign of victory.
Prow'ess, bravery.
Rail'lery, mockery.
Rav'age, to lay waste.
Relin'quish, to give up.
Scru'ple, hesitation in deciding or acting; it means literally a small, sharp, rough stone.
Vir'tually, really, though not apparently.

The pupils should refer to a historical map of France while reading this lesson. They would also be greatly assisted in understanding a battle by drawing a plan of it on the blackboard.

1. The two great events of the life of Edward the Black Prince, those which made him famous in war, were the two great battles of Cressy and Poitiers. I will not now go into the origin of the war, of which these two battles formed the turning-points. It is enough for us to remember that the war was undertaken by Edward III. to gain the crown of France, and the claim to the crown through his mother,[1] which he had before solemnly relinquished, he now resumed to satisfy the scruples of his allies, the citizens of Ghent, who thought that their oath of allegiance to the "King of

France" would be redeemed if their leader did but bear the name.

2. And now, first, for Cressy. I shall not undertake to describe the whole fight, but shall call your attention briefly to the questions which every one ought to ask himself, if he wishes to understand anything whatever about a battle. First, where was it fought? Secondly, why was it fought? Thirdly, how was it won? And fourthly, what was the result of it? And to this I must add, in the present instance, what part was taken in it by the prince, now following his father as a young knight in his first great campaign. 3. The first of these questions involves the second also. If we make out where a battle was fought, we usually can tell why it was fought. This is one of the many proofs of the use of learning geography along with history. One helps us to understand the other. After ravaging Normandy, and penetrating to the very gates of Paris, Edward was retreating towards Flanders, when he was overtaken by the French king, Philip, who, with an immense army, had determined to cut him off entirely, and so to put an end to the war.

4. With difficulty, and by the happy accident of a low tide, he crossed the mouth of the Somme, and found himself in his own maternal inheritance of Ponthieu. For that special reason he encamped near the forest of Cressy, fifteen miles east of Abbeville. "I am," he said, "on the right heritage of madam, my mother, which was given her in dowry; I will defend it against my adversary, Philip of Valois."[2] 5. It was Saturday, the 28th of August, 1346, and at four in the afternoon the battle began. We can imagine any remarkable event much better when we know at what time of the day or night it took place. On this occasion such a

knowledge is of great importance, because it helps us at once to answer the question we asked, — How was the battle won? 6. The French army had advanced from Abbeville,[3] after a hard day's march, to overtake the retiring enemy. All along the road, and flooding the hedgeless plains which bordered the road, the army, swelled by the surrounding peasantry, rolled along, crying, "Kill! kill!" drawing their swords, and thinking they were sure of their prey. What the French king chiefly relied upon (besides his great numbers) was the troop of fifteen thousand crossbowmen from Genoa.[4] These were made to stand in front, when, just as the engagement was about to take place, one of those extraordinary incidents occurred which often turn the fate of battles, as they do the course of human life in general. 7. A tremendous storm gathered from the west, and broke in thunder, and rain, and hail, on the field of battle; the sky was darkened, and the horror was increased by the hoarse cries of crows and ravens, which fluttered before the storm, and struck terror into the hearts of the Italian bowmen, who were unaccustomed to these northern tempests. When at last the sky had cleared, and they were preparing their crossbows to shoot, the strings were found so wet that they could not be drawn. 8. By this time the evening sun streamed out in full splendor over the black clouds of the western sky, directly in their faces; and at the same moment the English archers, who had kept their bows in cases during the storm, and so had their strings dry, let fly their arrows so fast and thick that those who were present could compare them only to snow or sleet. Through and through the heads, and necks, and hands of the Genoese bowmen the arrows pierced. Unable to stand it, they turned and fled, and

from that moment the panic and confusion were so great that the day was lost.

9. But though the storm, the sun, and the archers had their part, we must not forget the prince. He was, we must remember, only sixteen, and yet he had the command of the whole English army. It is said that the reason of this was, that the king of France had been so bent on destroying the English forces that he had hoisted the sacred banner of France, — the great scarlet flag, embroidered with golden lilies, called the oriflamme, — as a sign that no quarter would be given; and that when King Edward saw this, and saw the hazard to which he should expose not only the army, but the whole kingdom, if he were to fall in battle, he determined to give the command to his son. 10. On the top of a windmill, of which the solid tower is still to be seen on the ridge overhanging the field, the king, for whatever reason, remained bareheaded, whilst the young prince, who had been knighted a month before, went forward with his companions in arms into the very thick of the fray. When his father saw that the victory was virtually gained, he forbore to interfere. "Let the child *win his spurs*," he said, in words which have since become a proverb, "*and let the day be his.*" The prince was at one moment in very great danger: he was wounded and thrown to the ground, and saved only by Richard de Beaumont, who carried the great banner of Wales, throwing the banner over him as he lay on the ground, and standing upon it till he had driven back the assailants.

11. The assailants were driven back, and far through the long summer evening, and deep into the summer night, the battle raged. It was not till all was dark that the prince and his companions halted from their

pursuit; and then huge fires and torches were lit up, that the king might see where they were. Then took place that touching interview between the father and the son; the king embracing the boy in front of the whole army by the red light of the blazing fires, and saying, "Sweet son, God give you good perseverance! You are my true son; right royally have you acquitted yourself this day, and worthy are you of a crown." 12. And the young prince, after the reverential manner of those times, "bowed to the ground, and gave all the honor to the king, his father." The next day the king walked over the field of carnage with the prince, and said, "What think you of a battle? is it an agreeable game?"

The results of the battle were the deliverance of the English army from a most imminent danger, and the conquest of Calais, which the king immediately besieged, and after a time won, and which remained in the possession of the English from that day to the reign of Queen Mary.

13. And now we pass over ten years, and find the Black Prince on the field of Poitiers. Again we must ask, What brought him there, and why the battle was fought? He was this time alone. His father, though the war had rolled on since the battle of Cressy, was in England. But in other respects the beginning of the fight was very like that of Cressy. 14. Gascony[1] belonged to him by right, and from this he made a descent into the neighboring provinces, and was on his return home when the king of France — John, the son of Philip — pursued him, as Philip had pursued Edward III., and overtook him suddenly on the high upland fields which extended for many miles south of the city of Poitiers. It was the third great battle fought in that neighbor-

hood. The first was that in which Clovis[6] defeated the Goths, and established the faith in the creed of Athanasius throughout Europe; the second was that in which Charles Martel drove back the Saracens,[7] and saved Europe from Mohammedanism; this, the third battle, was the most brilliant of English victories over the French. 15. The spot, which is about six miles south of Poitiers, is still known by the name of the "Battle-field." Its features are very slightly marked,—two ridges of rising ground, parted by a gentle hollow. Behind the highest of these two ridges is a large tract of copse and underwood, and leading up to it from the hollow is a somewhat steep lane, there shut in by woods and vines on each side. It was on this ridge that the prince had taken up his position, and it was solely by the good use which he made of this position that the victory was won. 16. The French army was arranged on the other side of the hollow, in three great divisions, of which the king's was the hindmost. The farmhouse which marks the spot where this division was posted, is visible from the walls of Poitiers. It was on Monday, September 19, 1356, at 9 A.M., that the battle began. All the day had been taken up by the fruitless endeavors of Cardinal Talleyrand to save bloodshed by bringing the king and prince to terms.

17. The prince offered to give up all the castles and prisoners he had taken, and to swear not to fight in France again for seven years. But the king would hear of nothing but his absolute surrender of himself and his army on the spot. The Cardinal labored till the very last moment, and then rode back to Poitiers, having equally offended both sides. 18. The story of the battle, if we remember the position of the armies, is told in a moment. The prince remained firm in his

position; the French charged with their usual chivalrous ardor,—charged up the lane. The English archers, whom the prince had stationed behind the hedges on each side, let fly their showers of arrows, as at Cressy. In an instant the lane was choked with the dead, and the first check of such headstrong confidence was fatal. Here, as at Cressy, was exemplified the truth of the remark of the mediæval historian, "We no longer contest our battles as did the Greeks and Romans: the first stroke decides all." 19. The prince in his turn charged; a general panic seized the whole French army; the first and second divisions fled in the wildest confusion; the third alone, where King John stood, made a gallant resistance. The king was taken prisoner; and by noon the whole was over. Up to the gates of the town of Poitiers the French army fled and fell, and their dead bodies were buried by heaps within a convent, which still remains in the city. It was a wonderful day. The numbers engaged were 8,000 to 60,000.

The prince who had gained the battle was still only twenty-six, — that is, a year younger than Napoleon at the beginning of his campaigns, — and the battle was distinguished from all others by the number, not of the slain, but of the prisoners, one Englishman often taking four or five Frenchmen.

20. In the evening after the battle, the prince gave a supper in his lodgings to the French king and to most of the great lords that were prisoners. The prince caused the king and his son to sit at one table, and other lords, knights, and squires at the others, and the prince always served the king very humbly, and would not sit at the king's table, although requested to do so. He said he was not qualified to sit at the table with so great a prince as the king was. 21. Then he said to the king,

"Sir, for God's sake make no bad cheer, though your will was not accomplished this day; for, sir, the king, my father, will certainly bestow upon you as much friendship and honor as he can, and will agree with you so reasonably that you will ever after be friends. And, sir, I think you ought to rejoice, though the battle be not as you will, for you have this day gained the high honor of prowess, and have surpassed all others on your side in valor. Sir, I say not this in raillery, for all our party, who saw every man's deeds, agree in this, and give you the palm and chaplet." Therewith the Frenchmen whispered among themselves that the prince had spoken nobly, and that most probably he would prove a great hero, if God preserved his life to persevere in such good fortune. *Dean Stanley (adapted).*

NOTES.

1. The mother of Edward III. was a daughter of Philip IV.; the reigning king, Philip VI., was only his nephew, and Edward III. claimed that he himself, as a grandson, was a nearer heir.

2. Philip VI. was the son of the Count of Valois, brother of Philip IV.

3. Abbeville is near the mouth of the river Somme.

4. In the middle ages the kings used frequently to hire foreign soldiers when they could not raise men enough at home.

5. Through Eleanor of Provence, wife of Henry III.

6. Clovis I., King of the Franks in 507. The Goths were a Scandinavian people; the Ostrogoths were the eastern, and the Visigoths the western branch.

7. The Moors, or Saracens, held rule in Spain from the beginning of the eighth to the end of the fifteenth century. This battle was in 732.

SUMMARY.

1. Edward the Black Prince became famous chiefly through the two great battles of Cressy and Poitiers. 2. Edward III. had a claim on the throne of France through his mother. 3. Edward, after ravaging Normandy, was retreating through

Flanders, when he was overtaken by Philip. 4. Edward encamped near the forest of Cressy, fifteen miles east of Abbeville. 5. The battle began at 4 P. M. on Saturday, the 28th of August, 1346. 6. The French king relied chiefly on his numbers, and on his 15,000 crossbowmen from Genoa. 7. But a storm of rain wet the strings of the crossbows, which were thus made useless. 8. The evening sun now streamed in the faces of the Genoese, and dazzled their eyes; and the English, who had kept their bows dry in cases, let fly their arrows like sleet. 9. The king of France had hoisted the oriflamme, as a sign of no quarter; and therefore King Edward left the fighting to his son. 10. The king watched from a windmill the work of his son, who was only sixteen, and had been knighted only one month before. 11. The prince was thrown to the ground, and was saved by Richard de Beaumont. 12. The French were at length beaten back, the battle raged deep into the summer night, and the prince did not cease from his pursuit till it was quite dark. 13. The result of the battle was the safety of the English army; and one of the after-consequences was the taking of Calais, which remained in the possession of the English till the reign of Queen Mary. 14. Ten years after, the Black Prince fought the battle of Poitiers. 15. He was returning home from an expedition, when King John of France overtook him. 16. The prince took up his position on a ridge, the only road to which was a steep lane. 17. The battle began at 9 A. M. on the 19th of September, 1356. 18. Cardinal Talleyrand had tried to bring the two sides to terms; the Black Prince had offered to give up all the castles and prisoners he had taken, and not to fight for seven years, but the king of France demanded unconditional surrender. 19. The French charged up the lane; the English bowmen killed them as they came on. 20. The lane was choked with the dead, a panic seized the French army; two divisions fled; King John was taken prisoner; and the whole affair was over at twelve o'clock. 21. The Black Prince was now only twenty-six; and the battle was distinguished by the large number of prisoners. 22. At night, the Black Prince waited on King John at supper.

Composition. — From the following outlines give a description of the position of the French and English armies at the battle of Cressy, with the result of the fight: 1. Edward, marching rapidly to Flanders, pursued by the French. 2. Crosses the Somme at low water. 3. Gets as far as the forest of Cressy.

4. Turns to face the French. 5. French advance, with the Genoese bowmen in front. 6. Thunder-storm and heavy rain. 7. The rays of the low-sinking sun dazzle the eyes of the French. 8. Thick discharge of English arrows. 9. Contest and flight kept up till far into the night. 10. Triumphant return of the prince.

EXERCISES. — 1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The day of the battle, at night, the prince gave a supper in his lodgings to the French king and the great lords.

2. Analyze the above.

3. Select, from section 21, words which may be either nouns or verbs according to the way in which they are used.

4. Write out as many of the compounds of the following words as you know: *reason*, *engage*, *hand*, *sign*, *ground*, *conquer*.

5. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 4, page 32, but substituting *crown* and *battle* for *earth* and *sea*.

6. Distinguish the meaning of *high*, *ground*, *check*, *stories*, and *charged*, in the following pairs of sentences: 1. The cliff was *high* and dangerous. The wind was too *high* for the boat to sail. 2. The prince's troops were posted on rising *ground*. I chose a purple pattern on a gray *ground*. 3. The French met with a severe *check*. His suit was of black and white *check*. 4. Chaucer's pilgrims told each other *stories* as they went to Canterbury. The houses in Edinburgh are built in very many *stories*. 5. The French *charged* up the lane. The lad *charged* sixpence for carrying my bag to the station.

Also show any connection in meaning between the words indicated in the several pairs of sentences.

EDWIN[1] AND PAULINUS: THE CONVERSION OF NORTHUMBRIA.[2]

Gaunt, exceedingly thin.
Yule'-time, Christmas.
Pon'dered, thought, — from the Latin *pondus*, a weight.

1. The black-haired gaunt Paulinus
By ruddy Edwin stood:
"Bow down, O King of Deira,[3]
Before the blessed rood![4]
Wilt thou not hear his message
Who bears the keys and sword?"[5]
But Edwin looked and pondered,
And answered not a word.

2. Rose then a sage old warrior,
Was fivescore winters old;
Whose beard from chin to girdle
Like one long snow-wreath rolled:
"At Yule-time in our chamber
We sit in warmth and light,
While cold and howling round us
Lies the black land of night.

3. "Athwart the room a sparrow
Darts from the open door:
Within the happy hearth-light
One red flash — and no more!
We see it come from darkness,
And into darkness go.
So is our life, King Edwin!
Alas that it is so!

4. "But if this pale Paulinus
Have somewhat more to tell, —
Some news of Whence and Whither,
And where the soul will dwell, —
If on that outer darkness
The sun of hope may shine, —
He makes life worth the living!
I take his God for mine!"

5. So spake the wise old warrior;
And all about him cried,
"Paulinus' God hath conquered!
And he shall be our guide;
For he makes life worth living
Who brings this message plain, —
When our brief days are over,
That we shall live again." *Unknown.*

NOTES.

1. Or Eadwine, reigned from 617 to 633; and although he was only king of Northumbria, he was overlord of all the rest of Britain, Kent excepted. The story of his life is told by the great Northumbrian monk and historian, the venerable Bede, who says that Paulinus was sent to Northumbria by Eadbald, king of Kent, when his sister Ethelbert married Edwin.

2. It included all the country, on the east side of Britain, between the Forth and the Humber.

3. Northumbria was divided into two provinces, — Deira in the south, and Bernicia in the north.

4. *Rood* is English for *cross*, the latter being derived from the Latin *crux*, a cross.

5. The Bishop of Rome, who sent the mission to England. The keys and sword are the arms of the Pope.

Composition. — Tell the story of the message of Paulinus to King Edwin from the following heads: 1. The pale, dark Roman missionary. 2. The ruddy, fair-haired English king. 3. The message. 4. How received. 5. The old warrior's comparison of life. 6. His reason for accepting the new faith.

EXERCISES. — 1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: In the seventh century England was divided into seven kingdoms.

2. Analyze the above sentence.

3. Select from stanzas 2 and 3 the words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used.

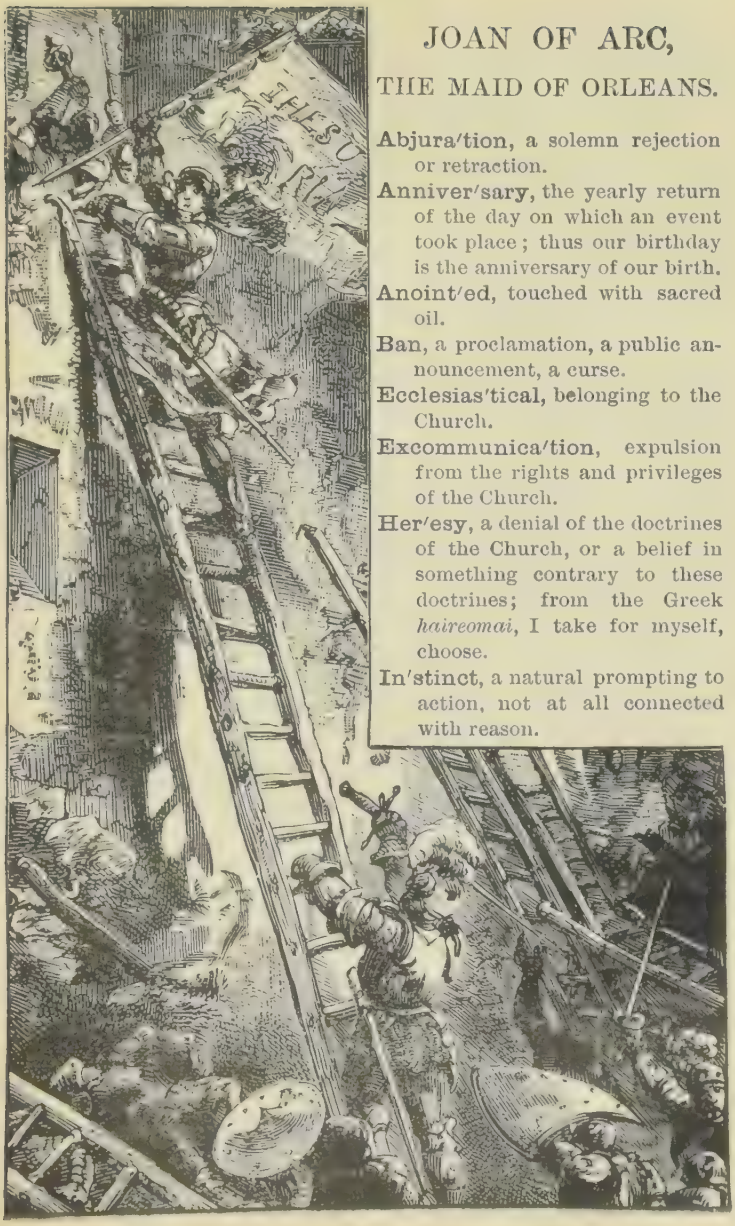
4. Write out as many of the compounds of the following words as you know: *black*, *down*, *king*, *key*, *snow*, *light*, *open*, *hope*, *day*.

5. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 4, page 32, but substitute *snow* and *night* for *earth* and *sea*.

THE LIFE OF MAN.

Then another of the King's thanes rose and said: "Truly, the life of a man in this world, compared with that life whereof we wot not, is on this wise. It is as when thou, O King, art sitting at supper with thine aldermen and thy thanes in the time of winter, when the hearth is lighted in the midst and the hall is warm, but without the rains and the snow are falling, and the winds are howling; then cometh a sparrow and flieth through the house; she cometh in by one door, and goeth out by another. While she is in the house she feeleth not the storm of winter; but yet, when a little moment of rest is passed, she flieth again into the storm, and passeth away from our eyes. So it is with the life of a man; it is but for a moment; what goeth before it, and what cometh after it, wot we not at all. Wherefore, if these strangers can tell us aught, that we may know whence man cometh and whither he goeth, let us hearken to them and follow their law."

Freeman.



JOAN OF ARC,

THE MAID OF ORLEANS.

Abjura'tion, a solemn rejection or retraction.

Anniver'sary, the yearly return of the day on which an event took place; thus our birthday is the anniversary of our birth.

Anoint'ed, touched with sacred oil.

Ban, a proclamation, a public announcement, a curse.

Ecclesias'tical, belonging to the Church.

Excommunica'tion, expulsion from the rights and privileges of the Church.

Her'esy, a denial of the doctrines of the Church, or a belief in something contrary to these doctrines; from the Greek *haireomai*, I take for myself, choose.

In'stinct, a natural prompting to action, not at all connected with reason.

Mass, the service of the Roman Catholic Church.
Ran′som, a buying back.
Res′pite, forbearance; or putting off the execution of a criminal.
Shrewd′ness, clear-sightedness.
Sor′cery, magic; the power of reading the future by the help of evil spirits.
Subjuga′tion, a reducing, by conquest, under the power of another (Latin *sub*, under, and *jugum*, a yoke).
Tem′porary, for a time only.

1. Jeanne d'Arc, or, as she is named in English, Joan of Arc, was the daughter of a peasant of Domrémy, a little village on the borders of Lorraine and Champagne. She was born in 1412. Domrémy is close to the great woods of the Vosges,[1] in which Jeanne loved to wander, watching the birds and the beasts, and making friends of them. At home she was "a good girl, simple and pleasant in her ways," and differed from other girls in being more modest, industrious, and pious. She was taught to sew and to spin, but not to read and write. 2. At this time all the northern part of France was torn and desolated by the war which had for its object the subjugation of France to the power of England.[2] Misery and disease were everywhere, and even in her distant village, at the foot of the Vosges, Jeanne had been made acquainted with the horrors and hardships which afflicted her country. When about thirteen years of age, she believed that St. Michael appeared to her in a blaze of light, commanding her to be modest and attentive to all the duties of religion. This vision, and her sorrow for the distress of France, absorbed her whole being; her constant expression was, she had "pity on the fair realm of France." 3. When she was fifteen, she fancied St. Michael appeared to her again, and bade her go and fight for the Dauphin.[3] "Messire," replied the girl, "I am but a poor maiden; I know not how to ride to the wars, or to lead men-at-arms." The poor girl wept, and wished to escape a work so difficult and

so new. But, encouraged by the angel, her brave spirit overcame her fears, and she made known her mission to her friends. 4. At first she was laughed at as insane, and her father swore he would drown her rather than she should go with men to the wars; but she succeeded in the end in leaving her home, and in making her way to the Dauphin, whom she persuaded of her heavenly mission, and promised that he should be anointed and crowned in the town of Rheims.[4] She was now in her eighteenth year, tall, strong, and active, and able to remain on horseback without food from dawn till dark. Mounted on a charger, clad in a suit of white armor from head to foot, and bearing a white banner, she seemed "a thing wholly divine, whether to see or hear."

5. In April, 1429, she undertook the relief of Orleans, which was closely besieged by the English, and which, pressed by famine, was on the point of surrender when Jeanne presented herself to the Dauphin. In the midst of a terrible thunder-storm she marched through the English lines, unperceived and unopposed, and next morning showed herself with her banner on the walls of Orleans. "I bring you," she said to the French general, Dunois,[5] who had sallied out of Orleans to meet her, "the best aid ever sent to any one, the aid of the King of Heaven." Fort after fort fell into her hands, and the English, believing they were fighting against invisible powers, raised the siege and marched away. The belief in witchcraft and sorcery was then real and living among all classes of people. 6. Triumph after triumph followed; and, with an ever-increasing army, she at length reached the gates of Rheims. "O gentle king, the pleasure of God is done!" she cried, when she saw the crown placed on the head of Charles

the Seventh; and she now passionately longed to go back to her father, to her village and her quiet home. "O that I might go and keep sheep once more with my brothers and sisters! they would be so glad to see me again!" But the French court had found out how useful she was, and refused to let her depart.

7. Jeanne's instinct and the heavenly voices spoke the truth. From this time she could not help feeling that her mission was at an end, and that she was fighting without the support of heaven. During the defence of Compiègne she was thrown from her horse and taken prisoner. After the barbarous custom of the time in dealing with prisoners, she was sold by her captor to the Duke of Burgundy, an ally of England, and again by the Duke into the hands of the English. 8. Her triumphs were triumphs of sorcery in the eyes of her enemies; and even her king must have believed her to be a witch, for, with the base ingratitude born of intense and royal selfishness, he made not the smallest attempt either to ransom or release her. After a year's imprisonment, an ecclesiastical court, with the Bishop of Beauvais[6] at its head, was formed to try her. 9. The accusation was that she had been guilty of heresy and magic. Not permitted an advocate or defender, she was supported only by the courage of innocence; but she displayed in her answers a shrewdness and simple good sense that contrasted strongly with the artful dealings of the learned doctors, her judges. When they asked, "Do you believe that you are in the favor of God?" she replied, "If I am not, God will put me in it; if I am, God will keep me in it."

10. When asked if the saints of her visions hated the English, she answered, "They love whatever God loves, and hate whatever he hates." And when the Bishop of

Beauvais, still trying to entrap her, proceeded, "Does God, then, hate the English?" she still replied, "Whether God loves or hates the English I do not know; but I know that all those who do not die in battle shall be driven away from this realm by the king of France." When questioned about her standard, she said, "I carried it instead of a lance, to avoid slaying any one; I have killed nobody. I only said, 'Rush in among the English,' and I rushed among them the first myself." 11. "The voices," she continued, in answer to further questions,—"the voices told me to take it without fear, and that God would help me." And when they asked her if her hope of victory was founded on the banner or herself, she said, "It was founded on God, and on naught besides."

She was deprived of mass. "Our Lord can make me hear it without your aid," she said, weeping.

It is said that an Englishman who was present at the trial was so struck with Jeanne's evident sincerity that he could not help crying out, "A worthy woman, if she were but English!" 12. Her judges drew up twelve articles of accusation on the grounds of sorcery and heresy. On the 24th of May, 1431, the anniversary of the day on which the maid had been taken prisoner the year before, she was led to the cemetery of St. Ouen, where two platforms were erected. On the one stood the Cardinal of Winchester, the Bishop of Beauvais, and several other churchmen. 13. Jeanne was conducted to the second platform, where a preacher named Erard stormed at her fiercely; she listened with gentle patience, until he began to accuse the king;[7] then she interrupted him warmly, saying: "Speak of me, but do not speak of the king. He is a good Christian, and not such as you say; I can swear to you he is the noblest of

all Christians, and one who the most loves the Church and the faith."

14. When the sermon was finished, the preacher read to Jeanne a form of abjuration, of which she asked an explanation, saying she had nothing to abjure, for that all she had done was at the command of God. At this they told her she must submit to the Church, and then, using threats, they pointed to the public executioner, telling her that instant death was the only alternative. Poor Jeanne! Braver hearts than thine have failed at such a trial. Trembling, she put her mark to the paper, saying, "I would rather sign than burn!"

15. The Bishop of Beauvais then proceeded to pass sentence. He said, "that as, by the grace of God, she had given up her errors, and come back to the bosom of the Church, the ban of excommunication was removed. But," he added, "as she had sinned against God and the holy Catholic Church, though 'by grace and moderation' her life was spared, she must pass the rest of it in prison, with the bread of grief and the water of anguish for her food."

16. This, however, was only a temporary respite; it was not designed that her life should be spared. Her enemies sought only to gain time in order to find a better excuse for her death; but they sought in vain. She was accused of a return to heresy, and condemned to death. A great pile was raised in the market-place of Rouen; here she was led, and found her enemies awaiting her. When she asked for a cross, an English soldier made one by breaking his staff asunder. She kissed it and clasped it to her breast. 17. Suddenly she cried out, "Yes! my voices were of God! they have never deceived me!" Her last word, with her eyes fixed on a crucifix held before her by a priest, was "Jesus!"

and amid the deep and awful silence of the brutal soldiery and unfeeling people, the heroic soul of the poor young country girl passed away.

A statue of the Maid of Orleans now marks the spot where she suffered death.

18. What is to be thought of her? What is to be thought of the poor shepherd girl from the hills and forests of Lorraine, who rose suddenly out of the quiet, out of the safety, out of the religious inspiration of deep pastoral solitudes, to a station in the van of armies, and to the more perilous station at the right hand of kings? The poor maiden drank not herself from that cup of rest which she had secured for France. No! for her voice was then silent. No! for her feet were dust.

19. Pure, innocent, noble-hearted girl! When the thunders of universal France, as even yet may happen, shall proclaim the grandeur of her who gave up all for her country, thine ear will have been deaf for five centuries. To suffer and to do, that was thy portion in this life; to *do*, — never for thyself, always for others; to *suffer*, — never in the persons of generous champions, always in thine own; that was thy destiny; and not for a moment was it hidden from thyself. Life, thou saidst, is short; let me use that life, so transitory, for glorious ends.

20. This pure creature — pure from every suspicion of even a visionary self-interest, even as she was pure in senses more obvious — never once relaxed in her belief in the darkness that was travelling to meet her. She might not prefigure the very manner of her death; she saw not in vision, perhaps, the aërial altitude of the fiery scaffold, the spectators on every road pouring into Rouen as to a coronation, the surging smoke, the volley-

ing flames; but the voice that called her to death, — that she heard forever.

21. Great was the throne of France even in those days, and great was he that sat upon it; but well she knew that not the throne, nor he that sat upon it, was for *her*; but, on the contrary, that she was for *them*. Not she by them, but they by her, should rise from the dust. Gorgeous were the lilies of France, and for centuries had they the privilege to spread their beauty over land and sea; but well she knew — early at Domrémy she had read that bitter truth — that the lilies of France would decorate no garland for *her*. Flower nor bud, bell nor blossom, would ever bloom for *her*.

22. With an undaunted soul, but a meek and saintly demeanor, the maiden encountered her terrible fate. Upon her head was placed a mitre, bearing the inscription, "Relapsed heretic, apostate, idolatress." Her piety displayed itself in the most touching manner to the last; and her angelic forgetfulness of self was manifested in a remarkable degree. 23. The executioner had been directed to apply his torch from below. He did so. The fiery smoke rose upwards in billowing volumes. A monk was then standing at her side. Wrapt up in his sublime office, he saw not the danger, but still persisted in his prayers.

Even then, when the last enemy was racing up the fiery stairs to seize her, even at that moment did this noblest of girls think only for *him* — the one friend that would not forsake her — and not for herself, bidding him with her last breath to care for his own preservation, but to leave *her* to God. "Go down," she said; "lift up the cross before me, that I may see it in dying, and speak to me pious words to the end."

De Quincey.

NOTES.

1. A range of mountains in the northeast of France; now one of the boundaries between France and Germany.

2. This war was begun by Henry V., who had been completely successful; he had married a daughter of the French king, and was to receive the crown of France at the king's death. Henry, however, died suddenly, leaving a son not a year old to succeed him; the Duke of Bedford, the late king's brother, was appointed General and Regent of France.

3. The eldest son of the king of France.

4. A town in the northeast of France, where, down to the present century, the kings of France were crowned and anointed,—a vessel of sacred oil, called *La sainte Ampoule* (the holy flask), being kept here for the purpose.

5. A cousin of the Dauphin, and one of the bravest soldiers France ever produced.

6. A town a little to the east of Rouen.

7. The Dauphin was now Charles VII.

COMPOSITION.— Give an account of Joan of Arc's career, under the following heads: 1. Her quiet village home. 2. Visions. 3. Her journey to the Dauphin. 4. Relief of Orleans. 5. Coronation at Rheims. 6. Taken prisoner at the siege of Compiègne. 7. Trial. 8. Execution.

EXERCISES.— 1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The execution of Joan of Arc, and the death of the Regent Bedford, destroyed the power of the English in France.

2. Analyze the above.

3. Select from sections 4 and 5 words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used.

4. Compare the meanings of *close*, *fair*, *suit*, *court*, *form*, in the following pairs of sentences, and show, from the derivation of these words, their connection or difference in meaning: (1) The room was *close* and unhealthy. Her cottage is *close* by. (2) The drover made a *fair* bargain. The lady was *fair* and gentle. (3) This arrangement will not *suit* me. His *suit* was made of good broadcloth. (4) The law *courts* are at Westminster. The candidate *courts* the good opinion of the electors. (5) A *form* of prayer was read in all the churches. What manly and beautiful *forms* one sees in the statues of Greece!

SELF-SACRIFICE.

[Philip II. of Spain succeeded his father, Charles V., as king of Spain and the Netherlands in 1556. He had in 1554 married Mary, queen of England; and after her death he sent against England, in 1588, the famous "Invincible Armada." His policy was to keep down the Netherlands, which were strongly Protestant, by tyranny, torture, fines, imprisonment, and cruelties of every kind. Elizabeth sent an army in 1585, under Lord Leicester, for the relief of the Netherlands. Sir Philip

Sidney was a young man, but he had already distinguished himself as a poet and as a soldier.]

An′cestry, lineage, or line of forefathers.
Displayed′, showed plainly.
Endued′, gifted.
In′bred, natural, innate.
Ra′diance, brightness.
Train, attendant courtiers.
Wist′ful, longing.

1. In the battle of Zutphen, which was fought in the cause of liberty against the tyrant Philip of Spain, Sir Philip Sidney, who commanded the English cavalry, displayed the greatest coolness and courage. He had two horses killed under him; and whilst mounting a third, he was wounded by a musket-shot from the trenches, which broke his thigh-bone. 2. He had to ride back about a mile and a half to the camp; and being faint with loss of blood, and parched with thirst, he called for a draught of water, which was instantly brought him; but as he was putting the vessel to his mouth, a poor wounded soldier, who happened to be carried past him at that instant, looked at it with wistful eyes. The gallant and generous Sidney took the vessel from his mouth without drinking, and delivered it to the soldier, with the words, "Thy necessity is yet greater than mine."

1. 'T was on the field of Zutphen;
The battle's din was o'er,
And bold and gallant foemen
Had fallen to rise no more.

2. Just then with lessening radiance
Streamed the pale light of day
O'er the sad place, where side by side
Victor and vanquished lay.

3. Among the dead and dying
Was many a noble face,
Which told of gentle ancestry,
And spoke of inbred grace.

4. But 'midst them all a face there shone
Pre-eminently bright,
A face that almost seemed endued
With more than earthly light, —

5. A face which e'en to look upon
Reflected goodness gave,
And left a sense of happiness,
It was so true and brave.

6. It was the face of such a man
As you shall rarely see;
Of all Queen Bess's brilliant train
The courtliest knight was he.

7. But sore he had been wounded;
When hardly yet begun,
His noble life was ebbing fast,
His glorious work was done.

8. And, as he rode in agony,
A deep cry from him burst:
"O, for one drop of water,
To quench this raging thirst!"

9. With willing steps and loving hearts
They bring it him in haste;
See! with what eagerness he longs
The cooling draught to taste!

10. But, as in very act to drink,
He hears a stifled moan
From a poor soldier lying near,
And dying all alone.

11. Without one least complaining word,
Without one single sigh,
He yields the cup; he simply says,
"*He* needs it more than I."

DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

1. In the 1st verse, avoid the verse-accent on *on;* make a slight pause after '*T was*, and say, '*T was on-the-field-of-Zutphen.*

2. In the 8th verse pause after *O.*

3. In the 9th verse pause after *See!* slur over the word *with.*

4. In the 10th verse neither *as* nor *a* is emphatic.

COMPOSITION.— Tell the story of Sir Philip Sidney from the following outline: 1. He is wounded in the battle of Zutphen. 2. He suffers terribly from thirst. 3. He calls for water. 4. He gives it to a wounded soldier, saying, &c.

EXERCISES.— 1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: Sir Philip Sidney fought in the cause of liberty against Philip of Spain.

2. Analyze the above sentence.

3. Select from the first three sections all the words that can be used either as nouns or as verbs, such as *fight*, *display*, &c.

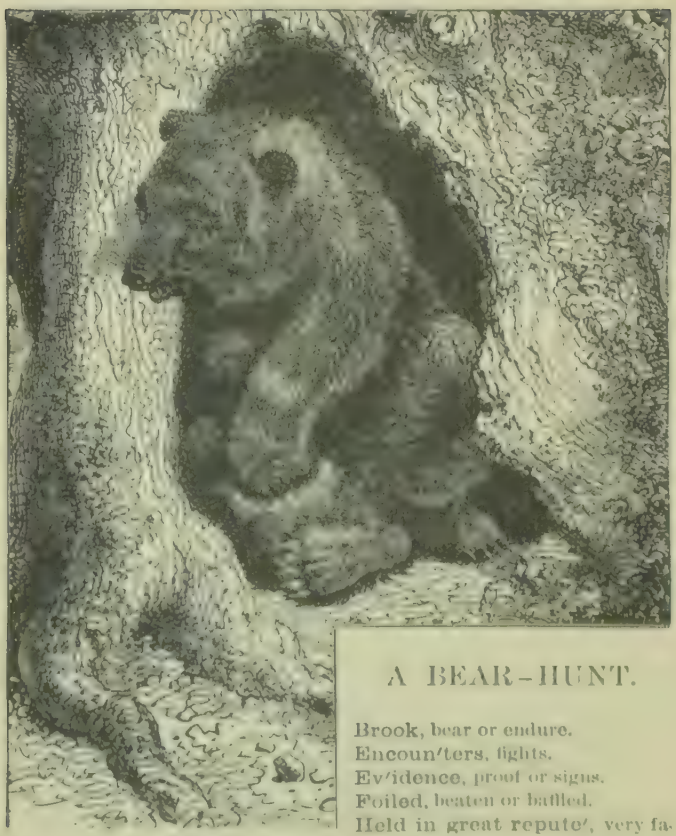
4. With each of the first three of these selected words make a pair of sentences illustrating its use,— in the first member of the pair as a verb, in the second as a noun.

5. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *generosity*, *radiance*, *eminence*, *endowment.*

6. Write down as many of the compounds of the following words as you know: *mount*, *carry*, *take*, *full*, *most*, *willing*, *act.*

7. Write an exercise as directed in Exc. 4, page 32, but substituting *siege* and *tyrant* for *earth* and *sea.*

206775



A BEAR-HUNT.

Brook, bear or endure.
Encoun'ters, fights.
Ev'idence, proof or signs.
Foiled, beaten or baffled.
Held in great repute', very famous; renowned.
Prompt'ed, put into his mind.
Vig'ilance, watchfulness.

Intrud'ers, persons who go where they have no right to go.
Mu'tilated, hacked and torn.

1 My ride in the Altai Mountains[1] was over ground where bears are numerous; their tracks we followed, but without seeing even one. I passed places where fearful encounters with these animals have taken place. A very large one had been seen by the wood-cutters about a dozen miles from the gold mine; and two men,

one a hunter, held in great repute for his daring and skill, determined to make his acquaintance. 2. After wandering about for some time, they came upon his tracks, quite fresh in the long, dewy grass. He was evidently near; this made them cautious, and they prepared for action. Presently a loud growl saluted their ears; then out he sprang from a thicket about thirty-five paces distant, where he stood snuffing the breeze and eyeing the intruders.

3. The hunter fired, and the ball struck, but not in a vital part. In an instant the wounded animal charged. The other man, who was less experienced, reserved his shot until within twenty paces. The rifle missed fire. At once the brute raised himself on his hind legs, and, tearing the earth beneath him, rushed on his first assailant, striking him down with a blow that stripped his scalp and turned it over his face; then, seizing his arm, he began to gnaw and crush it to the bone, gradually ascending to the shoulder. 4. The man called to his companion to load and fire; but the fellow, when he saw his friend so fearfully mangled, ran away and left him to his fate. Late in the evening he reached the gold mine, and reported what had happened; but it was too late to make any effort in behalf of the mangled hunter. The officer ordered a large party out at daylight the next morning, with the coward for a guide. 5. He took them through the forest to the spot where the encounter had taken place, of which there still remained ample evidence; but no remains of the victim were met with, except some torn clothing and his rifle. By the state of the grass it was evident that the man had been carried off into the thick forest. A diligent pursuit was therefore made; sometimes the track was lost, but the pursuers of the bear were

too well skilled in woodcraft to be foiled, and at length discovered his larder. 6. He had dragged the hunter into a dense mass of wood and bushes, and, to render the place still more secure, had broken off a great number of branches and heaped them over his body. These were quickly stripped off, when, to their great surprise, they found the man, though frightfully mutilated and quite insensible, still living! Two long poles were immediately cut, to which saddle-cloths were secured in the middle. One horse was placed in front, another at the back, and the ends of the poles secured to the stirrups, thus forming a very easy conveyance. 7. The sufferer was placed upon the saddle-cloths and carefully propped up, and then began the painful march back as fast as possible.

On their arrival at the gold mines he was taken directly to the hospital; the doctor dressed his wounds, and administered all that medical skill and kindness prompted. His patient survived, but long remained unconscious of everything around him. After more than two months had elapsed, a slight improvement took place, and his reason appeared to be restored. 8. His first question was about the bear, and then he referred to his own defeat. He spoke of nothing else, and was constantly asking for his rifle to go and kill "Michael Ivanovitch"[2] (the bear). The medical men thought his mind seriously affected. As he gained strength there arose in him so great a desire to have another combat with his powerful and ferocious enemy that it was considered necessary to place him under some restraint.

9. The summer had passed over, and autumn had arrived; the frost had scorched the foliage, changing it into golden and crimson hues; and, as it was now thought the poor lunatic had forgotten his adventure,

less vigilence was exercised towards him. The opportunity was not lost, for he secretly left the hospital and started off for his cottage. All the family being absent, except some young children, he was enabled to secure his rifle and ammunition, and provide himself with an axe and a loaf of black bread, which he stowed in his wallet. 10. Thus armed and provisioned, he left the village in the evening without being seen, except by the children, and was soon lost to them in the forest.

When it was discovered that he had escaped, people were sent out in various directions to seek him, but they returned without success. More than a week passed over, during which nothing had been heard of him, when one day he walked into the hospital, carrying the skin of a huge black bear on his shoulders, and, throwing it down, exclaimed, "I told you I would have him!" 11. This man was a fine old hunter; it was not a spirit of revenge which prompted him to this daring act; the fact was, he could not brook the idea of a defeat. Now that his reputation was re-established, he was happy; his health was again restored; nor was this the last bear that fell before his deadly rifle. *Atkinson.*

NOTES.

1. **Altai Mountains.**— A high range in Asiatic Russia or Siberia, to the north of Chinese Tartary. The name means *gold mountain*; the range is rich in gold, silver, copper, and lead, the mines of which are worked by the Russians.

2. **Michael Ivanovitch.**— Hunters are in the habit of giving names to those wild animals they happen to "know," and have frequently tried to ensnare. The hunter in this case was a Russian, and so he gave him a Russian name. The name means *Michael, the son of Ivan* (or *John*). This is the usual way names are given in Russia, where surnames are still unknown. Thus a boy is called *Peter Alexandrovitch* (*son of Alexander*): another *Michael Petrovitch* (*son of Peter*), and so on.

EXERCISES. -1. Write a short composition on "The Wounded Hunter" from the following heads: (1) Is struck down by a bear. (2) Companion runs away. (3) Is dragged by the bear to his larder. (4) Is found after a long search by his friends. (5) Two months in hospital. (6) Disappears for a week. (7) Returns with the skin.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) Fearful encounters with these animals have taken place. (2) The hunter was held in great repute for his daring and skill. (3) The second hunter reserved his shot. (4) It was too late to make any effort in his behalf. (5) There still remained ample evidence of the struggle. (6) The doctor administered all that skill and kindness prompted. (7) Less vigilance was exercised towards him. (8) He could not brook the idea of a defeat.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: They came upon his track, quite fresh in the long, dewy grass.

4. Analyze the above sentence.

5. Select from section 3 all the words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used. - such as *fire*, *part*, *wound*, &c.

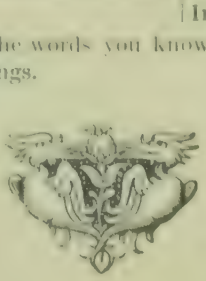
6. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 4, page 101, using *four* words instead of *three*.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *acquaintance*, *distance*, *assailant*, *ascent*, *evidence*, *insensibility*, *provision*, *exclamation*, *pursuit*.

8. Carefully distinguish between the ending of the following words:

Succeed	Secede	Supreme	Esteem	Convene	Magazine
Proceed	Precede	Extreme	Redeem	Serene	Marine
Exceed	Recede			Intervene	Tambourine

9. Write down all the words you know descriptive of *hunting*, with their meanings.



NATURE HER OWN PHYSICIAN.

Be guile' age, cheat age into believing that it is still young.
Fa'ble, story, not true, but intended to teach a lesson.
In sum, to sum up or give the result of the whole matter.
Rev'erend snow, the white hair that accompanies age.

1. Hark hither, reader! wilt thou see
Nature her own physician be?
Wilt see a man all his own wealth,
His own music, his own health?
A man whose sober soul can tell
How to wear her garments well, —
Her garments that upon her sit,
As garments should do, close and fit?
A well-clothed soul that 's not oppressed
Nor choked with what she should be dressed?
A soul sheathed in a crystal shrine,
Through which all her bright features shine, —
As when a piece of wanton lawn,
A thin aërial veil, is drawn
O'er beauty's face, seeming to hide,
More sweetly shows the blushing bride?
A soul, whose intellectual beams
No mists do mask, *no* lazy steams?
A happy soul, that all the way
To heaven hath a summer's day?
2. Wouldst see a man whose well-warmed blood
Bathes him in a genuine flood?
A man whose tunèd humors be
A seat of rarest harmony?
Wouldst see blithe looks, fresh cheeks, beguile
Age? Wouldst see December smile?
Wouldst see nests of new roses grow
In a bed of reverend snow?

Warm thoughts, free spirits, flattering
Winter's self into a spring?

3. In sum, wouldst see a man that can
Live to be old, and still a man?
Whose latest and most leaden hours
Fall with soft wings, stuck with soft flowers,
And, when life's sweet fable ends,
Soul and body part like friends, —
No quarrels, murmurs, no delay, —
A kiss, a sigh, and so away?
This rare one, reader, wouldst thou see?
Hark hither! and thyself be he. *Crashaw.*

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1. — Line 3: Emphasis on *all* and *own*; not on *his*. Line 7: No accent on *upon*. Line 9: Emphasis on *oppressed*. Line 13: No accent on *when*, but hasten on to *is drawn*. VERSE 3. — Line 2: Avoid accent on *to*, and make *to-be-old* one word. Line 4: Avoid accent on *with*; emphasis on *soft*. Line 5: No accent upon *when*.

ROBERT BRUCE VICTORIOUS.

Achieve', to perform.
Bas'inet, helmet, headpiece.
Cas'ket, a little *cask*, or case for holding jewels.
Couched, in place for attack.
Cru'cifix, a figure of Christ on the cross.
Destina'tion, place to which one is going.
Embalm', to preserve from decay by spices and fragrant drugs.
Enjoin', to order with authority.
En'terprise, attempt, undertaking.
Fe'alty, the oath to be true to their king which all knights took (Lat. *fidelitas*, faith).
Galled, annoyed.
Liege, see page 33.
Low'er, look dark.
Loy'al, obedient, faithful.
Mass, a Roman Catholic service.
Sep'ulchre, tomb.
Van, the front.

1. Bruce came back to Scotland with renewed hope and courage; and now his fortunes were entirely

changed. He defeated the English whenever he met them, and the battle of Bannockburn[1] made him completely victorious over his enemies. The night before this great battle began, Bruce, mounted on a little pony, and with battle-axe in hand, rode along the front of his army, addressing words of encouragement to his men. On his basinet he wore a small crown, distinguishing him from his knights. When the main body of the English came up, an English knight, Sir Harry de Bohun, seeing the Scottish king riding along in this manner, set spurs to his horse, and, with spear couched, galloped against him. 2. The king saw him, and permitted him to come very near, then suddenly turned his pony a little to one side, so that Sir Harry missed him with the lance point, and was in the act of being carried past by the career of his horse. But King Robert rose in his stirrups, and struck Sir Harry on the head with his battle-axe so terrible a blow that it broke to pieces his iron helmet, and hurled him dead from the saddle. Bruce, when reproached by his lords for exposing himself so unnecessarily, did nothing but grumble that he had broken the shaft of his battle-axe.

3. It was a sleepless night on both sides. The Scotch, as being the weaker, spent it in prayer and devotion; the English, as being the stronger, in drinking and making merry. In the gray of the morning the two armies stood looking at each other. The Abbot of Inchaffray, after saying mass, walked along barefoot, holding a crucifix, in front of the Scotch, who all knelt. Seeing this, the English cried out, "They ask mercy." "Yes," said Sir Ingram de Umfraville, a Scottish knight in the English army, "but it is from Heaven." 4. The same knight advised the king to pretend to retreat, so as to draw the Scotch out of their well-chosen position; but

his advice was not taken. The signal was given, and the English van moved on to the attack.

Immovably firm, the Lion standard[2] floating proudly on a rising ground, fixed in a large earthfast stone, the Scottish battalions waited the onset. 5. Edward Bruce's[3] wing was the first attacked; but in a short time all the three bodies were engaged, and there were three battles going on together. Seeing his men severely galled by the English archers, Bruce detached a body of five hundred cavalry, under Sir Robert Keith, to ride in among these and disperse them, while he himself plunged into the fight with his reserve. The battle was now a hand-to-hand fight of 100,000 against 30,000 men. 6. Fortune turned in favor of the weaker party. The English were seized with a panic fear, and their confusion was turned into a flight. It appears that a group of Scottish baggage-carriers and camp-followers, placed for safety behind

Spearmen. Fourteenth Century

the brow of the hill, becoming anxious to learn the fate of the battle, crawled to the top of it, whence they could look down on the field beneath. 7. The moment they saw that their countrymen were gaining the day, they set up a prolonged shout and waved their cloaks, which giving an impression to the English that there was a new army coming to the attack, they turned their backs and fled. Many crowded to the rocks near Stirling, and many were drowned in the Forth. Edward, the English king, led off the field by the Earl of Pembroke, fled in the direction of Linlithgow; but being pursued by Douglas and sixty horsemen, he did not rest till he arrived at Dunbar, a distance of sixty miles from the field of battle, and there he took shipping for England.

8. When King Robert felt that his end drew near, he sent for those barons and lords of his kingdom in whose devotion he had the greatest confidence, and affectionately commanded them, on their fealty, that they should faithfully keep the kingdom for David, his son, promise to obey David, and place the crown upon his head when he attained the full age. Then the king beckoned that brave and gentle knight, Sir James Douglas, to come near, and thus addressed him in presence of the rest of his courtiers: "Sir James, my dear friend, few know better than yourself the great toil and suffering which, in my day, I have undergone for the maintenance of the rights of this kingdom; and when all went hardest against me, I made a vow, which it now deeply grieves me not to have accomplished. I then vowed to God, that, if it were his sovereign pleasure to permit me to see an end of my wars, and to establish me in peace and security in the government of this kingdom, I would then proceed to the Holy Land, and carry on war

against the enemies of my Lord and Saviour, to the best and utmost of my power. 9. Never hath my heart ceased to bend earnestly to this purpose; but it hath pleased our Lord to deny me my wishes, for I have had my hands full in my days, and, at the last, you see me taken with this grievous sickness, so that I have nothing to do but to die. Since, therefore, this poor frail body cannot go thither and accomplish that which my heart hath so much desired, I have resolved to send my heart there, in place of my body, to fulfil my vow; and because, in my whole kingdom, I know not any knight more hardy than yourself, or more thoroughly furnished with all those knightly qualities requisite for the accomplishment of this vow, it is my earnest request to you, my beloved and tried friend, that, for the love you bear me, you will, instead of myself, undertake this voyage, and acquit my soul of its debt to my Saviour; for, believe me, I hold this opinion of your truth and nobleness, that whatever you once undertake you will not rest till you successfully accomplish; and thus shall I die in peace, if you will do all that I shall enjoin you. 10. It is my desire, then, that as soon as I am dead you take the heart out of my body, and cause it to be embalmed, and spare not to take as much of my treasure as appears sufficient for the expenses of your journey, both for yourself and your companions; and that you carry my heart along with you, and place it in the holy sepulchre of our Lord, since this poor body cannot go thither. And I do moreover command, that in the course of your journey you keep up that royal state, both for yourself and your companions, that into whatever lands or cities you may come all may know you have in charge to bear beyond seas the heart of King Robert of Scotland."

11. At these words, all who stood by began to weep; and when Sir James himself was able to reply, he said, "Ah, most gentle and noble king! a thousand times do I thank you for the great honor you have done me in permitting me to be the keeper and bearer of so great and precious a treasure. Most willingly, and, to the best of my power, most faithfully shall I obey your commands, although I do truly think myself little worthy to achieve so high an enterprise." "My dear friend," said the king, "I heartily thank you, provided you promise to do my bidding, on the word of a true and loyal knight." "Undoubtedly, my liege, I do promise so," replied Douglas, "by the faith which I owe to God, and to the order to which I belong."

12. "Now, praise be to God," said the king, "I shall die in peace, since I am assured that the best and most valiant knight in my kingdom hath promised to achieve for me that which I myself never could accomplish." And, not long after, this noble monarch departed this life. He died, June 7, 1329, in the fifty-fifth year of his age. Douglas set out on his solemn expedition with the heart of the deceased sovereign in a silver casket; but being killed in Spain fighting with the Moors,[1] the casket never reached its destination, and was brought back to Scotland, and buried at Melrose. The body of the royal Bruce, after being embalmed, was buried in the Abbey Church of Dunfermline.[5]

Sir Walter Scott (adapted).

NOTES.

1. Bannockburn is near Stirling.

2. The national flag of Scotland, — a red lion on a golden ground.

3. King Robert's brother; he became King of Ireland in

1316, but was defeated and killed at the battle of Dundalk, in 1317.

4. See note 7, page 83.

5. Dunfermline is in Fifeshire.

SUMMARY.

1. The day before the battle of Bannockburn, Bruce rode out on a small pony, and was attacked by Sir Harry de Bohun, whom he killed with a blow of his battle-axe. 2. The Scotch spent the night in prayer, the English in drinking. 3. The standard of the Lion was fastened in a stone. 4. The English van opened the attack. 5. The battle became a hand-to-hand fight between the 100,000 Englishmen and the 30,000 Scotchmen. 6. Panic seized the English, and they fled. 7. The camp-followers on the hill now set up a shout, and the flight became a rout. 8. Edward II. was led off the field by the Earl of Pembroke, and galloped to Dunbar. 9. When King Robert Bruce was dying he requested Sir James (or Lord James) Douglas to carry his heart to the Holy Land, because he had not been able to go there himself. 10. Sir James promised to do so. 11. Bruce died, June 7, 1329, at the age of fifty-four. 12. His heart was placed in a silver casket. 13. Douglas was killed in Spain, fighting with the Moors, and the casket was brought back to Scotland, and buried at Melrose. 14. The body of Bruce was embalmed, and buried in Dunfermline Abbey. (The battle of Bannockburn was fought on June 24, 1314.)

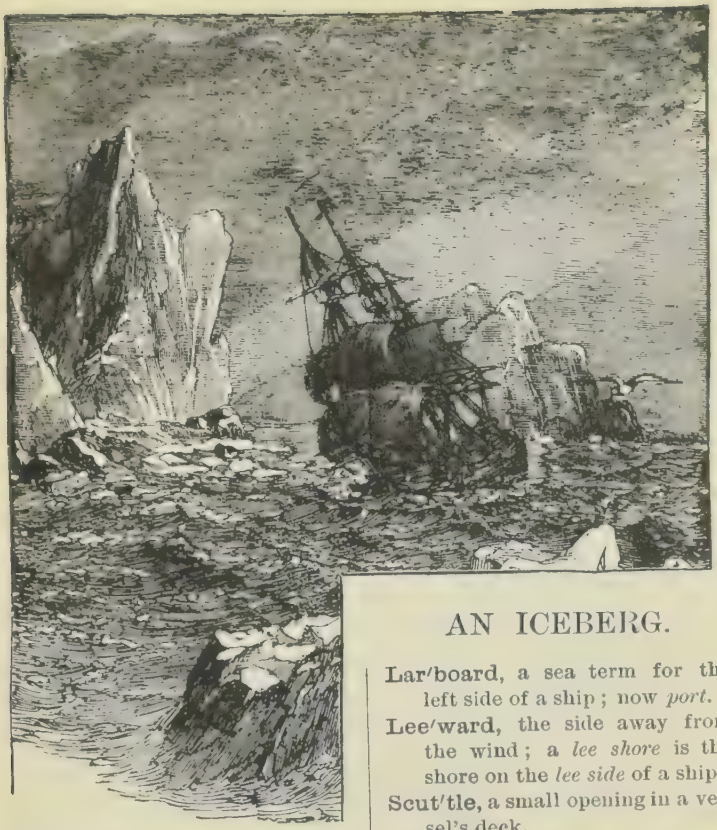
Composition.—Give an account of the battle of Bannockburn from the following heads: 1. Scotch posted on a hill. 2. English advance. 3. Edward Bruce's division attacked. 4. Three battles. 5. English archers. 6. Sir Robert Keith's cavalry. 7. Appearance of the baggage carriers. 8. Flight of the English.

Exercises.—1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: Bruce begged Sir James Douglas to carry his heart to Jerusalem.

2. Analyze the above sentence.

3. Select from section 12 words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used.

4. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 4, page 32, but substitute *battle* and *king* for *earth* and *sea*.



AN ICEBERG.

In circum/ference, round about; from Lat. *circum*, round, and *fero*, I carry.

Lar/board, a sea term for the left side of a ship; now *port*.

Lee/ward, the side away from the wind; a *lee shore* is the shore on the *lee side* of a ship.

Scut/tle, a small opening in a vessel's deck.

Transpar/ent, that can be seen through; Lat. *trans*, through, and *pareo*, I appear.

1. At twelve o'clock we went below, and had just got through dinner, when the cook put his head down the scuttle, and told us to come on deck and see the finest sight we had ever seen.

"Where away, cook?" asked the first man who went up. "On the larboard bow." And there lay, floating in the ocean several miles off, an immense irregular mass, its top and points covered with snow, and its

centre of a deep indigo color. This was an iceberg, one of the largest size, as one of our men said who had been in the Northern Ocean.

2. As far as the eye could reach, the sea in every direction was of a deep blue color, the waves running high and fresh, and sparkling in the light; and in the midst lay this immense mountain island, its cavities and valleys thrown into deep shade, and its points and pinnacles glittering in the sun.

All hands were soon on deck looking at it, and admiring in various ways its beauty and grandeur; but no description can give any idea of the strangeness, splendor, and real sublimity of the sight.

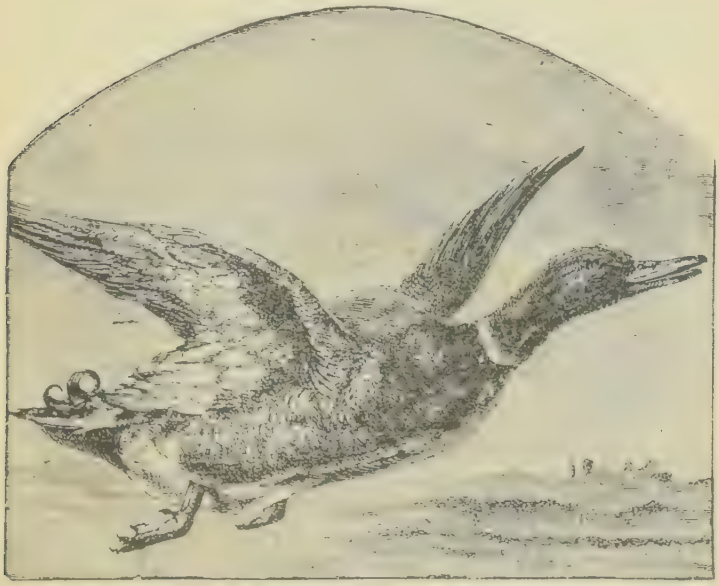
3. Its great size, for it must have been from two to three miles in circumference, and several hundred feet in height; its slow motion, as its base rose and sank in the water, and its high points nodded against the clouds; the dashing of the waves upon it, which, breaking high with foam, covered its base with a white crust; the thundering sound of the cracking of the mass, and the breaking and tumbling down of huge pieces, together with its nearness and approach, which added a slight element of fear, — all combined to give it the character of true sublimity.

4. The main body of the mass was, as I have said, of an indigo color; its base was crusted with frozen foam; and, as it grew thin and transparent towards the edges and top, its color shaded off from a deep blue to the whiteness of snow. It seemed to be drifting slowly towards the north, so that we kept away and avoided it.

5. It was in sight all the afternoon; and as we got to leeward of it the wind died away, so that we lay quite near it for the greater part of the night. Unfortu-

nately, there was no moon; but it was a clear night, and we could plainly mark the long, regular heaving of the stupendous mass, as its edges moved slowly against the stars.

6. Several times in our watch loud cracks were heard, which sounded as though they must have run through the whole length of the iceberg; and several pieces fell down with a thundering crash, plunging heavily into the sea. Towards morning a strong breeze sprang up; and at daylight it was out of sight. *Dana.*



TO A WATERFOWL.

Whither, 'midst falling dew,
While glow the heavens with the last steps of day,
Far, through their rosy depths, dost thou pursue
Thy solitary way?

Vainly the fowler's eye
Might mark thy distant flight to do thee wrong,
As, darkly painted on the crimson sky,
Thy figure floats along.

Seekest thou the plashy brink
Of weedy lake, or marge of river wide,
Or where the rocking billows rise and sink
On the chafed ocean side?

There is a Power whose care
Teaches thy way along that pathless coast,
The desert and illimitable air,
Lone wandering, but not lost.

All day thy wings have fanned,
At that far height, the cold, thin atmosphere;
Yet stoop not, weary, to the welcome land,
Though the dark night is near.

And soon that toil shall end,
Soon shalt thou find a summer home, and rest,
And scream among thy fellows; reeds shall bend
Soon o'er thy sheltered nest.

Thou 'rt gone, the abyss of heaven
Hath swallowed up thy form; yet on my heart
Deeply hath sunk the lesson thou hast given,
And shall not soon depart.

He who, from zone to zone,
Guides through the boundless sky thy certain flight.
In the long way that I must tread alone
Will lead my steps aright. *W. C. Bryant.*

METHOD AND ITS ADVANTAGES.

Des'ultory, jumping from subject to subject. In the Roman circus the *desultor* leaped from horse to horse while they were galloping.

Haz'ardous, full of risk.

Lapse, passing away; from Lat. *labor* (*lapsus*), I slip away.

Neces'sitate, make necessary.

Nov'elty, newness; from Lat. *novus*, new.

Rectifica'tion, putting or making right; from Lat. *rectus*, right, and *facio*, I make.

Super'fluous, more than enough; from Lat. *super*, over, and *fluo*, I flow.

Trivial'ity, commonness and trifling character; from Lat. *trivium*, a place where three ways meet. Such a spot was likely to be a meeting-place for idlers and people who exchange gossip.

Unpremed'itated, not thought of beforehand, from Lat. *præ*, before, and *meditor*, I meditate.

1. What is that which first strikes us, and strikes us at once, in a man of education, and which, among educated men, so instantly distinguishes the man of superior mind, that (as was observed with eminent propriety of the late Edmund Burke) "we cannot stand under the same archway during a shower of rain without finding him out"? Not the weight or novelty of his remarks; not any unusual interest of facts communicated by him; for we may suppose both the one and the other precluded by the shortness of our intercourse and the triviality of the subjects. 2. The difference will be impressed and felt, though the conversation should be confined to the state of the weather or the pavements. Still less will it arise from any peculiarity in his words and phrases; for if he be, as we now assume, a well-educated man, as well as a man of superior powers, he will not fail to follow the golden rule of Julius Cæsar, and, unless where new things necessitate new terms, he will avoid an unusual word as a rock. It must have been among the earliest lessons of his youth that the breach

of this precept, at all times hazardous, becomes ridiculous in the topics of ordinary conversation. 3. There remains but one other point of distinction possible; and this must be, and in fact is, the true cause of the impression made on us. It is the unpremeditated and evidently habitual *arrangement* of his words, grounded on the habit of foreseeing, in each integral part, or (more plainly) in every sentence, the whole that he then intends to communicate. However irregular and desultory his talk, there is method in the fragments.

4. Listen, on the other hand, to an ignorant man, though perhaps shrewd and able in his particular calling, whether he be describing or relating. We immediately perceive that his memory alone is called into action, and that the objects and events recur in the narration in the same order, and with the same accompaniments, however accidental or impertinent, as they had first occurred to the narrator. 5. The necessity of taking breath, the efforts of recollection, and the abrupt rectification of its failures, produce all his pauses, and, with the exception of the "*and then*," the "*and there*," the "*says I*," and the still less significant "*and so*," they constitute likewise all his connectives. Our discussion, however, is confined to method as employed in the formation of the understanding and in the constructions of science and of literature. It would, indeed, be superfluous to attempt a proof of its importance in the business and economy of active or domestic life. 6. From the cotter's hearth, or the workshop of the artisan, to the palace or the arsenal, the first merit, that which admits neither substitute nor equivalent, is that *everything is in its place*. Where this charm is wanting, every other merit either loses its name, or becomes an additional ground of accusation and regret. Of one

by whom it is eminently possessed, we say, proverbially, he is like clockwork. 7. The resemblance extends beyond the point of regularity, and yet falls short of the truth. Both do, indeed, at once divide and announce the silent and otherwise indistinguishable lapse of time. But the man of methodical industry and honorable pursuits does more: he realizes its ideal divisions, and gives a character and individuality to its moments. If the idle are described as killing time, he may be justly said to call it into life and moral being, while he makes it the distinct object, not only of the consciousness, but of the conscience. 8. He organizes the hours, and gives them a soul; and that, the very essence of which is to fleet away, and evermore *to have been*, he takes up into his own permanence, and communicates to it the imperishableness of a spiritual nature. Of the good and faithful servant whose energies, thus directed, are thus methodized, it is less truly affirmed that he lives in time than that time lives in him. His days, months, and years, as the stops and punctual marks in the records of duties performed, will survive the wreck of worlds, and remain extant when time itself shall be no more.

S. T. Coleridge.

EXERCISES.— 1. Write a short composition on "The Advantages of Method" from the following heads: (1) The importance of a place for everything and everything in its place. (2) The importance of a time for everything. (3) The right words and phrases should be chosen. (4) These words and phrases should come in the right order. (5) Method enables more and better work to be done.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) The one is precluded by the shortness of our intercourse. (2) The other is precluded by the triviality of the subjects. (3) New things necessitate new terms. (4) The unpremeditated arrangement

of his words. (5) The rectification of failures. (6) His energies are methodized.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: We cannot stand under the same archway with him during a shower of rain without finding him out.

4. Analyze the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 1 and 2 all the words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used: as *man*, *rain*, &c.

6. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 6, page 106.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives of which the following nouns are derivatives: *education*, *weight*, *novelty*, *triviality*, *conversation*, *addition*, *description*, *narrator*, *resemblance*, *punctuality*, *consciousness*, *performance*.

8. Note carefully the endings of the following words: —

Collar	Manger	Conductor	Saltpetre
Cellar	Paper	Senator	Manœuvre
Pillar	Brier	Traitor	Acre
Vulgar	Eager	Ancestor	Lucre
Vinegar	Waiter	Aggressor	Massacre

9. Write down all the words you can think of descriptive of *method* and *order*.

VIRTUE.

Betides', happens. *Tide* is the Old English word for *season*, *hour*, or *time*. Cf. noontide, Christmas-*tide*, the *tides* are the ebb and flow of the sea at regular *seasons*. Cognate, *tidings*.

Consume', waste away.

Driz'zling, falling in very small drops; *drizzle* and *dribble* are diminutives of *drip*.

Fowl'er, a man who catches birds or *fowls*.

His, for *its*. This poem was written in the 16th century; *its* did not come into general use till the middle of the 17th.

Sub'tle, cunning.

Twain, two, an Old English form of *two*. Other forms are *twin* and *tween* (in *between*), and *twen* in *twenty*. Cognates are *twine*, *twist*, and *twig*.

Wit, knowledge, — the old meaning. Cf. witness, witless.

1. The sturdy rock, for all its strength,
By raging seas is rent in twain;
The marble stone is pierced at length
With little drops of drizzling rain;
The ox doth yield unto the yoke;
The steel obey'th the hammer stroke.

2. The stately stag, that seems so stout,
By yelping hounds at bay is set;
The swiftest bird that flies about
Is caught at length in fowler's net;
The greatest fish in deepest brook
Is soon deceived with subtle hook.

3. Yea! man himself, unto whose will
All things are bounden to obey,
For all his wit and worthy skill
Doth fade at length, and fall away:
There is *no* thing but time doth waste, —
The heavens, the earth, consume at last.

4. But virtue sits triumphing still
Upon the throne of glorious fame;
Though spiteful death man's body kill,
Yet hurts he not his virtuous name.
By life or death, whatso betides,
The state of virtue never slides.

Anonymous.

CAUTIONS.— VERSE 3.— Line 1: Avoid the verse accent on *unto*, and hasten on to *all things*. Line 2: Avoid the verse-accent on *things*. VERSE 4.—Line 2: Avoid the verse accent on *upon*, and hasten on to *fame*. Line 4: The emphatic word is *yet*.

THE ORIGIN OF RIVERS.

Condensed', made closer, thicker, and hence smaller. The word is chiefly applied to the change of *vapor* and *steam* into drops of water (Lat. *densus*, thick).

Opaque', not to be seen through, — the opposite of *transparent* (Lat. *opacus*, dark).

Or'ifice, opening (Lat. *orificium*, a small opening, from *os*, a mouth, and *facio*, I make).

Per'colated, worked its way through, drop by drop (Lat. *percolare*, to strain through).

Reconvert'ed, changed back; from Lat. *re*, back, and *converto*, I turn. Cognates: *convert*, *conversion*, *revert*, *reverse*; *verse* (the speech that is turned back at the end of a line), *version*.

Trib'utaries, feeders.

1. Let us trace a river to its source. Beginning where it empties itself into the sea, and following it backwards, we find it from time to time joined by tributaries which swell its waters. The river of course becomes smaller as these tributaries are passed. 2. It shrinks first to a brook, then to a stream; this again divides itself into a number of smaller streamlets, ending in mere threads of water. These constitute the source of the river, and are usually found among hills.

Thus, the Severn has its source in the Welsh mountains; the Thames, in the Cotswold Hills; the Missouri, in the Rocky Mountains; and the Amazon, in the Andes of Peru.

3. But it is quite plain that we have not yet reached the real beginning of the rivers. Whence do the earliest streams derive their water? A brief residence among the mountains would prove to you that they are fed by rains. In dry weather you would find the streams feeble, sometimes, indeed, quite dried up. In wet weather you would see them foaming torrents. 4. In general these streams lose themselves as little threads of water upon the hillsides; but sometimes you may

trace a river to a definite spring. But you very soon assure yourself that such springs are also fed by rain, which has percolated through the rocks or soil, and which, through some orifice that it has found or formed, comes to the light of day.

5. But we cannot end here. Whence comes the rain that forms the mountain streams? Observation enables you to answer the question. Rain does not come from a clear sky. It comes from clouds.

But what are clouds? Is there nothing you are acquainted with which they resemble? You discover at once a likeness between them and the condensed steam of a locomotive. At every puff of the engine, a cloud is projected into the air. 6. Watch the cloud sharply. You notice that it first forms at a little distance from the top of the funnel. Give close attention, and you will sometimes see a perfectly clear space between the funnel and the cloud. Through that clear space the thing which makes the cloud must pass. What, then, is this thing which at one moment is transparent and invisible, and at the next moment visible as a dense, opaque cloud?

7. It is the *steam* or *vapor of water* from the boiler. Within the boiler this steam is transparent and invisible; but to keep it in this invisible state a heat would be required as great as that within the boiler. When the vapor mingles with the cold air above the hot funnel it ceases to be vapor. 8. Every bit of steam shrinks, when chilled, to a much more minute particle of water. The liquid particles thus produced form a kind of *water dust* of exceeding fineness, which floats in the air, and is called a *cloud.*

9. Watch the cloud-banner from the funnel of a running locomotive: you see it growing gradually less dense.

It finally melts away altogether, and, if you continue your observations, you will not fail to notice that the speed of its disappearance depends on the character of the day. In moist weather the cloud hangs long and lazily in the air; in dry weather it is rapidly licked up. 10. What has become of it? It has been reconverted into true invisible vapor. The *drier* and the *hotter* the air, the greater is the amount of cloud which can be thus dissolved in it.

Make the lid of a kettle air-tight, and permit the steam to issue from the pipe; a cloud is formed in all respects similar to that which issues from the funnel of the locomotive. 11. To produce the cloud, in the case of the locomotive and the kettle, *heat* is necessary. By heating the water we first convert it into steam, and then by chilling the steam we convert it into cloud. Is there any fire in nature which produces the clouds of our atmosphere? There is, — the fire of the sun.

Thus, by tracing a river backwards from its end to its real beginning, we come at length to the sun.

Tyndall.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a short paper on "The Origin of Rivers" from the following heads: (1) Trace a river from mouth to source. (2) Rain to supply it comes from clouds. (3) Clouds may be compared to steam from a locomotive. (4) Description of steam from the funnel of an engine. (5) Heat is necessary to produce clouds. (6) Steps: *sun*, *evaporation*, *clouds*, *condensation*, *rain*, *river*, *sea*, *evaporation by sun*, and back again.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) A brief residence among the mountains. (2) The rain which has percolated through the soil. (3) It comes back to the light of day through some orifice. (4) Rain is condensed steam. (5) The cloud has been reconverted into invisible vapor.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: In moist weather the cloud hangs long and lazily in the air.

4. Analyze the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 7 and 8 all the words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used, such as *notice*, *cloud*, &c.

6. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 6, page 106.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *division*, *beginning*, *residence*, *observation*, *acquaintance*, *transparency*, *disappearance*, *conversion*, *similarity*.

8. Note carefully the endings of the following words: —

Saucy	Daisy	Lazy
Spicy	Rosy	Crazy
Delicacy	Courtesy	Frenzy
Legacy	Heresy	Dizzy

9. Write down all the words you know descriptive of a *river*.

A DINNER IN AN OLD MANOR-HOUSE.

(Time of Edward I.)

Ag′ate, a kind of precious stone.
Assem′blage, company gathered together.
Da′is, a raised floor, where the chief table was placed.
Gourds, fruits with hard rinds, such as cucumbers, pumpkins, melons, etc.; *here*, cups made of the shell of a particular species.
Insipid′ity, tastelessness.
Jack, a kind of beer-jug.
Prin′cipal, chief (Lat. *princeps*, chief).
Repast′, meal (Lat. *pasco*, I feed).
Spit, large iron skewer.
Strained, passed through a filter.
Tol′erably, moderately.
Tren′cher, wooden plate; from Fr. *trancher*, to cut.
Vas′sals, servants and tenants.

1. Let us imagine ourselves in one of them, as lookers-on, and seeing a lord sitting down to dinner with his guests and his vassals. All are gathered together in the hall. At the upper end, on the daïs, where the ground is somewhat raised and boarded over, sit the lord and his chief guests. 2. They are protected by a covering, which, as our host is a great man, is made of silk. Below, in "the marsh," sit the vassals, farm servants and others. The door, which has lately been widened to let in carts more easily, is closed, to keep out

the wind, a dim light is let in through the canvas windows, and "the marsh" is made tolerably dry and clean by litter and rushes. 3. Fish in plenty is served up; eels and pike, and even whale, grampus, porpoise, and "sea-wolves" may be had. There is plenty of beef, and plenty of mutton, but it is nearly all salted; and the bread is rather black. Vegetables are plentiful enough: there are no potatoes, but there are peas, beans, onions, garlic, and leeks, pot herbs and sweet herbs. 4. There is fruit enough, though not equal to what we now have. There are pears, and particularly one sort, grown by the monks of Wardon, in Bedfordshire, which are made into Wardon pies. There are apples, particularly of the sort called "costard." These cost 1s. per 100, or about 12s. at present. Peaches and cherries, and mulberries too, are not wanting. 5. If we suppose the entertainment to be given in London, the garden of the Earl of Lincoln, in Holborn, would be ready to furnish a good supply, for the fruit out of it was sold for above £100 sterling in one year alone. There is plenty of claret, or *clairets*, — so called because the wine was sweetened with honey, and afterwards strained till it was clear, — from the English possessions in Gascony, and some sort of sherry from Spain, for those who sit on the dais; and beer and cider enough for those who sit in "the marsh." 6. But the beer is made of a mixture of barley, wheat, and oats, without hops, which have not yet been "found out." The insipidity of the beer is taken off by spices. There is wine, too, made from English vineyards, but it must be sour stuff, and fit only for "the marsh." Nobody but the king has glass to drink out of, and he has none to spare for his friends; but he has cups made of cocoa-nuts, of gourds, of buffalo horns, and of beautiful agates, for his principal guests. 7. The wooden bowl, the earthen

jug, and the leathern jack serve well enough for the great bulk of the assemblage. The tables are pretty firm, for their legs are well stuck into the mud floor. Now that the guests are seated, and ready for their repast, up comes the meat on a spit, served round by the servants, and each man cuts off a bit with his knife, and puts it into his wooden bowl or on his trencher. Most of the people have wooden spoons, but nobody has a fork. The pitchers and jugs are made of earthen ware, but the plates or dishes are all of wood.

History of England, by William Longman.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a short account of "An Old English Dinner" from the following heads: (1) The lord and his guests on the daïs; the vassals and servants in "the marsh." (2) The fish. (3) The beef and vegetables. (4) The fruit. (5) The wine and beer. (6) The cups and bowls. (7) How the meat was served. (8) The spoons, jugs, and plates.

2. Explain the following sentences: (1) The insipidity of the beer is taken off by spices. (2) The leathern jack serves well enough for the great bulk of the assemblage.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The legs of the tables are well stuck into the mud floor.

4. Analyze the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 5 and 6 all the words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used, such as *cost*, *want*, &c.

6. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 6, page 106.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *imagination*, *dinner*, *entertainment*, *mixture*, *insipidity*, *assemblage*.

8. Note carefully the endings of the following words: —

Variety	Imagine	Servant	Wooden
Anxiety	Margin	Recent	Villain
Society	Civility	Sweeten	Basin
Sobriety	Insipidity	Medicine	Muslin

9. Write down all the words you can remember descriptive of *dinner*.

TROPICAL SCENERY.

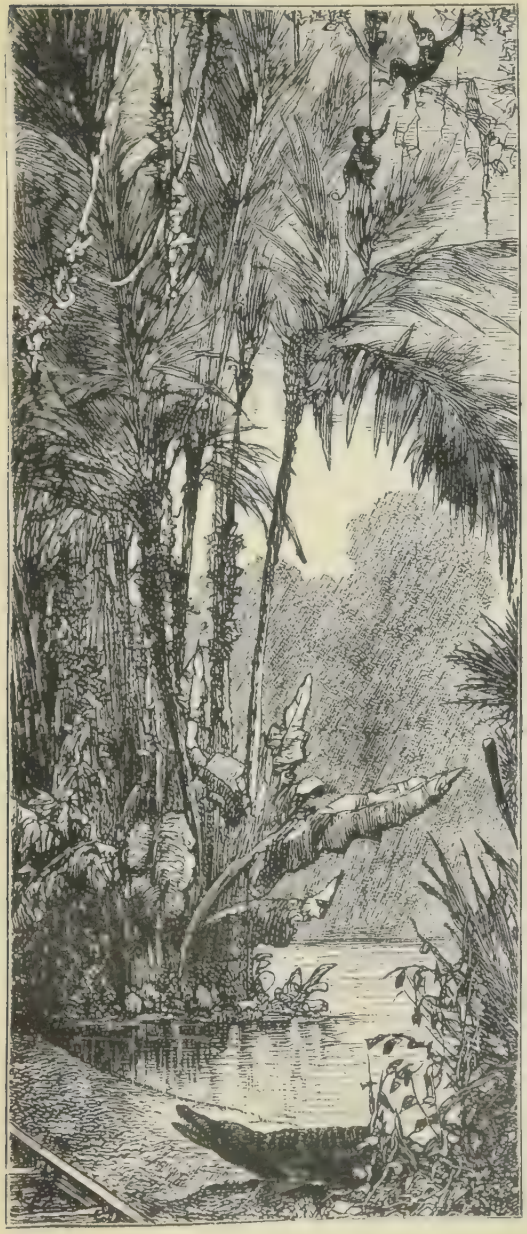
But'tresses, supports or props.
Indig'enous, native.
Luxu'riant, of rank or excessive growth.
Ob'durate, obstinate, and not to be easily got rid of.
Par'asites (vegetable), properly, plants such as the mistletoe, which have their roots in, and live on, other plants. The word is here used in a popular sense for a clinging plant, such as ivy.
Profu'sion, great plenty.
Salu'brity, healthfulness.
Squat'ted, "sat down" or settled without asking leave.
Ten'dril, a shoot of a plant that climbs round another body for support.
Unencum'bered, not burdened.

1. There is scenery in Jamaica almost equalling that of Switzerland and the Tyrol;[1] and there is also, which is more important, a temperature among the mountains[2] in which a European can live comfortably.

It is, of course, known that the sugar-cane is the chief production of Jamaica; but one may travel for days in the island and see a piece of cane only here and there. By far the greater portion of the island is covered with wild wood and jungle,—there called *bush*.

2. Throughout this, on an occasional favorable spot, and very frequently along the roadsides, one sees the gardens or provision-grounds of the negroes. These are spots of land cultivated by them, for which they pay rent, or on which, as is quite as common, they have squatted without payment of any kind.

3. These provision-grounds are very picturesque. They are not filled, as a peasant's garden in England or in Ireland is filled, with potatoes and cabbages, or other vegetables similarly uninteresting in their growth; but they contain cocoa trees, bread-fruit trees, orange, mango, lime, plantain, jack fruit, avocado pear, and a score of other trees, all of which are luxuriant, some of considerable size, and all of them of great beauty. 4. The



bread-fruit tree and the mango are especially lovely, and I know nothing prettier than a grove of oranges in Jamaica. In addition to these they always have the yam, which is with the negro somewhat as the potato is with the Irishman; only that the Irishman often has not much else, whereas the negro generally has either fish or meat, and also a score of other fruits, besides the yam.

5. The yam, too, is picturesque in its growth. As with the potato, the root[3] alone is eaten, but the

upper part of the yam is fostered and cared for as a creeper, so that the ground may be unencumbered by its thick tendrils. Support is provided for it, as for grapes or peas. Then one sees also in these provision-grounds patches of coffee and arrow-root, and occasionally also patches of sugar-cane.

6. One of the most remarkable characteristics of Jamaica is the great number of its rivers. It is said that the original name, Xaymaca, signifies a country of streams, — a name certainly not undeserved. This abundance, though it adds to the beauty, as no doubt it does also to the salubrity and fertility of the island, adds something, too, to the difficulty of locomotion. Bridges have not been built, or, sad to say, where built have been allowed to go to destruction. One hears that this river or that river is "down," whereby it is signified that the waters are swollen; and some of the rivers when so down are certainly not easy of passage.

7. It was here that I first saw the full effect of tropical vegetation, and I shall never forget it. Perhaps the most graceful of all the woodland productions is the bamboo. It grows either in clusters, like clumps of trees in an English park, or, as is more usual when found in its indigenous state, in long rows by the river sides. 8. The trunk of the bamboo is a huge hollow cane, bearing no leaves except at its head. One such cane alone would be uninteresting enough. But their great height, the peculiarly graceful curve of their growth, and the excessive thickness of the drooping foliage of hundreds of them clustered together, produce an effect which nothing can surpass.

9. The cotton tree is almost as beautiful when standing alone. The trunk of this tree grows to a magnificent height, and with magnificent proportions: it is

frequently straight; and those which are most beautiful throw out no branches till they have reached a height greater than that of any ordinary tree with us. Nature, in order to sustain so large a mass, supplies it with huge spurs at the foot, which act as buttresses for its support, connecting the roots immediately with the trunk as much as twenty feet above the ground. I measured more than one, which, including the buttresses, were over thirty feet in circumference. Then from its head the branches break forth in most luxurious profusion, covering an enormous extent of ground with their shade.

10. But the most striking peculiarity of these trees consists in the parasite plants by which they are enveloped, and which hang from their branches down to the ground with tendrils of wonderful strength. These parasites are of various kinds, the fig being the most obdurate with its embraces. 11. It may frequently be seen that the original tree has departed wholly out of sight, and I should imagine almost wholly from existence,—then the very name is changed, and the cotton-tree is called a fig-tree. In others the process of destruction may be observed, and the interior trunk may be seen to be stayed in its growth and stunted in its measure by the creepers which surround it.

12. But it often happens that the tree has reached its full growth before the parasites have fallen on it, and then, in place of being strangled, it is adorned. Every branch is covered with a wondrous growth,—with plants of a thousand colors and a thousand sorts. Some droop with long and graceful tendrils from the boughs, and so touch the ground; while others hang in a ball of leaves and flowers, which swings for years.

Trollope.

NOTES.

1. **Switzerland and the Tyrol.**—These two countries lie among the Alps, the latter being a part of the empire of Austria. They have, therefore, Alpine scenery; that is, lofty, sharp-peaked mountains, covered with eternal snow; dark forests of pine; steep, grass-covered slopes, and quiet, deep lakes at their feet.

2. **Temperature among the mountains.**—It is well known that the thermometer (Fahrenheit's) falls one degree for every 533 feet of ascent from the level of the sea. The highest mountains and plateaus in the world are within the torrid zone, with the exception of the Himalayas, which are very near it. Thus, within the tropics, it is possible to find every kind of temperature, climate, and productions.

3. Potatoes are not *roots;* they are *bulbs* containing the buds or "eyes" for producing new plants.

COMPOSITION.—Write a short paper on JAMAICA from the following heads: 1. The scenery. 2. The productions. 3. The rivers. 4. The gardens of the negroes. 5. The bamboo. 6. The cotton-tree. 7. The parasitic plants.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) The negroes have squatted upon them without payment of any kind. (2) The upper part of the yam is fostered as a creeper, so that the ground may be unencumbered by its thick tendrils. (3) The great number of its rivers adds to the salubrity and fertility of Jamaica. (4) The bamboo, in its indigenous state, grows in long rows by the river-sides. (5) These trees produce an effect which nothing can surpass. (6) The branches break forth from the head of the cotton tree in luxurious profusion. (7) Of all the parasites, the fig is the most obdurate with its embraces. (8) The original tree has departed wholly from sight.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The branch of the bamboo is a large hollow cane, bearing no leaves except at its head.

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Select from the first two sections words which may be used either as nouns or verbs (such, for example, as *equal, course*, &c.).

5. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *production, traveller, favorite, frequency, payment, provision, luxuriance, consideration, remark, originality, copiousness, fertility.*

6. With each of the first six words of Exercise 5, make a sentence illustrating its proper use.

7. Write out as many of the compounds of the following words as you know: *equal, comfort, portion, cover, favor, pay, common, fill.*

8. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 4, page 32, but substituting *climate* and *plants* for *earth* and *sea.*

THE LAST CHARGE OF THE FRENCH AT WATERLOO.[1]

Acclaim′, shouting.
Augment′, to increase.
Brand, weapon, sword.
Career′, course.
Co′hort, body of men.
Cors′let, a piece of armor covering the body.
Cuirassiers′, cavalry wearing breastplates.
Files, ranks.
For′titude, endurance; bravery.
Har′bingered, announced, preceded.
Hav′oc, slaughter; destruction.
Pen′non, narrow flag.
Pon′derous, heavy.
Recoiled′, fell back.
Revolv′ing knell, successive shots.
Ruth′less, without pity.
Ser′ried, closely drawn up.
Shroud, covering.
Well-served, discharged steadily and quickly.
Whirl′wind, a fierce gale proceeding with circular motion.

1. On came the whirlwind, like the last
   But fiercest sweep of tempest blast:
   On came the whirlwind: steel-gleams broke
   Like lightning through the rolling smoke;
   The war was waked anew.

Three hundred cannon-mouths roared loud,
And from their throats, with flash and cloud,
Their showers of iron threw.
Beneath their fire, in full career,
Rushed on the ponderous cuirassier,
The lancer couched his ruthless spear,
And hurrying as to havoc near,
The cohorts' eagles[2] flew.
In one dark torrent, broad and strong,
The advancing onset rolled along,
Forth harbingered by fierce acclaim,
That, from the shroud of smoke and flame,
Pealed wildly the imperial name![3]

2. But on the British heart were lost
The terrors of the charging host;
For not an eye the storm that viewed
Changed its proud glance of fortitude;
Nor was one forward footstep stayed
As dropped the dying and the dead.
Fast as their ranks the thunders tear,
Fast they renewed each serried square;[4]
And on the wounded and the slain
Closed their diminished files again,
Till from their line scarce spear-lengths three,
Emerging from the smoke they see
Helmet, and plume, and panoply.
Then waked their fire at once!

3. Each musketeer's revolving knell
As fast, as regularly fell,
As when they practise to display
Their discipline on festal day.
Then down went helm and lance,
Down were the eagle-banners sent,
Down reeling steeds and riders went

Corslets were pierced, and pennons rent;
And to augment the fray,
Wheeled full against their staggering flanks,
The English horsemen's foaming ranks
Forced their resistless way.[6]

4. Then to the musket-knell succeeds
The clash of swords, the neigh of steeds;
As plies the smith his clanging trade,
Against the cuirass rang the blade;
And while amid their close array
The well-served cannon rent their way,
And while amid their scattered band
Raged the fierce rider's bloody brand,
Recoiled in common rout and fear
Lancer and guard and cuirassier,
Horsemen and foot, — a mingled host!
Their leader fallen, — their standards lost.

Sir W. Scott.

NOTES.

1. June 18, 1815. Waterloo is near Brussels, in Belgium.

2. Napoleon, in imitation of the ancient Romans, adopted the eagle as the emblem of France.

3. That is, Napoleon, the Emperor; the soldiers shouted "*Vive l'Empereur!*" — Long live the Emperor!

4. The British were formed in squares to resist the cavalry.

5. The British had orders not to fire till the French were close to them.

6. The English Guards now attacked the French Imperial Guard.

(See pages 297–302.)

COMPOSITION. — Write an account of the French charge from the following heads: 1. Charge of the French cuirassiers with their standards. 2. The British quietly waiting in square. 3. They wait till the French almost touch them. 4. Then open fire. 5. Cool, steady aim. 6. English Guards attack the French flank. 7. French driven back.

Exercises.— 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) Steel-gleams broke like lightning. (2) Flash and cloud. (3) Forth harbingered by fierce acclaim. (4) Fast as their ranks the thunders tear. (5) Clanging trade. (6) The fierce rider's bloody brand. (7) Common rout and fear.

2. Parse the following sentence: Blücher came up with his Prussians to the aid of Wellington.

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Give the verbs or adjectives derived from the following nouns: *tempest*, *gleam*, *war*, *terror*, *band*, *fear*, *practice*.

THOROUGHNESS IN WORK.

Ad'age, short pithy saying, or proverb.
Asso'ciated, connected with.
Contin'uous, going on without a break.
Coun'terpart, something exactly corresponding to.
Dig'nified, made worthy.
Man'ual, by hand; from Lat. *manus*, the hand.
Men'tal la'bor, labor with the head or mind; from Lat. *mens*, the mind.
Scamp'ing work, doing it quickly and without sufficient care and interest in it.

1 Thoroughness in work is the chief end of all education, whether that education is displayed in mental or in manual labor. "Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might." That is the golden rule which ought to be engraved on the heart of every man whatever may be his condition in life, and whatever the work he is called upon to do. 2. Nelson's last signal, "England expects every man to do his duty," which thrilled the hearts of our British sailors before the victory of Trafalgar, — does but express the idea that is the mainspring of all true greatness, whether national or private; namely, thoroughness in work.

Suppose, instead of that famous signal with which the name of Nelson will be forever associated, the following had been presented to the eyes of our astonished seamen: —

> "He that fights and runs away
> May live to fight another day;
> But he that is in battle slain
> Will never live to fight again."

And suppose our sailors had acted according to this advice, and fled from the fight, what disgrace would have fallen on the name of England!

3. The base and cowardly adage just quoted has its counterpart in the proverb of unfaithful workmen, who say that "good work is bad for trade"; and their meaning is, that, if they make good work, the articles will last too long, and they will get less to do. No greater mistake than this could be committed, as the following little piece of truthful history clearly proves.

4. Switzerland is a country famous for its education and its watches; yet neither knowledge nor skill will bring continuous prosperity without the exercise of that higher quality, thoroughness in work. As a rule, Swiss workmen are skilful in their various trades, and take an interest in their work; for, on account of their superior education, they fully understand the advantages, not only to their masters, but also to themselves, of never putting a bad piece of work out of their hands.

5. The consequences of scamping work, and making watches to sell rather than to keep time correctly, have lately been seen at St. Imier, in the Bernese Jura, and have produced a deep impression. In this district, for some years past, a great falling off in the quality of the watches has taken place, owing to the inhabitants desiring to increase their profits by furnishing an inferior

article. 6. They prospered for a considerable time, but finally their watches got such a bad name that nobody would buy them, and the result is that the masters have become bankrupt, and the people have been thrown out of employment.

Workmen in every branch of industry should keep in mind that they have their own and their country's character to maintain for excellence. 7. No station is so high as to be exempt from this duty; none so low as not to be dignified by the faithful discharge of it. The works themselves upon which all this labor is bestowed will perish; but the qualities which have been gained by the faithful and honest discharge of the daily duties of life will endure forever, and will find scope for their exercise in a higher and holier sphere.

Inaugural Address by Mr. Walter, M. P., at London Quebec Institute, November, 1874.

I'LL FIND A WAY, OR MAKE IT.

Aspira'tion, what you aspire to or long to reach; from Lat. *ad*, to, and *spirare*, to breathe.

Croak'er, a familiar or contemptuous word for one who always talks gloomily about things.

Hel'icon, the name of a clear, crystal spring on the side of Mount Parnassus in Greece, at which the god Apollo and the Muses were said to drink.

1. It was a noble Roman,
In Rome's imperial day,[1]
Who heard a coward croaker
Before the castle say,
"They 're safe in such a fortress;
There is *no* way to shake it!"
"On! on!" exclaimed the hero;
"I 'll find a way, or make it!"

2. Is Fame your aspiration?
Her path is steep and high;
In vain he seeks her temple,[2]
Content to gaze and sigh.
The shining throne is waiting,
But he alone can take it
Who says, with Roman firmness,
"I'll find a way, or make it!"

3. Is Learning your ambition?
There is *no* royal road;
Alike the peer and peasant
Must climb to her abode:
Who feels the thirst for knowledge
In Helicon may slake it,
If he has still the Roman will
"To find a way, or make it!"

4. Are riches worth the getting?
They must be *bravely* sought;
With wishing and with fretting
The boon cannot be bought:
To all the prize is open,
But only *he* can take it
Who says, with Roman courage,
"I'll find a way, or make it!" *Saxe.*

NOTES.

1. About the time of Christ the dominions of Rome embraced all the countries bordering on the Mediterranean, as far north as the Danube, and as far east as the Caspian Sea and the Euphrates; also, all west of the Rhine.

2. The Romans had a Goddess of Fame: to her a temple was dedicated, and all those who acquired glory were said to have seats in her temple. As fame is hard to attain, therefore the temple is represented as being situated on a steep hill.

THE CHARACTER OF NELSON.

Achieve′ment, finishing stroke.
Applaud′ed, praised highly.
Aspira′tions, high hopes.
Assured′, made certain.
Career′, course (of life).
Coc′kle-boat, or **cock-boat**, a small boat belonging to a ship.
Confid′ing, trusting.
Cruise, sailing to and fro.
Cy′press, the symbol of mourning.
Depressed′, made gloomy.
La′cerated, torn.
Lau′rel, bay tree (badge of victory).
Mor′tifying, vexing, humbling.
Per′emptorily, in an authoritative manner.
Ra′diant, bright, shining.
Re′alized, made good.
Rev′erie, dream-like thinking.
Surmount′, get over.
Trans′port, highest delight.

1. This darling hero of his country, when eighteen years of age, was obliged to return from sea on account

of the bad state of his health, and to leave his brother officers, then, like himself, beginning their career, in the full enjoyment of health and hope. This depressed his spirits very much; and long afterwards, when the fame of Nelson was known as widely as that of England itself, he spoke of the feelings which he at that time endured. 2. "I felt impressed," said he, "that I should never rise in my profession. My mind was staggered with a view of the difficulties which I had to surmount, and the little interest I possessed; I could discover no means of reaching the object of my ambition. After a long and gloomy reverie, in which I almost wished myself overboard, a sudden glow of patriotism was kindled within me, and it presented my king and country as my patrons. Well, then," I exclaimed, "I will be a hero; and, confiding in Providence, I will brave every danger." 3. From that hour, as he often declared to Captain Hardy, a radiant orb was suspended before his mind's eye, which urged him on to renown; and he spoke of these aspirations of his youth as if they had in them a character of divinity, as if "the light which led him on was light from Heaven." 4. Although the promotion of Nelson was as rapid as it could be, yet it was much too slow for his ardent ambition. He was never happy for a moment when not on actual service. In a letter to the Lords of the Admiralty in 1792, requesting a ship, he says, "If your lordships will only be pleased to appoint me to a cockle-boat, I shall feel grateful."

5. After the sieges of Calvi and Bastia in 1793, in which Nelson displayed military talents which would not have disgraced a general, his services, by an unpardonable omission, were altogether overlooked; his name did not even appear in the list of wounded, although he had lost an eye. "One hundred and ten days," said he,

"I have been actually engaged at sea and on shore against the enemy; three actions against ships, two against Bastia in my own ship, four boat-actions, two villages taken, and twelve vessels burnt. 6. I do not know that any one has done more. I have had the comfort to be always applauded by my commander-in-chief, but never to be rewarded; and what is more mortifying, for services in which I have been wounded others have been praised, who at the same time were actually in bed, far from the scene of action. They have not done me justice; but never mind, I'll have a Gazette of my own." How amply was this second-sight of glory realized!

7. Previous to his attack on Teneriffe, after having failed in an attempt to take it before, he wrote to his commander-in-chief, "This night I command the whole force destined to land under the batteries of the town, and to-morrow my head will probably be crowned either with laurel or cypress." Perfectly aware how desperate a service this was likely to prove, he called his step-son, Lieutenant Nisbet, into his cabin, that he might assist in arranging and burning his mother's letters. 8. Perceiving that the young man was armed, he earnestly begged him to remain behind. "Should we both fall, Josiah," said he, "what will become of your poor mother? The care of the Theseus falls to you; stay, therefore, and take care of her." Nisbet replied: "Sir, the ship must take care of herself. I will go with you to-night, if I never go again."

9. The boats landed amidst powerful discharges from forty or fifty pieces of cannon, with musketry from one end of the town to the other. Nelson, when in the act of stepping out of the boat, received a shot through the right elbow and fell; Nisbet, who was close to him, placed him at the bottom of the boat. He then exam-

ined the wound, and, taking a silk handkerchief from his neck, bound it above the lacerated blood-vessels, and thus saved his life. 10. One of the bargemen tore his shirt into shreds and made a sling for the wounded arm: Nisbet took one of the oars, and, collecting four or five seamen, rowed back towards the vessel. Nelson desired to be raised up, that he "might look a little about him," when a general shriek was heard from the Fox, which had received a shot under water and was going down. Ninety-seven men sank with her, and eighty-three were saved, many by Nelson himself, whose exertions on this occasion materially increased the pain and danger of the wound. 11. The first ship which the boat could reach happened to be the Seahorse; but nothing could induce him to go on board, though he was assured that the attempt to row to another ship might be at the risk of his life. "I had rather suffer death," said he, "than alarm Mrs. Freemantle by letting her see me in this state, when I can give her no tidings of her husband. 12. He was then rowed alongside the Theseus, and peremptorily refused all assistance in getting on board; so impatient was he that the boat should return, in hopes of saving a few more men from the Fox. He desired to have only a single rope thrown over the side, which he twisted round his left hand. "Let me alone!" said he; "I have yet my legs left and one arm. Tell the surgeon to get his instruments; I know I must lose my right arm, so the sooner it is off the better."

13. It was Nelson's practice during a cruise, whenever circumstances would permit, to have his captains on board and explain his plans to them fully. He had done this previous to the battle of the Nile; and, when Captain Berry, on comprehending the design of doubling

on the enemy's ships, exclaimed with transport, "If we succeed, what will the world say?" "There is no *if* in the case," replied Nelson; "that we shall succeed is certain: who may live to tell the story is a very different question."

11. In the battle of the Nile the French had a superiority over the British of one hundred and eighty-four guns and three thousand and eighty-two men; yet they lost five sail taken, three sail burned, one driven on shore and fired, and three frigates. "Victory," said Nelson, "is not a name strong enough for such an achievement: it should be called a conquest."

Southey.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a short paper on LORD NELSON from the following heads: (1) His weak health when young. (2) Slow promotion. (3) Never happy but when on service. (4) His attack on Teneriffe. (5) His conduct when wounded.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) My mind was staggered with a view of the difficulties I had to surmount. (2) By an unpardonable omission. (3) My head will be crowned either with laurel or with cypress. (4) He peremptorily refused all assistance in getting on board. (5) Such an achievement.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: Victory is not a name strong enough for such an achievement.

4. Analyze the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 13 and 14 all the words which may be used either as nouns or verbs, such as *practice* (*practise*, the verb), *cruise*, *board*, etc.

6. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 6, page 106.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *darling* (= *dear-ling*), *obligation*, *enjoyment*, *health*, *depression*, *difficulty*, *possession*, *discovery*, *exclamation*, *confidence*, *divinity*, *pleasure*, *gratitude*, *omission*, *applause*.

THE RETREAT FROM MOSCOW.

Ag'onizing, causing pain.
Alter'nately, by turns, first in one way, then in another (Lat. *alter*, one of two).
Attract'ing, drawing to them (Lat. *ad*, to, and *traho*, I draw).
Autom'atons, self-moving machines (Gr. *automatos*, self-moving).
Biv'ouac, encampment of an army without tents.
Car'tridge, a paper case containing a charge of gunpowder.
Decomposed', caused to decay.
Dilut'ed, thinned by mixing with water.
Dole'ful, sad (Lat. *doleo*, I grieve).
Exhaus'tion, utter weariness.
Monot'onous, never varying.
Spec'tres, ghosts (Lat. *spectrum*, an appearance).
Stu'por, state of unconsciousness.

1. On the day after Napoleon's departure the sky exhibited a dreadful appearance. You might see icy particles floating in the air; and the birds falling quite stiff and frozen. We flitted along in this empire of death like unhappy spirits. The dull and monotonous sound of our steps, the crackling of the snow, and the feeble groans of the dying, were the only interruptions to the vast and doleful silence. 2. Such of our soldiers as had hitherto been the most persevering here lost heart entirely. Whenever they stopped for a moment from exhaustion, the winter, laying his heavy and icy hand upon them, was ready to seize his prey. In vain did these poor unfortunates, feeling benumbed, raise themselves, and, already deprived of the power of speech, and sunk in a stupor, proceed a few steps like automatons, and then stagger as if they had been intoxicated. 3. From their eyes, which were reddened and inflamed by the continual glare of the snow, by the want of sleep, and by the smoke of the bivouac, there flowed real tears of blood; their bosoms heaved with deep sighs; they looked at heaven, at us, and at the earth, with an eye dismayed, fixed, and wild; it expressed their fare-

well, and perhaps their reproaches, to the barbarous climate which had tortured them. 4. It was not long before they fell upon their knees, and then upon their hands; their heads still wavered for a few minutes alternately to the right and left, and from their open mouths some agonizing sounds escaped; at last they fell upon the snow, and their sufferings were at an end. Their comrades, for fear of prolonging the journey, passed by without moving a step out of the way, or even turning their heads; for their beards and their hair were stiffened with the ice, and every movement was pain.

5. Such were the last *days* of the Grand Army of France. Its last *nights* were still more dreadful. Those whom the night surprised marching together, far from every habitation, halted on the borders of the woods; there they lighted their fires, before which they remained during the whole night, erect and motionless, like spectres. They seemed as if they could never have enough of the heat; they kept so close to it as to burn their clothes, as well as the frozen parts of their bodies. The most dreadful pain then compelled them to stretch themselves on the snow, and the next day they attempted in vain to rise. 6. In the mean time, those whom the winter had almost wholly spared, and those who still retained some portion of courage, prepared their melancholy meal. It consisted, ever since they had left Smolensk, of some slices of horse-flesh broiled, and some rye meal diluted into a thin soup with snow-water, or kneaded into muffins, which they seasoned, for want of salt, with the powder of their cartridges. The sight of these fires was constantly attracting fresh spectres, who were driven back by the first comers. They then laid themselves down in the snow behind their more fortunate comrades, and there expired.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a short composition on "The Retreat of the French from Moscow" from the following heads: (1) The appearance of the sky. (2) The dull, monotonous tread of the men. (3) A soldier stops, and then gradually sinks, never to rise again. (4) At night the soldiers light fires on the edge of the woods. (5) Their food. (6) The death of those who cannot get near the fires.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) The monotonous sound of our steps was the only interruption to this doleful silence. (2) The soldiers proceeded a few steps like automatons. (3) The night surprised them. (4) Rye meal diluted into a thin soup.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: On the day after Napoleon's departure the sky exhibited a dreadful appearance.

4. Analyze the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 5 and 6 all the words that may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used, as *surprise*, *march*, *halt*, *border*, etc.

6. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 6, page 106.

7. Give the verbs or the adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *departure*, *appearance*, *interruptions*, *exhaustion*, *sufferings*, *movement*.

8. Note carefully the endings of the following words: —

Magnificent	Vacant	Negligent
Innocent	Elegant	Excellent
Complacent	Consonant	Consequent
Violent	Brilliant	Patient
Ancient	Fragrant	Different
Insolent	Pleasant	Indolent
Confident	Abundant	Sufficient

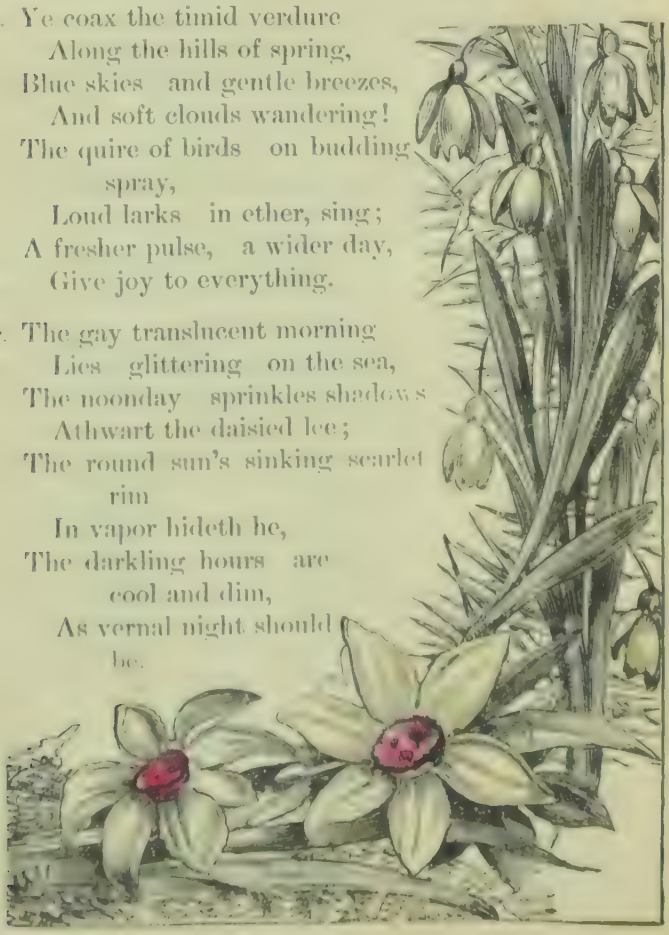
9. Write down all the words you know descriptive of a *snow-storm*.

SPRING IS COME.

Athwart', across.
E'ther, air.
Lea, field or meadow.
Quire = choir, a band of singers.
Spray, light twig.
Translu'cent, clear, but not transparently so.
Ver'nal, belonging to spring.

1. Ye coax the timid verdure
Along the hills of spring,
Blue skies and gentle breezes,
And soft clouds wandering!
The quire of birds on budding spray,
Loud larks in ether, sing;
A fresher pulse, a wider day,
Give joy to everything.

2. The gay translucent morning
Lies glittering on the sea,
The noonday sprinkles shadows
Athwart the daisied lee;
The round sun's sinking scarlet rim
In vapor hideth he,
The darkling hours are cool and dim,
As vernal night should be.



3. Our earth has not grown agèd,
With all her countless years;
She works and never wearies,
Is glad and nothing fears:
The glow of air, broad land and wave,
In season reappears,
And shall, when slumber in the grave
These human smiles and tears.

William Allingham.

CAUTIONS. — VERSE 1. — Line 8: Do not emphasize *thing*. VERSE 2. — Line 2: Avoid the verse accent upon *on*, and make *on-the-sea* one word. Line 8: Emphasize *should* slightly.

THE DEATH OF NELSON.

Alle′viate, to lighten or make more bearable; from Lat. *lĕvis*, light.
Badg′es, marks, signs, or emblems.
Ep′aulette, a shoulder ornament.
Human′ity, such kindness as ought to be shown by human beings to human beings.
Sublim′est, the grandest that can be thought of.
Til′ler, the handle for moving the rudder.

1. It had been part of Nelson's prayer[1] that the British fleet might be distinguished by humanity in the victory which he expected. Setting an example himself, he twice gave orders to cease firing upon the Redoubtable,[2] supposing that she had struck[3] because her great guns were silent; for, as she carried no flag, there was no means of instantly ascertaining the fact. From this ship, which he had thus twice spared, he received his death. 2. A ball, fired from her mizzen-top,[4] which, in the then situation of the two vessels, was not more than fifteen yards from that part of the deck where he was standing, struck the epaulette on his left shoulder, about

a quarter after one, just in the heat of action. He fell upon his face, on the spot which was covered with his poor secretary's blood. Hardy, who was a few steps from him, turning round, saw three men raising him up. "They have done for me at last, Hardy," said he. "I hope not," cried Hardy. "Yes," he replied, "my backbone is shot through."

3. Yet even now, not for a moment losing his presence of mind, he observed, as they were carrying him down the ladder, that the tiller ropes, which had been shot away, were not yet replaced, and ordered that new ones should be rove[5] immediately; then, that he might not be seen by the crew, he took out his handkerchief, and covered his face and his stars. Had he but concealed these badges of honor from the enemy, England perhaps would not have had cause to receive with sorrow the news of the battle of Trafalgar. 4. The cockpit[6] was crowded with wounded and dying men, over whose bodies he was with some difficulty conveyed, and laid upon a pallet in the midshipmen's[7] berth. It was soon perceived, upon examination, that the wound was mortal. This, however, was concealed from all except Captain Hardy, the chaplain, and the medical attendants. 5. He himself being certain, from the sensation in his back and the gush of blood he felt momently within his breast, that no human care could avail him, insisted that the surgeon should leave him, and attend to those to whom he might be useful: "For," said he, "you can do nothing for me." All that could be done was to fan him with paper, and frequently give him lemonade to alleviate his intense thirst. 6. He was in great pain, and expressed much anxiety for the event of the action, which now began to declare itself. As often as a ship struck, the crew of the Victory hurrahed, and at every

hurrah a visible expression of joy gleamed in the eyes and marked the countenance of the dying hero.

7. But he became impatient to see Captain Hardy; and as that officer, though often sent for, could not leave the deck, Nelson feared that some fatal cause prevented him, and repeatedly cried, "Will no one bring Hardy to me? He must be killed! He is surely dead!" An hour and ten minutes elapsed from the time when Nelson received his wound before Hardy could come to him.

8. They shook hands in silence, Hardy in vain struggling to suppress the feelings of that most painful yet sublimest moment. "Well, Hardy," said Nelson, "how goes the day with us?" "Very well," replied Hardy; "ten ships have struck, but five of the van have tacked, and show an intention to bear down upon the Victory. I have called two or three of our fresh ships round, and have no doubt of giving them a drubbing." "I hope," said Nelson, "none of our ships have struck." Hardy answered, "There was no fear of that."

9. Then, and not till then, Nelson spoke of himself. "I am a dead man, Hardy," said he; "I am going fast; it will be all over with me soon; come nearer to me." Hardy observed that he hoped Mr. Beattie could yet hold out some prospect of life. "O, no," he replied, "it is impossible; my back is shot through, — Beattie will tell you so." Captain Hardy then once more shook hands with him, and, with a heart almost bursting, hastened upon deck.

10. By this time all feeling below the breast was gone; and Nelson, having made the surgeon ascertain this, said to him, "You know I am gone; I know it, — I feel something rising in my breast" (putting his hand on his left side) "which tells me so." And upon Beattie's inquiring whether his pain was very great, he replied,

"So great, that I wish I was dead." "Yet," said he in a lower voice, "one would like to live a little longer too."

11. Captain Hardy, some fifty minutes after he had left the cockpit, returned, and, again taking the hand of his dying friend and commander, congratulated him on having gained a complete victory. How many of the enemy were taken he did not know, as it was impossible to perceive them distinctly, but fourteen or fifteen at least. "That 's well," cried Nelson; "but I bargained for twenty." 12. And then, in a stronger voice, he said, "Anchor, Hardy, anchor." Hardy upon this hinted that Admiral Collingwood[1] would take upon himself the direction of affairs. "Not while I live, Hardy," said the dying Nelson, ineffectually endeavoring to raise himself from the bed; "do you anchor." His previous order for preparing to anchor had shown how clearly he foresaw the necessity of this. 13. Presently, calling Hardy back, he said to him in a low voice, "Don't throw me overboard," and he desired that he might be buried by his parents, unless it should please the king to order otherwise. "Kiss me, Hardy," said he. Hardy knelt down and kissed his cheek, and Nelson said, "Now, I am satisfied. Thank God, I have done my duty." Hardy stood over him in silence for a moment or two, then knelt again, and kissed his forehead. "Who is that?" said Nelson; and being informed, he replied, "God bless you, Hardy." And Hardy then left him — forever. *Southey.*

NOTES.

1. Before going into the action, Nelson wrote a prayer, one of the petitions being, "May humanity after victory be the predominant feature in the British fleet!"

2. One of the largest vessels of the French fleet. Nelson had ordered his own vessel, the Victory, to be laid alongside the Redoubtable.

3. "To strike a flag," that is, to take it down, is the manner of indicating surrender to the enemy.

4. Mizzen-top. The "mizzen-mast" is the mast nearest the stern in three-masted vessels. The "top" is a small platform at the top of the lowest division of the mast.

5. Rove is the past participle of *reeve*, to pass a rope through a block, or any aperture: the past tense is also *rove*.

6. The cockpit is a room in a man-of-war below the level of the water, for the reception and care of the wounded.

7. A youth on board a man-of-war in training for an officer's position; he holds a rank *between* the common seaman and the officer.

8. Admiral Collingwood was second in command to Nelson; he led the left wing of the fleet into action.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a short paper on "The Death of Nelson" from the following heads: (1) A ball is fired from the French ship Redoubtable. (2) Nelson falls on his face. (3) He is carried down into the cockpit. (4) No hope. (5) Hardy is sent for. (6) His news. (7) The number of ships taken. (8) Nelson's last moments.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) There was no means of instantly ascertaining the fact. (2) He ordered new ropes to be rove immediately. (3) To alleviate his intense thirst. (4) An hour and ten minutes elapsed. (5) The surgeon could not hold out any prospect of life. (6) Ineffectually endeavoring to raise himself from the bed. (7) He foresaw the necessity of anchoring.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: A ball struck the epaulette on his left shoulder, about a quarter after one, just in the heat of action.

4. Analyze the above sentence.

5. Note carefully the endings of the following words: —

Generous	Generosity	Ferocious	Ferocity
Necessary	Necessity	Veracious	Veracity
Reciprocal	Reciprocity	Sagacious	Sagacity
Curious	Curiosity	Tenacious	Tenacity

6. Write down all the words you know descriptive of *A Naval Battle.*

TRIAL AND EXECUTION OF MARIE ANTOINETTE.

Ad′equate, fully equal. From Lat. *ad*, to, and *æquus*, equal.

Bul′letin, a kind of official report or newspaper. From Lat. *bulla*, a seal. Hence, the Pope's *bull*, of which *bulletin* is the diminutive.

Dauphiness′, wife of the *Dauphin*, — the title given to the eldest son of the king of France. It is taken from the name of a former province of France, Dauphiné, the ancient lords of which had, it is said, a dolphin (Fr. *dauphin*) as a crest.

Escort′ed by, attended by. From Fr. *escorte*, from Lat. *ex*, thoroughly, and *corrigere*, to set right.

Extrem′ities, ends. From Lat. *extrēmus*, extreme,— the superlative degree of *extra*, without; through the Fr. *extrémité*.

Indict′ment (*in-dīt′-ment*), paper containing the charges against the accused. From Lat. *in*, against, and *dicto*, I keep saying. Hence also, *dictate*, *dictation*, *dictatorial*.

Lacon′ic, very short. The inhabitants of Laconia, or Lacedæmon, were celebrated for their brevity in speaking; they were called *Lacōnes*; hence, brief speech is called *laconic*.

Patrols′, bodies of troops sent out to keep the streets clear.

From Fr. *patrouiller*, to paddle.

Pend'ing, is being discussed and weighed. From Lat. *pendĕre*, to weigh. Hence also, *expend*, *spend* (a shorter form), *expense*; *pension*.

Tar'nished, stained. From Fr. *ternir*, to stain. (The broad pronunciation of the *e* before *r* has changed the spelling.)

Wail, loud expressions of great sorrow or pain.

Whi'lom, formerly. (It is a word formed like *them* and *seldom*, and these are the only three old dative plurals in the language.)

1. On Monday, the 14th of October, 1793, a cause is pending in the Palais de Justice,[1] in the new revolutionary court, such as these old stone walls never before witnessed — the trial of Marie Antoinette.[2] The once brightest of queens, now tarnished, defaced, forsaken, stands here at Fouquier-Tinville's judgment-bar, answering for her life! The indictment was delivered to her last night. To such changes of human fortune, what words are adequate? Silence alone is adequate.

2. Marie Antoinette, in this her utter abandonment and hour of extreme need, is not wanting to herself, the imperial woman. Her look, they say, as that hideous indictment was reading, continued calm; "she was sometimes observed moving her fingers, as when one plays on the piano." You discern, not without interest, across that dim revolutionary bulletin itself, how she bears herself queenlike. 3. Her answers are prompt, clear, often of laconic brevity; resolution, which has grown contemptuous without ceasing to be dignified, veils itself in calm words. "You persist, then, in denial?" "My plan is not denial: it is the truth I have said, and I persist in that." Scandalous Hébert has borne his testimony as to many things — as to one thing, concerning Marie Antoinette and her little son — wherewith human speech had better not further be soiled. 4. She has answered Hébert; a juryman begs to observe that she has not answered as to *this*. "I have not answered,"

she exclaims, with noble emotion, "because nature refuses to answer such a charge brought against a mother. I appeal to all the mothers that are here." Robespierre,[5] when he heard of it, broke out into something almost like swearing at the brutish blockheadism of this Hébert, on whose foul head his foul lie has recoiled.

5. At four o'clock on Wednesday morning, after two days and two nights of interrogating, jury-charging, and other darkening of counsel, the result comes out, — sentence of death. "Have you anything to say?" The accused shook her head, without speech. Night's candles are burning out; and with her, too, Time is finishing, and it will be Eternity and Day. This hall of Tinville's is dark, ill-lighted, except where she stands. Silently she withdraws from it to die.

6. Two processions, or royal progresses, three-and-twenty years apart, have often struck us with a strange feeling of contrast. The first is of a beautiful Archduchess and Dauphiness, quitting her mother's city, at the age of fifteen, towards hopes such as no other daughter of Eve then had. "On the morrow," says Weber, an eyewitness, "the Dauphiness left Vienna. The whole city crowded out; at first with a sorrow which was silent. 7. She appeared: you saw her sink back into her carriage, her face bathed in tears, hiding her eyes now with her handkerchief, now with her hand, several times putting out her head to see yet again this palace of her fathers, whither she was to return no more. She motioned her regret, her gratitude, to the good nation which was crowding here to bid her farewell. Then arose not only tears, but piercing cries, on all sides. Men and women alike abandoned themselves to such expression of their sorrow. It was an audible sound of wail in the streets and avenues of Vienna. The last

courier that followed her disappeared, and the crowd melted away."

8. The young imperial maiden of fifteen has now become a worn discrowned widow of thirty-eight, gray before her time — this is the last procession. A few minutes after the trial ended, the drums were beating to arms in all sections; at sunrise the armed force was on foot, cannons getting placed at the extremities of the bridges, in the squares, crossways, all along from the Palais de Justice to the Place de la Révolution. By ten o'clock, numerous patrols were circulating in the streets; thirty thousand foot and horse drawn up under arms. 9. At eleven, Marie Antoinette was brought out. She had on an undress of piqué blanc. She was led to the place of execution in the same manner as an ordinary criminal, bound on a cart, accompanied by a constitutional priest in lay dress, escorted by numerous detachments of infantry and cavalry. These, and the double row of troops all along her road, she appeared to regard with indifference. On her countenance there was visible neither abashment nor pride. To the cries of "Vive la République!" and "Down with Tyranny!" which attended her all the way, she seemed to pay no heed. 10. She spoke little to her confessor. The tricolor streamers on the house-tops occupied her attention, in the streets Du Roule and Saint-Honoré; she also noticed the inscriptions on the house-fronts. On reaching the Place de la Révolution, her looks turned towards the Jardin National, whilom Tuileries; her face at that moment gave signs of lively emotion. She mounted the scaffold with courage enough. At a quarter past twelve her head fell: the executioner showed it to the people, amid universal long-continued cries of "Vive la République!"

Carlyle.

NOTES.

1. Palace of Justice, that is, court-house.

2. **Marie Antoinette** (de Lorraine) was the youngest daughter of Francis I., Emperor of Germany. She was born at Vienna in 1755. She was married at the age of fifteen to the Dauphin, afterwards Louis XVI. Her mother was the famous Maria Theresa, Empress of Germany. She was condemned to death on false charges, and executed on the 16th of October, 1793.

3. **Robespierre** was one of the three who bore chief rule in France during "The Terror," — that period of the French Revolution in which so many people were executed. He himself suffered death on the scaffold in July, 1794, in the reaction against the Terror.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 6–10.

2. Write a paper on "Two Processions" from the summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) A cause is *pending* in the court. (2) *Indictment.* (3) What words are *adequate?* (4) Her answers are of *laconic* brevity. (5) His foul lie has *recoiled* on his foul head. (6) Night's candles are burning out. (7) It was an audible sound of wail in the streets of Vienna. (8) Patrols were *circulating* in the streets. (9) A constitutional priest in a *lay* dress. (10) The tricolor streamers occupied her attention.

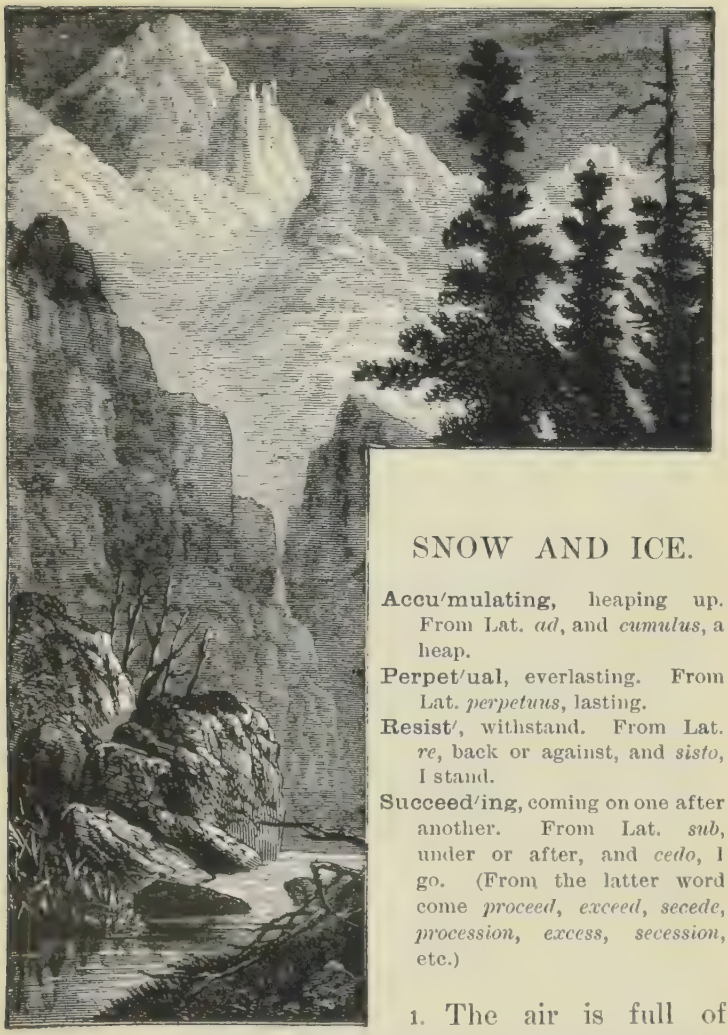
4. Parse and analyze the following: —

> Perceiv'st thou not the process of the year,
> How the four seasons in four forms appear,
> Resembling human life in every shape they wear?

5. Give all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *moveo*, I move (stem *mot*), — compound with *ē*, *con* (*com*), etc.; *circulus*, a circle; *rogo*, I ask (stem *rogāt*), — compound with *inter*, etc.

6. Give all the words you know having the same sound as the following, but a different spelling: *ware*, *waste*, *wave*, *wait*. Write them in columns, with the meanings opposite.

7. Make sentences, each containing a different one of the following expressions: *consists in*; *contend against*; *contend for*; *depend from*; *depend against*; *die by*; *die for*.



SNOW AND ICE.

Accu′mulating, heaping up. From Lat. *ad*, and *cumulus*, a heap.

Perpet′ual, everlasting. From Lat. *perpetuus*, lasting.

Resist′, withstand. From Lat. *re*, back or against, and *sisto*, I stand.

Succeed′ing, coming on one after another. From Lat. *sub*, under or after, and *cedo*, I go. (From the latter word come *proceed*, *exceed*, *secede*, *procession*, *excess*, *secession*, etc.)

1. The air is full of moisture, which the heat of the sun has drawn up from the sea; and all this moisture comes back again to the earth, sooner or later, in the form of rain and snow. If the air which covers the earth in any particular place be warm, then the moisture falls

from the air in the form of dew and rain; if the air be sufficiently cold, it falls as snow or hail. Snow, then, is frozen rain. 2. In places in the equatorial regions or near them, snow never falls, except on the tops of very high mountains; but the inhabitants of countries at some distance north and south of these regions are accustomed to see the ground covered with a white mantle during a greater or smaller portion of the year. In those countries which lie near the North and South Poles the ground is continually covered with snow, which is partly melted during the summer, when the sun is constantly above the horizon for about six months.

3. When we climb a mountain we find it gradually growing colder and colder, however hot it may be at the base. If the mountain be a sufficiently high one, we always at last reach a point where it is so cold that the snow that falls during the winter does not melt in the summer. This point is called the "line of perpetual snow." Below this line the snow melts in the summer, but above it the ground is always white. 4. In some countries, such as Spitzbergen, it is so cold that the whole land is above this line, and therefore the ground is never free from snow. In Britain, again, it is much warmer, and we do not come to the line of perpetual snow till we have reached about five thousand feet above the level of the sea. There are, however, in Britain, no mountains five thousand feet high, and consequently there is no part of the island covered with snow all the year round. 5. Travelling from Britain to the warmer countries of Central Europe, we find that the height of the line of perpetual snow has risen to about eight thousand feet. The lofty peaks of the great mountain chain of the Alps in Switzerland are from fourteen to fifteen thousand feet in height, so that they are

clad in perpetual snow for six or seven thousand feet below their summits. 6. Lastly, if we go to really hot countries, such as South America and India, we find that it is not cold enough for the snow to lie always on the ground till we have climbed to a height of fifteen or twenty thousand feet above the level of the sea. It is, therefore, only the tops of the highest peaks of the Andes and Himalayas which lie above the line of perpetual snow.

7. All the parts of a mountain which lie above the line of perpetual snow are, of course, continually receiving fresh falls. As the snow does not melt above this line, it is clear that the thickness of snow ought to become greater and greater every succeeding year. The mountain, therefore, should always be getting higher and higher. 8. As a matter of fact, however, the snow does not go on accumulating in this way above the line of perpetual snow, and consequently the mountain does not grow any higher. What, then, becomes of the snow which falls every winter, seeing that it does not melt? 9. If the top of the mountain were a level plain, it is quite clear that the snow would become deeper and deeper every year, and so the mountain would become higher and higher. Few mountains have a level top like this. A mountain is generally very uneven at the top, and always slopes away into the valleys, which, in turn, lead into the low country beneath. 10. The snow which falls on the top of the mountain is thus unable to rest in the place where it fell. It is constantly slipping down the slanting sides of the mountain into the heads of the valleys, which in this way get choked with snow.

11. When a great thickness of snow is gathered together in the higher valleys, the lower layers of it are

pressed upon by the upper layers, as well as by the fresh snow which is always pushing itself down from the mountain-top. Now every schoolboy knows that if snow is squeezed in the hand it becomes quite hard; and if it were squeezed hard enough the snow would really turn into *ice*. 12. Our hands are not strong enough to do this, but it may be done easily by putting snow into a machine, where it can be powerfully squeezed and pressed together. What happens, then, is this: the snow pressing down from the lofty summit of the mountain chokes up the higher parts of the valleys, and by its own weight is so squeezed together that it ceases to be *snow*, and now becomes clear blue solid *ice*.

13. If we were to go to any great range of mountains, such as the Alps in Switzerland, we should see this at once. We should see that the tops of the higher mountains are covered with great fields of eternal snow, and the valleys leading away from them are occupied by vast masses of solid ice. These rivers of ice are called "glaciers," from the French word *glace*, which means ice, and they are *really* "rivers of ice," because they are always moving slowly down their valleys. 14. The only difference in fact between one of these ice-streams and an ordinary river is, that the former moves very slowly. It is only by watching a glacier, and by measuring its progress with proper instruments, that its movement can be found out. It moves only a few inches every day, and you consequently would not think it was moving at all if you simply looked at it. 15. Still, these great ice-streams, sometimes ten or twenty miles long, and hundreds of feet in thickness, are always moving slowly downwards, and hence they carry off year by year the snow which falls upon the mountain above the line of perpetual snow. Slowly but surely they push themselves down

the sides of the mountain, till they get into the lower country, and then they are no longer able to resist the

GLACIER MELTING INTO A RIVER.

heat of the sun and the warmth of the air. 16. They now melt, and from the end of each of them proceeds

a larger or a smaller stream of water, icy cold, and thick with the mud formed by the ice, as it grinds its way down the rocky valley that imprisons it. Some of the most famous rivers in the world, such as the Rhine and the Ganges, begin as streams issuing from icy caverns at the end of great glaciers, high amongst the mountains.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 11 to 16 inclusive.

2. Write an account of "A Glacier" from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) The snow does not go on accumulating in this way above the line of perpetual snow. (3) The thickness of snow ought to become greater every succeeding year. (3) Summit. (4) Progress. (5) Occupied by masses of solid ice.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The air is full of moisture which the heat of the sun has drawn up from the sea.

5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "When I am forgotten, as I shall be,
> And sleep in dull, cold marble, where no mention
> Of me more must be heard of, say, I taught thee."

6. Write down all the words you know that are derived from the following English words: *full*, *come*,[1] *rain*, *snow*, *air*, *ear*,[2] *fall*,[3] *all*,[4] *white*.

7. Write down all the words you know that are derived from the following Latin words: *habit-are*, to dwell; *gradus*, a step; *cumulus*, a heap; *progredior* (past part. *progressus*), I go forward; *fama*, fame.

8. Make sentences each of which shall contain a different one of the following phrases: *to make good; to piece out; to eke out; to be resolved into; to break up; to merge in.*

[1] *Income*, *new-comer*, *welcome*, etc.
[2] To plough. Hence, *earth* = the ploughed.
[3] *Befall*; *fell* (= to make to fall).
[4] *Withal*, *alone* (= all one), *although*, etc.

BOILING WATER, HOT SPRINGS, AND GEYSERS.

Con′sequently, following; or it therefore follows. From Lat. *sequi*, to follow. Hence also, *sequel*, *sequent*, *persecute*, and others.

Discharge′, throw out. To *charge*, was to place in a *carrus*, Lat. for *car*. To *discharge* was to take out of the *car*.

Gey′ser, the Icelandic name for *a boiling spring*. (The word is said to be connected with *gush*, *gust*, and with the German *giessen*, to pour; *Guss*, a gush, etc.)

In succes′sion, one after another. From Lat. *sub*, under or after, and *cedo*, I go. *Sub* becomes *suc* before a *c*; and *cess* is another part of the root *ced*. From the same root come *intercession*, a going *between; procession*, a going *forth; concession*, a going *together; secession*, a going *away from;* and others.

Thermom′eter, a measurer of heat. From Gr. *thermos*, heat, and *metron*, a measure.

Volca′no, see page 26.

1. If we take a pan of water and put it upon the fire, we at first observe nothing particular. The heat turns some of the water into vapor, but this escapes from the surface quietly. After a while, however, we see that the water is being rapidly turned into steam. This change takes place at the bottom and sides of the pan, where the water is most highly heated. Little bubbles of steam are formed at the bottom of the pan, and rush up through the water, in order to make their escape into the air. The water in the pan now bubbles, moves rapidly, and is disturbed, and then we say that it "boils."

2. If we were to put a thermometer — that is, an instrument for measuring heat — into the water, we should find that the water has a certain degree of heat, and that it never gets any hotter than this so long as the water continues to boil, however strong the fire underneath it may be. The reason for this is that, as long as the water goes on boiling, the steam which is formed

carries off all the fresh heat which is passing into the water. The degree of heat at which water boils is called the "boiling point," and it is always about the same at the same place. 3. The boiling point of water is not, however, always the same at different places. In some places it takes more heat to make water boil than it does in others. Let us try to understand how this curious fact is to be explained.

We have seen that what we call the "boiling" of water is caused by the rapid turning of the water into steam, and the quick escape of this steam from the surface of the water. It is the heat, which is constantly turning the water into steam, and drives this steam upwards. 4. But, while the heat is forcing the steam upwards, *the weight of the air* is keeping it down, and the water cannot boil till the heat is able to overcome the resistance of the air. It follows from this that the boiling-point of water — or the degree of heat necessary to make water boil — is greater when the weight of the air is increased, and less when that weight is decreased. If we stand at the level of the sea, we have *all* the air above us, and consequently it takes more heat to boil water by the sea-shore than it does in any other place, unless, indeed, we go down into a deep mine in the earth. 5. If, on the other hand, we go up to the top of a high mountain, a great deal of the air is below us, and only part of it is above us and able to press upon us; so that the weight of the air is much less for this reason in such a situation. Consequently, it takes a much smaller degree of heat to boil water on the top of a mountain than it does on the shore, for there is not so much weight of air pressing upon the water and keeping it from passing into steam.

6. This fact has been turned to account in measuring

the height of mountains. We know precisely what is the degree of heat required to make water boil at the level of the sea, so that if we notice how much smaller a degree of heat is needed to make water boil on the top of a mountain, we shall know how much of the air we have left below us, and therefore how high the mountain is. 7. If we put a pan of water into a vessel from which we pump out the air by proper machinery, we can leave so little air that there is hardly any weight resting upon its surface. If we now apply heat to the pan, we shall find that it needs very little to make it boil. Indeed, it boils so soon, that it hardly becomes warm, and we could not cook an egg or a potato in it. 8. If, on the other hand, we put water into a vessel of iron, of very strong construction, and pump air into it by force, so as to increase the weight of air pressing upon the water, the opposite of this happens. We now find, on applying heat to the vessel, that the water will not boil till it has been raised to a degree of heat very much greater than that of its ordinary boiling point.

9. There are a great many cases in which springs of water burst forth from the earth, and some of these springs are large enough to form regular rivers at once. Most springs throw out cold water only, but there are some springs in which hot water gushes out from the ground. Many of these "hot springs" are known, and they are especially frequent in countries where burning mountains, or volcanoes, exist. There are, however, some celebrated hot springs in England, such as those at Bath in Somersetshire, which are hundreds of miles away from any volcano. 10. These springs were known to the Romans, who built baths there. The water that comes out of the ground is as hot as it is possible to bear without burning one's self; and the springs discharge about two

GREAT GEYSER, ICELAND.

hundred thousand gallons of this heated water every day. There are some hot springs in which the water is even boiling when it bursts out at the surface of the ground. These springs often throw out in succession great spouts or jets of steam mixed with boiling water. 11. Springs of this kind are called "geysers." The most celebrated geysers are found in Iceland, in North America, and in New Zealand. The geysers or spouting hot springs of Iceland occur in a desolate and barren district about thirty miles from the famous volcano of Heckla. There are about one hundred of them within a circuit of two miles; one of these, however, is much larger than the others, and is called the Great Geyser.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a short SUMMARY of paragraphs 7 to the end.

2. Write a short paper on "Boiling Water" from the following heads: (1) What we see in a pot of water on the fire. (2) A thermometer placed in the water. (3) How the boiling is caused. (4) Boiling point varies with weight of air. (5) Varies with height. (6) Application of this fact to the measuring of mountains.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the words italicized: (1) The water in the pan is *disturbed*. (2) This fact has been turned to *account*. (3) The springs *discharge* about two hundred thousand gallons of water every day. (4) At *intervals*. (5) A *desolate* and *barren district*.

4. Parse every word in the following sentence: "It boils so soon that it hardly becomes warm, and you could not cook an egg or a potato in it."

5. Analyze the above sentence.

6. Write down all the words you know which are in any way related to or derived from the following English words: *no*, *heat*, *rise*,[1] *turn*,[2] *high*, *nigh*,[3] *say*, *long*.

[1] *Raise, rouse, rear.* [2] *Trundle*, etc. [3] *Neighbor*, etc.

GREAT CITIES.

LONDON.

ST. PAUL'S AND OLD BLACKFRIARS BRIDGE.

Can'opy, covering. From Gr. *kānōpeion*, a covering to keep away the *kānōps* (mosquito).

Colos'sal, very large, like a *Colossus*, — a Latin name (from the Gr. *Kolossos*) given to a gigantic statue. The statue of Apollo, under which, as the story goes, ships sailed into the harbor of Rhodes, was called the *Colossus of Rhodes*.

Conglom'erate, something made up of many other things. From Lat. *con*, together, and *glomero*, I roll as a ball.

Connec'tions, binding ties. From Lat. *con*, together, and *necto*, I fasten.

Contrib'utes, pays or gives as *tribute*. From Lat. *tribuo*, I give. Hence also, *tribute*, *tributary*, *distribute*, etc.

Convey'ance, carriage. From O. Fr. *conreier*, to carry; Lat. *con*, together, and *vehĕre*, to carry. Cognate, *vehicle*.

Cu'pola, a cup-shaped vault or dome. An Italian diminutive of the Low Lat. *cupa* (Fr. *coupé*), a cup.

Es'timate, judge, guess of. From Lat. *estimāre*, to value.

Irresist′ible, not to be withstood. From Lat. *in*, not, *re*, against, and *sisto*, I stand. (*In*, becomes *ir* before *r*; *il* before *l*, as in *illiterate*; and *im* before *p*, as in *impenetrable*.)

Mart, a contracted form of the word *market*.

Ra′diate, spread out in all directions, like rays. From Lat. *radius*, a ray.

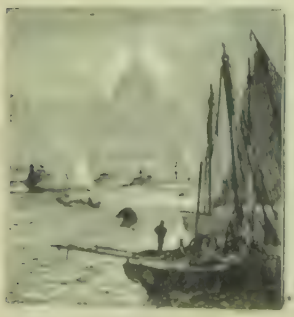
Tel′egraph, from Gr. *tēle*, at a distance, and *grapho*, I write. Cognates, *photograph* (something written with light); *caligraphy* (beautiful writing); *autograph* (something written by one's self).

1. London is the largest city in the world. That is to say, it contains more people than any other city. Just as we estimate the importance of a river, not by its length, nor by its breadth, but by the amount of water it contributes to the ocean, so we estimate the size of a city by the number of people it contains. Paris builds its houses higher into the air than London; but London stretches over a very much larger extent of ground. London has nearly four millions of inhabitants; Paris has only two millions. 2. London is the capital of England; but it is, indeed, also the capital of the world, — that is, of the world of commerce. It has commercial connections with every country, and with every important town on the face of the globe. It sends out sailing-ships and steamers to nearly all the countries of the world; and from it, as a centre, railway lines and telegraph wires radiate in every direction.

3. London is, in fact, not so much a city as a large province covered with houses. Its houses and streets overflow into four counties. The largest part of it stands in Middlesex; the next largest in Surrey; a large part stretches into Kent, and another into Essex. It is about sixteen miles long, and more than twelve broad. It contains eight thousand miles of street; and there are many streets entirely unknown to grown-up men and women who have lived all their lives in this wilderness of houses. 4. Every four minutes a birth takes place in

London, and every six minutes a death. Thus there are about three hundred and sixty children born into the metropolis every twenty-four hours; and about two hundred and forty persons die every twenty-four hours. But thirty-seven per cent. of its population are born in the country; and it contains more country-born persons than the counties of Devon and Gloucester put together. A town as large as Edinburgh is built every year and added to the maze and crowded population of London; and Edinburgh is a city of two hundred thousand souls. About thirty miles of new streets are opened every year. In fact, London is not one town, but a vast conglomerate of cities, towns, and villages, — all swallowed up by the yearly overgrowth of this colossal hive of human beings.

5. London was a flourishing little British town before the Romans came over here in the year 55 B. C.; it continued to grow from that time to the present, with hardly a check to its prosperity. In the fourteenth century, the time of the poet Chaucer, it was a prosperous city, — "small and white and clean," — a small mart of wool and wine; and ships from Italy and Greece and other countries of the Mediterranean lay below the bridge. 6. For it had then only one bridge, whereas fourteen railway and passenger bridges now span the current of Old Father Thames. It is, in truth, the river Thames that laid the foundation of the fortune of London. For the Thames is not merely one river; it is two rivers. The tide flows gently up



twice in about every twenty-four hours; and thus barges and vessels of burden are carried up to London by the tide, and are borne away from London by the reflux of the stream. Thus this river provides, free of charge, a large quantity of carrying power, and the barges laden with goods need only guidance.

7. The streets of London are the most crowded streets in the world. Thousands and hundreds of thousands of persons stream along its main arteries from morning till night; in the morning generally from west to east, in the evening with their faces to the west. The roadways are crowded with carriages, cabs, and omnibuses; and in many parts it is difficult, if not dangerous, to cross the streets. Within the town there are thousands of cabs, omnibuses, and street-cars, and every other kind of conveyance; but without, through the suburbs, round the whole of the vast province covered with houses and buildings, and also underground, there are numerous railways running in every direction. Steamers, too, run up and down the river at all hours and minutes of the day. 8. Down to the end of the sixteenth century, London was a city surrounded by walls, and connected with the city of Westminster by a country road; but now it has spread itself into the country in every direction, — swallowing up, as has been said, townships, villages, hamlets, fields, and market-gardens in its silent but irresistible progress. Towns like Lambeth, Chelsea, Hammersmith, Islington, Highgate, and, in the extreme east and west, Woolwich and Richmond, have all been absorbed. This fact is visible in the large number of *High Streets* which London contains.

9. But not only is its own population the greatest in the world: a large population is poured into it

every morning by railway and steamer from all parts of England, and by ships coming from every maritime country on the globe. It is reckoned that a population of more than two hundred thousand (not counting those who live in the suburbs and come in for business) enters London every morning; and that the same number of people leave it every evening. But a population of two hundred thousand is a population nearly as large as that of Edinburgh or Bristol, and larger than that of Newcastle-upon-Tyne. It is then as if a city nearly as large as Edinburgh or Bristol were left empty and deserted all night, and were visited and crowded all day by its thronging population. 10. The population of London contains contributions from all the races and nationalities of the world. There are Chinese, Hindus, Persians, Arabs, and Armenians from Asia; Peruvians and Chilians from the west of South America; Americans from New York, San Francisco, and other cities of the United States; and, from the large towns on the continent of Europe, there are Russians, Poles, Hungarians, Germans, Swedes, Norwegians, Finns, Frenchmen, Spaniards, and Portuguese. In London are more Scotsmen than in Edinburgh; more Irish than in Belfast; more Welshmen than in Cardiff; more Jews than in Jerusalem; more Greeks than in Athens; and more Germans than in Frankfort. London draws to itself people of all tongues, races, and nationalities. It has paupers enough to fill all the houses in Brighton, — a city of a hundred thousand inhabitants.

11. London is a wilderness of brick, with hundreds of miles of hideous streets, composed of insignificant and unsightly buildings; but it also contains some of the noblest edifices in the world. On a gently rising ground

in the heart of the city stands St. Paul's, one of the largest churches in the world, and a masterpiece of Wren, one of the greatest architects. Westward, on

WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

the banks of the Thames, the towers of Westminster Abbey stand, guarding the ashes of England's greatest men, — men who have made her name famous by sea and by land, in art, in science, and in letters.

12. Lord Byron, standing below London Bridge, on the Surrey side of the river, looked across and described the great city in the following lines: —

"A mighty mass of brick, and smoke, and shipping,
Dirty and dusty, but as wide as eye
Could reach, with here and there a sail just skipping
In sight, then lost amidst a forestry
Of masts; a wilderness of steeples peeping
On tiptoe through their sea-coal canopy;
A huge, dim cupola, like a foolscap crown
On a fool's head; — and this is London town."

13. But a poet with a truer eye and a more feeling heart, the poet Wordsworth, standing on Westminster Bridge in early morning in summer, when the level sun lighted up the houses, and the air was clear and free from smoke, thus described the scene that met his eye:

"Earth has not anything to show more fair:
Dull would he be of soul who could pass by
A sight so touching in its majesty.
The city now doth like a garland wear
The beauty of the morning; silent, bare,
Ships, towers, domes, theatres, and temples lie
Open unto the fields and to the sky,
All bright and glittering in the smokeless air."

14. Every large and crowded city abounds in contrasts of various kinds; but London is emphatically the *city of contrasts*. Trees and brick; portions of the country clasped within the town, parts of the town running out into the country; wide streets, open parks, and the narrowest and foulest lanes; palaces and hovels; splendor and squalor; rich and poor; virtuous and criminal; learned and ignorant; thoughtful consideration and the most wicked recklessness; hideousness and beauty; all these contrasts may be perceived by the open-eyed spectator within the compass of a few minutes' walk.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 4 to 8, inclusive.

2. Rewrite these paragraphs from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give a synonym for each italicized word: (1) We *estimate* the *importance* of a river by its *contributions* to the ocean. (2) Railway lines *radiate* from its centre. (3) *Conglomerate*. (4) A *colossal* hive. (5) Fourteen bridges span the *current*. (6) *Irresistible* progress. (7) London is emphatically the city of *contrasts*.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentence: It is the river Thames that laid the foundation of the fortune of London.

5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "Is all the counsel that we two have shared,
> The sisters' vows, the hours that we have spent,
> When we have chid the hasty-footed time
> For parting us, — O, is it all forgot?"

6. Give as many derivatives as you can from the following English words: *say*, *long*, *nigh*, *year*, *grow*, *ship*, *lay*.

7. Give as many derivatives as you can from the following Latin words: *porto*, I carry (combine with *in*, *sub*, *re*, *ex*); *tendo*, I stretch (combine with *ad*, *in*, *ex*, *pre*); and *veho*, I carry (combine with *con* and *in*).

8. Make three sentences, each containing a separate one of the phrases: *alight at; alight from;* and *alight on.*

9. Write, in columns, with the meanings, words of the same sound, but having a different spelling, as, *cite*, *climb*, *creak*.

CONSOLATION IN EXILE.[1]

Gnarl'ing, snarling.
Meas'ure, a slow movement to music.
Pur'chase, pursue or hunt after (its original meaning). From Fr. *pourchasser*, to follow after or prosecute.
The eye of heaven, the sun.
The presence, the immediate presence of the king.

1. All places that the eye of heaven visits
Are to the wise man ports and happy havens.[2]
Teach thy necessity [3] to reason thus;
There is *no* virtue like necessity.[3]

Think not the king did banish thee,
But thou the king: woe doth the heavier sit
Where it perceives it is but faintly borne.[4]
Go, say I sent thee forth to purchase honor,
And not the king exiled thee; or suppose
Devouring pestilence hangs in our air,
And thou art flying to a fresher clime.
Look: what thy soul holds dear, imagine it
To lie that way thou go'st, not whence thou com'st.
Suppose the singing birds musicians;
The grass whereon thou tread'st the presence strewed;[5]
The flowers, fair ladies; and thy steps, no more
Than a delightful measure or a dance;
For gnarling sorrow hath less power to bite
The man that mocks at it, and sets it light.

SHAKESPEARE, *King Richard II.*

NOTES.

1. John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, is addressing his son, the Duke of Hereford, who has just been banished by the king. He is trying to comfort Hereford by entreating him to imagine he is not in banishment, but in the midst of pleasure, or exercising his own free will.

2. As a harbor gives pleasure to those who travel by sea, so every place gives pleasure to him who is wise.

3. Virtue is here used in the sense of "power to produce results"; necessity makes us do what nothing else could compel us to perform.

4. "To a strong man the same burden is lighter than to a weak man; so sorrow to one who can bear it well is lighter than to one who cannot bear it well." The same idea is expressed in the last two lines of the lesson.

5. Before the introduction of carpets, the floors — which were often the ground itself — were strewn with rushes. See page 128, section 2.

EXERCISES. — 1. Paraphrase lines 1-7.

2. Commit these lines to memory.

3. Analyze from "woe doth" to "borne," in section 1.

"YOU WILL REPENT IT."

Hieroglyph'ic, by means of signs, not words. From Gr. *hieros*, sacred, and *glyphē*, a mark.

Inex'orable, not to be turned away by entreaty or prayer. From Lat. *in*, not, and *exoro*, I beg from.

Intercept'ed, stopped by coming between. From Lat. *inter*, between, and *capio* (*capt-um*), I take. Cognates, *reception*, *receptive*.

Mar'tial, warlike, or relating to war. From *Mars*, the Roman god of war.

Men'ace, threat.

Mu'tual, of each other. From Lat. *mutuus*, in turn, reciprocal.

Ran'somed, brought back. From Fr. *rançon*, a shortened form of Lat. *redemptio*, a buying back. Hence *ransom* and *redemption* are the same word in different forms.

Recogni'tion, here, knowledge. From Lat. *re*, again, and *cognosco* (*cognit-um*), I know. (The French form of the word is *reconnaître*.) Cognates, *recognize*, *recognizance*; *cognizable*, *cognition*, *cognizant*, *cognizance*.

Redoubt', a work which forms part of a large fortification, — generally retired, for the purpose of affording the garrison a means of retreat.

Redress', amends, or something to make up for.

Remorse', repentance accompanied with deep sorrow. From Lat. *re*, again, and *mordeo* (*mors-um*), I bite. (In O. E. it was called *agenbite*.)

Retalia'tion, revenge. From Lat. *retalio* (*retaliat-um*), I do like for like.

Sen'timent, feeling. From Lat. *sentire*, to feel. Cognates, *sentient*, *sentimental*.

Tu'mult, violent agitation and confusion of spirits. From Lat. *tumultus*, confusion. Cognates, *tumultuous*, *tumultuary*.

1. A young officer had so far forgotten himself, in a moment of irritation, as to strike a private soldier who was full of personal dignity (as sometimes happens in all ranks), and distinguished for his courage.

The inexorable laws of military discipline forbade to the injured soldier any practical redress. He could look for no retaliation by acts. 2. Words only were at his command; and, in a tumult of indignation, as he turned away, the soldier said to his officer that he would "make him repent it."

This, wearing the shape of a menace, naturally rekindled the officer's anger, and intercepted any disposition which might be rising within him towards a sentiment of remorse; and thus the irritation between the two young men grew hotter than before.

3. Some weeks after this a partial action took place with the enemy. Suppose yourself a spectator, and looking down into a valley occupied by two armies. They are facing each other, you see, in martial array. But it is no more than a skirmish which is going on; in the course of which, however, an occasion suddenly arises for a desperate service. 4. A redoubt, which has fallen into the enemy's hands, must be recaptured at any price, and under circumstances of all but hopeless difficulty.

A strong party has volunteered for the service; there is a cry for somebody to head them; you see a soldier step out from the ranks to assume this dangerous leadership; the party moves rapidly forward; in a few minutes it is swallowed up from your eyes in clouds of smoke. 5. For one half-hour from behind these clouds you receive hieroglyphic reports of bloody strife, — fierce repeating signals, flashes from the guns, rolling musketry, and exulting hurrahs, advancing or receding, slackening or redoubling.

At length all is over: the redoubt has been recovered; that which was lost is found again; the jewel which had been made captive is ransomed with blood. Crimsoned with blood the wreck of the conquering party is relieved, and at liberty to return.

6. From the river you see it ascending. The plume-crested officer in command rushes forward, with his left hand raising his hat in homage to the blackened fragments of what was once a flag; whilst with his

right hand he seizes that of the leader, though no more than a private from the ranks.

7. *That* perplexes you not: mystery you see none in *that*. For distinctions of order perish, ranks are confounded, "high and low" are words without a meaning, and to wreck goes every notion or feeling that divides the noble from the noble, or the brave man from the brave. But wherefore is it that now, when suddenly they wheel into mutual recognition, suddenly they pause? 8. This soldier, this officer, — who are they? O reader! once before they had stood face to face: the soldier it is that was struck; the officer it is that struck him. Once again they are meeting; and the gaze of armies is upon them.

If for a moment a doubt divides them, in a moment the doubt has perished. One glance exchanged between them publishes the forgiveness that is sealed forever.

9. As one who recovers a brother whom he had accounted dead, the officer sprang forward, threw his arms around the neck of the soldier, and kissed him, as if he were some martyr glorified by that shadow of death from which he was returning; whilst on *his* part the soldier, stepping back, and carrying his open hand through the motions of the military salute to a superior, makes this immortal answer, — that answer which shut up forever the memory of the indignity offered to him, even whilst for the last time alluding to it: "Sir," he said, "I told you before that I would *make you repent it!*"

De Quincey (1786–1859).

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of the above story.

2. Write a short paper on "A Noble Revenge," from your own summary.

3. Rewrite in your own words the following sentences and phrases, and with the latter include the sentences in which they

occur: (1) A moment of irritation. (2) The inexorable laws of military discipline forbade redress. (3) No retaliation. (4) Wearing the shape of a menace. (5) A redoubt must be recaptured at any price. (6) Hieroglyphic reports of bloody strife. (7) Distinctions of order perish. (8) They wheel into mutual recognition. (9) The memory of the indignity. (10) Alluding to it.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: One glance exchanged between them publishes the forgiveness that is sealed forever.

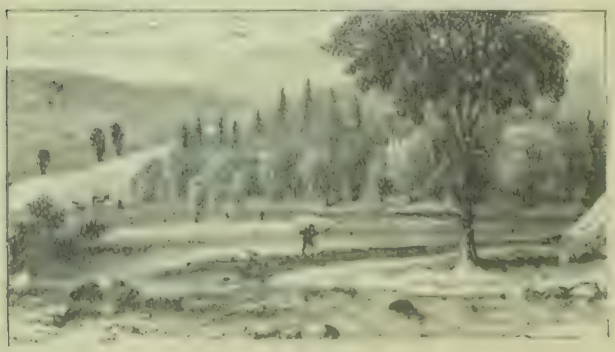
5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "I dreamed that, as I wandered by the way,
> Bare winter was changed suddenly to spring,
> And gentle odors led my steps astray,
> Mixed with the sound of waters murmuring."

6. Write down in columns as many words as you know derived from the following English words: *no*, *far*, *bid*, *word*, *one*, *wear*, *rise*, *man*, *hot*, *fore*, *fall*, *all*.

7. Give as many derivatives as you know from the following Latin words: *oro*, I beg (root *or*, stem *orat*); *miles*, a soldier (root *milit*); *specto*, I behold (root *spec*, stem *spectat*); *sto*, I stand (root *stā*, stem *stāt*), compound with *circum*, *con*.

8. With each of the following words and phrases write a sentence illustrating its proper use: *scent* and *sent*; *seem* and *seem*; *some* and *sum*. *To give place to*; *to take the place of*; *to serve as a substitute*.



GREAT CITIES

ROME.

A′queducts, artificial passages for conveying water. From Lat. *aqua*, water, and *duco* (*duct-um*), I lead. Cognates, *duct*, *ductile*, *viaduct*.

Are′na, the space strewed with sand for combatants. From Lat. *arena*, sand.

Cat′acombs, underground caves used as burial-places. From Gr. *kata*, down, and *kymbē*, a hollow.

Colonnades′, covered walks supported by columns. From Lat. *columna*, a column.

Commem′orate, keep in memory. From Lat. *con*, together, and *memor*, mindful. Cognates, *memory*, *memorable*, *memorial*, *commemoration*.

Con′flicts, combats or fights. From *confligo* (*conflictum*), I dash together. Cognates, *afflict*, *affliction*.

Cor′ridors, galleries or passage-ways. From It. *corridore*, a runner; from Lat. *curro*, I run.

Débris′ (pronounced *daybreé*), fragments. From Fr. *briser*, to break.

Gladia′tors, Roman athletes.

Gon′dola, a long, narrow pleasure-boat used in Venice.

Mar′tyrs, witnesses to truth even with their lives. From Gr. *martys*, *martyros*, a witness. Cognate, *martyrdom*.

Monot′ony, sameness. From Gr. *monos*, alone, or single, and *tonos*, tone. Cognates, *monarch*, *monologue*.

Pathet′ic, awakening pity or deep feeling. From Gr. *pathos*, feeling.

Procon′suls, chief governors of a province, like our Governor-General. From Lat. *pro*, for, and *consul*, one of the two chief magistrates or presidents of the Republic of Rome.

Squa′lor, filthiness. A Latin word.

Stat′uary, the collective noun for *statues*. From Lat. *statua*, a standing image; from *statuo*, I cause to stand; from *sto*, I stand. Cognates, *statute*; *station*, *stationary*.

Subterra′nean, underground. From Lat. *sub*, under, and *terra*, the earth. Cognates, *Mediterranean*; *terrestrial*.

Tro′phies, signs of triumph, memorials of victory taken from the enemy. From Fr. *trophée*; Lat. *tropæum*; Gr. *tropaion*.

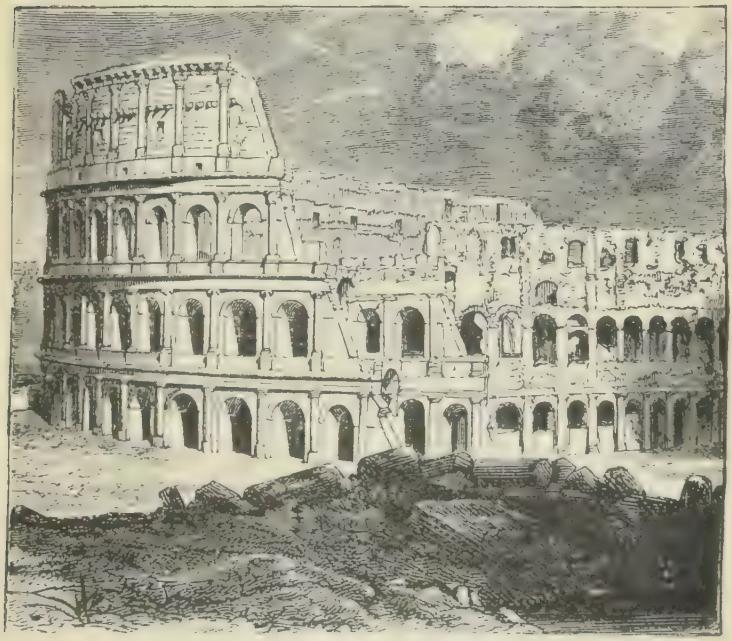
1. Rome was once the mistress of the whole known world. The foundation of the city is generally said to date back to 754 B. C. From a small square town, it gradually grew to be the largest and most magnificent city in the world, — to be, in fact, the capital of all the

known countries of the earth. It sent out armies to subdue the then known world; it had its proconsuls, or governors, in three different continents; and it was visited by people of every nation and of every tribe. 2. The earliest Rome stood on the left bank of the "yellow Tiber," about sixteen miles from the sea. At first a group of herdsmen's huts, it spread itself by degrees over the Seven Hills on which the city now stands. At its highest pitch of prosperity, in the time of the Emperor Vespasian,[1] the population was as large as that of Paris is now, — reaching the extent of two millions of souls. Of these more than one third were slaves. It was a city abounding in splendid temples to the heathen gods, in vast palaces, in monuments of every kind, — in affectionate commemoration of the dead, and to tell of glorious victories over distant nations; all around the city were public gardens and parks, full of beautiful groups of trees, elegant public buildings, and fine statuary. It contained more than seventeen thousand palaces, above thirteen thousand fountains, nearly four thousand bronze statues of emperors and generals, twenty-two equestrian statues, nearly ten thousand baths, and more than thirty theatres. 3. The largest building in Rome was the Colosseum, a vast oval, more than a third of a mile in circuit, and one hundred and fifty-seven feet high.

> "Arches on arches! as it were that Rome,
> Collecting the chief trophies of her line,
> Would build up all her triumphs in one dome."

It was built for the purpose of exhibiting conflicts of Roman gladiators with each other, or with wild beasts. It enclosed an area of five acres; and, sloping gradually up from the arena, were tiers upon tiers of seats, capable of containing more than eighty thousand spectators.

4. At the first exhibition in the Colosseum, it is related that five thousand animals were slaughtered in the arena. When Hadrian[2] gave an entertainment there in honor of his birthday, a thousand animals — including a hundred lions and a hundred lionesses — were slain in combat. The gladiatorial conflicts between man and man, and between men and beasts, went on



RUINS OF THE COLOSSEUM.

till the year 403, when a monk from the East, named Telemăchus, happening to be present at one, was so horrified, that he rushed into the midst of the arena and besought the spectators to put an end to them. He was stoned to death; but such exhibitions were never afterwards presented to the people.

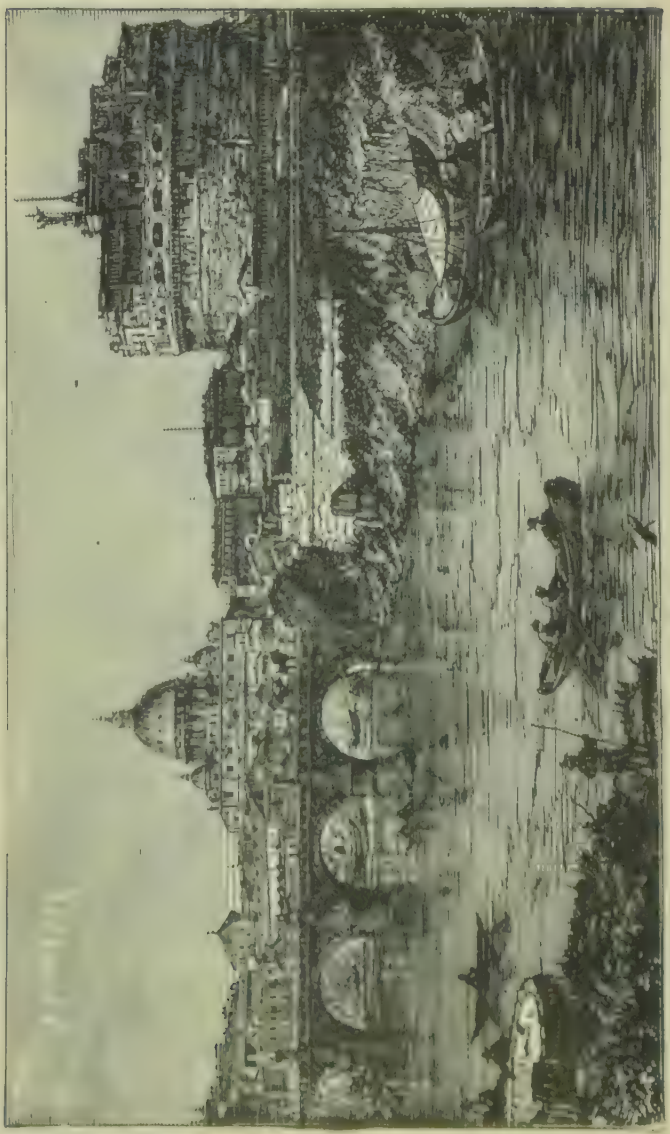
5. The ruins themselves fill the beholder with a

mixture of admiration, awe, and terror; but what would our feelings be if we could view this vast crowd of eighty thousand eager faces staring down into the arena, and following the varying fortunes of two men fighting for their lives,—following them with an unceasing storm of yells and shouts and roars, while such a whirl of strife and blood and dust arose as no modern mind can even imagine? Wild beasts were often introduced; and martyrs and other offenders against Roman law were thrown to them, to gratify the cruel lust for blood which had grown up amongst the Romans.

6. But now the Colosseum is a scene of the deepest peace. The vast building goes on crumbling year by year; its walls and arches are overgrown with grass and wild-flowers; its corridors are open to the sky; young trees spring up on the parapets; a cross stands in the middle of the arena; birds build their nests under the seats; and, if one thinks of its past in contrast with its present state, it forms the most impressive, the most solemn, the most pathetic, the most mournful sight that the human mind can conceive.

7. During the Middle Ages Rome dwindled in size and population to a very great extent. It sank to the size of a fifth-rate English town. When the Popes forsook it, in the fourteenth century, and removed to Avignon,[3] in the south of France, the population fell to seventeen thousand. Even now it is not so large a city as Naples, though it is a thousand times more interesting. In fact, the greatness of Rome is to be looked for in the past, not in the present. If we compare Rome as it is with Rome as it was under the Emperors, it is rather a tomb than a city. The ruins are more important than the modern buildings; its history, than its present life.

8. Modern Rome is enclosed by a wall twelve miles in circumference, which is pierced with sixteen gates. But not more than a third of this vast space is inhabited; the rest lies desert, or is filled with market gardens, vineyards, and public walks. The principal street, which is called the Corso, is about a mile in length. Most of the other streets are winding, narrow, dirty, and unpaved, — "indescribably ugly, cold, and alley-like." Miserable tumble-down huts stand close beside, or lean against, the walls of the finest palaces; and the dirt and squalor, the ruins and the *débris*, the mouldering remains of bygone grandeur, render many parts peculiarly sad and desolate. 9. And yet there is no part of Rome that does not possess a special interest of its own. Churches, palaces, convents, libraries, colonnades, theatres, fountains, statues, and all kinds of public buildings, meet the eye at every turn. There is no monotony, no distressing sameness, no tiresome uniformity. Almost every building is different in style and form from every other. 10. There are more than three hundred churches in Rome, many of them of great beauty, of striking architecture, rich in paintings, statuary, fine carvings, and beautiful stained glass. Here and there the eye falls upon the enormous mansions of the Roman nobility. A wonderful brightness and cheerfulness are given to many of the streets by fountains, which send up their silvery columns into the blue sun-steeped air. The two largest buildings in Rome are the Vatican[4] and St. Peter's. 11. The Vatican — which is the winter residence of the Pope — is probably the largest house in the world. It contains eleven thousand rooms, many of which are halls and galleries, and eight grand staircases; within the building itself are twenty courts and numerous gardens, with trees,



CASTLE OF ST. ANGELO, AND ST. PETER'S, ROME.

flowers, and fountains. It contains the richest collection of works of art, both ancient and modern, in the world, and possesses a library of more than a hundred thousand volumes, and nearly twenty-five thousand manuscripts in almost all the languages of the globe.

12. St. Peter's is the largest church in the world. The dome was designed by the great painter and poet, Michael Angelo Buonarotti,[5] who was then in his seventy-second year. The whole church took one hundred and seventy-six years in building, at a cost equivalent to the enormous sum of fifty millions of dollars. The internal decorations are richer and more beautiful than those of any other church in the world; and the wide-spreading colonnades and high-springing fountains in front of the great dome add to the majesty of its appearance. Modern Rome contains more than eighty palaces.

13. But besides the Rome that stands above ground and is seen, there is a Rome — once a populous city — that is underground, and not seen. Underground Rome consists of the catacombs. These are subterranean galleries which were formed by quarrying stones for the building of the ancient city. The south side of Paris stands upon numerous catacombs of the same nature. The catacombs of Rome are fifty in number. They were the refuge and abode of thousands of the early Christians, who were compelled by persecution to disappear from the sunlight and the upper air, and to spend their lives in dark caves and galleries of stone.

14. Ancient Rome was well supplied with water. Nine splendid aqueducts brought clear crystal water from the neighboring mountains and hills; but of these there are now only three in use. The ancient Romans were in their time the greatest road-makers in the world; of their strongly made, or rather strongly built roads, the

best example is the *Appian Way;*[6] it is constructed of square blocks of stone, and is still in use.

15. When the new kingdom of Italy was established, in 1859, FLORENCE was selected as the capital. Florence the Fair, or, as the Italians call it, *Firenze la Bella*, stands on the Arno, about fifty miles from the coast, surrounded by beautiful hills. Its church of the Holy Cross is the Westminster Abbey of Italy, — within its walls lie the bones of Dante,[7] Michael Angelo, Galileo,[8] and other great men. But since 1870 the seat of the capital has been removed to Rome. 16. Another of the great cities of Italy is VENICE, one of the most curious and remarkable towns in the world. It may be said to stand in the sea; its streets are canals; its cabs are gondolas; and there is an eternal silence over the city.

> "The sea is in the broad, the narrow streets,
> Ebbing and flowing; and the salt sea-weed
> Clings to the marble of her palaces.
> No track of men, no footsteps to and fro,
> Lead to her gates. The path lies o'er the sea,
> Invincible; and from the land we went
> As to a floating city, — steering in,
> And gliding up her streets as in a dream."

17. Venice was once the capital of a proud and powerful republic, the Queen of the Adriatic,[9] which held Cyprus[10] and the Morea[11] in her hands. The president was called *Doge*, or Duke; and, in a splendid and glittering ceremony, he "married the Adriatic" once a year. The first Doge was created in 697; he was followed by seventy-nine successors, the last of whom disappeared in 1788.

18. Rome was once the centre of the known world; the most powerful military state — in comparison with the others of her time — that ever the world saw;

and all known nations paid tribute to her. That was the time when all power was based upon arms and military skill, and when the Mediterranean was believed to be the only great sea in the world, and to stand in the centre of the earth. Now, however, power is wielded by commerce; and the new Mediterranean of nations is the Atlantic Ocean. The great tide of commerce does not come near Rome; she is stranded upon the deserted shores of ancient times; and the currents of power sweep around England, and that newer England, on the other side of the Atlantic, comprised in the United States and Canada.

NOTES.

1. Vespasian, a Roman Emperor from 69 to 79 A. D. He built the Colosseum, and was the father of Titus, who took Jerusalem, 70 A. D.

2. Hadrian, or Adrian, a Roman Emperor from 117 to 138. In 121 he built the wall which extends from the Tyne to the Solway Firth.

3. Avignon, a beautiful city in the south of France, on the left bank of the Rhone. It belonged to the Papal States till 1791. It was the residence of the Popes from 1309 to 1394.

4. Vatican, begun by Pope Eugenius III. in 1146. Gregory XI. fixed his permanent residence there in 1376.

5. Michael Angelo Buonarotti (1474–1563), commonly called simply *Michael Angelo*, a great Italian sculptor, painter, and architect. His remains were buried in the church of Santa Croce (Holy Cross), in Florence.

6. Appian Way, the most important road leading out of the city of Rome. It ran from Rome to Capua and Brundusium (*Brindisi*), and was constructed of large blocks of stone. It was built by Appius Claudius, 312 B. C.

7. Dante Alighieri, commonly called *Dante* (1265–1321), was the greatest of Italian poets. His chief work was *La Divina Commedia*, which consists of three parts, — the *Inferno*, *Purgatorio*, and *Paradiso*.

8. Galileo Galilei, a great Italian astronomer, born in 1564, the same year with Shakespeare; died in 1642, twenty-six years

after Shakespeare. He was imprisoned by the Inquisition for declaring that the earth moved round the sun, contrary to the supposed teaching of Scripture. After signing a recantation, it is said he whispered to a friend, "It moves, for all that."

9. **Adriatic.** It took its name from the town of Adria, which was in pre-Christian times on the sea-shore at the mouth of the river Po, but is now fourteen miles inland. This change is due to the vast quantity of mud and stones brought down by the tributaries of the Po from the Alps.

10. **Cyprus** is a beautiful and fertile island, but in some parts has an unhealthy climate. It belonged to the Turks, who took it in 1571, but is now in the possession of Great Britain.

11. **Morea**, the peninsula constituting the southern part of Greece, and connected with the northern part by the Isthmus of Corinth. It was formerly called *Peloponnesus*.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 8 to 12.

2. Write a short paper on "Modern Rome" from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) At its highest pitch of prosperity. (2) *Proconsuls*. (3) In affectionate *commemoration*. (4) Collecting the chief trophies of her line. (5) Hadrian gave an *entertainment* in honor of his birthday. (6) Following the *varying* fortunes of two men fighting for their lives. (7) The most *pathetic* sight that the human mind can *conceive*. (8) A wall pierced with sixteen gates. (9) *Squalor*. (10) *Doris*. (11) There is no *zonology*. (12) The *internal* decorations. (13) *Subterranean* galleries. (14) Its cabs are gondolas. (15) Power is now *wielded* by commerce. (16) Rome is stranded upon the deserted shores of ancient times.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: That was the time when all power was based upon arms and military skill.

5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "Most sweet it is with unuplifted eyes
> To pace the ground, if path there be or none,
> While a fair region round the traveller lies
> Which he forbears again to look upon."

6. Give as many words as you know that are derived from, or are variations of, the following English words: *five*, *land*, *call*, *hill*, *town*, *sea*, *clip*,[1] *sweep*,[2] *all*, *follow*, *heal*.

[1] *Cleave*, etc. [2] *Swoop*, etc.

POLITICAL POWER.

(Felix Holt's election speech to the workingmen of Treby Magna, about the time of the Reform Bill of 1832.)

Can'didate. In old Roman times those seeking office put on white robes. (Lat. *candidatus*, white-robed.)

Cant, insincere talk. From Lat. *canto*, I sing. Cognates, *canto*, *canticle*, *incantation* (through Fr. *chant*, *enchant*).

Corrup'tion, bribery. From Lat. *corrumpo* (*corrupt-um*), I break down, corrupt. Cognates, *corrupt*, *disrupt*, etc.

Cran'ny, a secret corner or chink. From Fr. *cran*, a notch or indentation.

Defile', make foul. From O. E. *fylan*, to pollute. Cognates, *foul*, *filth*.

Id'iot, a person without sense. From Gr. *idiōtes*, a private person who took no share in the government of the state, and was hence looked down upon. Cognates, *idiotic*, *idiocy*: *idiom* (a phrase peculiar or private to a country).

Major'ity, the larger number. From Lat. *major*, larger. Cognates, *major* (through Fr.), *mayor*, *mayoralty*. (The opposite is minority.)

Par'liaments, meetings of national representatives to discuss national business. From Fr. *parler*, to speak. Cognates, *parliamentary*, *parley*, *parlance*, *parlor*.

Pil'fer, steal. A strengthened form of *pill*, to strip bare. From Lat. *pilāre*, to plunder or take away the hair; from *pilus*, a hair. Cognates, *pilferer*, *pillage*; *pile* (the nap on cloth).

Polit'ical power, power in the affairs of a country. Gr. *pŏlis*, a city, and *politeia*, the mode of governing a state or city. Cognates, *politics*, *police*, etc.

Vot'ing, giving formally and officially an opinion; here expressed in the choosing of a representative in parliament.

1. "In my opinion, that was a true word spoken by your friend when he said the great question was how to give every man a man's share in life. But I think he expects voting to do more towards it than I do. I want the workingmen to have power. I'm a workingman myself, and I don't want to be anything else. But there are two sorts of power. There's a power to do mischief, — to undo what has been done with great expense and labor, to waste and destroy, to be cruel to the weak, to

lie and quarrel, and to talk poisonous nonsense. 2. That 's the sort of power that ignorant numbers have. It never made a joint-stool or planted a potato. Do you think it 's likely to do much towards governing a great country, and making wise laws, and giving shelter, food, and clothes to millions of men? Ignorant power comes in the end to the same thing as wicked power; it makes misery. 3. It 's another sort of power that I want us workingmen to have, and I can see plainly enough that our all having votes will do little towards it at present. I hope we, or the children that come after us, will get plenty of political power some time. I tell everybody plainly, I hope there will be great changes, and that some time, whether we live to see it or not, men will have come to be ashamed of things they 're proud of now. 4. But I should like to convince you that votes would never give you political power worth having while things are as they are now; and that if you go the right way to work you may get power sooner without votes. Perhaps all you who hear me are sober men, who try to learn as much of the nature of things as you can, and to be as little like fools as possible. A fool or idiot is one who expects things to happen that never can happen; he pours milk into a can without a bottom, and expects the milk to stay there. The more of such vain expectations a man has, the more he is of a fool or idiot. 5. And if any working-man expects a vote to do for him what it never can do, he 's foolish to that amount, if no more.

6. The way to get rid of folly is to get rid of vain expectations, and of thoughts that don't agree with the nature of things. The men who have had true thoughts about water, and what it will do when it is turned into steam, and under all sorts of circumstances, have made

themselves a great power in the world: they are turning the wheels of engines that will help to change most things. 6. But no engines would have done, if there had been false notions about the way water would act. Now, all the schemes about voting, and districts, and annual Parliaments, and the rest, are engines, and the water or steam — the force that is to work them — must come out of human nature, — out of men's passions, feelings, desires. 7. Whether the engines will do good work or bad depends on these feelings; and if we have false expectations about men's characters, we are very much like the idiot who thinks he'll carry milk in a can without a bottom. In my opinion, the notions about what mere voting will do are very much of that sort."

"That 's very fine," said a man in dirty fustian, with a scornful laugh. "But how are we to get the power without votes?"

8. "I'll tell you what 's the greatest power under heaven," said Felix, "and that is public opinion, — the ruling belief in society about what is right and what is wrong, what is honorable and what is shameful. That's the steam that is to work the engines. How can political freedom make us better, any more than a religion we don't believe in, if people laugh and wink when they see men abuse and defile it? 9. And while public opinion is what it is, while men have no better beliefs about public duty, while corruption is not felt to be a disgrace, while men are not ashamed in Parliament and out of it to make public questions which concern the welfare of millions a mere screen for their own petty private ends, I say, no fresh scheme of voting will much mend our condition. For, take us workingmen of all sorts. Suppose out of every hundred who had a vote there

were thirty who had some soberness, some sense to choose with, some good feeling to make them wish the right thing for all. 10. And suppose there were seventy out of the hundred who were, half of them, not sober, who had no sense to choose one thing in politics more than another, and who had so little good feeling in them that they wasted on their own drinking the money that should have helped to feed and clothe their wives and children; and another half of them who, if they didn't drink, were too ignorant or mean or stupid to see any good for themselves better than pocketing a five-shilling piece when it was offered them. Where would be the political power of the thirty sober men? The power would lie with the seventy drunken and stupid votes; and I'll tell you what sort of men would get the power, — what sort of men would end by returning whom they pleased to Parliament.

11. "They would be men who would undertake to do the business for a candidate, and return him; men who have no real opinions, but who pilfer the words of every opinion, and turn them into a cant which will serve their purpose at the moment; men who look out for dirty work to make their fortunes by, because dirty work wants little talent and no conscience; men who know all the ins and outs of bribery, because there is not a cranny in their own souls where a bribe can't enter. Such men as these will be the masters wherever there's a majority of voters who care more for money, more for drink, more for some mean little end which is their own and nobody's else, than for anything that has ever been called Right in the world."

George Eliot, "*Felix Holt*."

EXERCISES. — 1. Make a short SUMMARY of the above lesson.

2. Write a short paper on "Honorable Politics," from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) Plenty of political power. (2) *Annual* Parliaments. (3) We ought not to have false expectations about men's characters. (4) Public opinion. (5) Men abuse and *defile* both politics and religion. (6) *Corruption.* (7) *Scheme.* (8) *Pilfer.* (9) *Cant.* (10) Dirty work wants little talent and no conscience. (11) *Cranny.* (12) A majority of voters.

4. Parse the following sentence: A fool or idiot is one who expects things to happen that never can happen.

5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "O indefatigable laborer
> In the paths of men! when thou shalt die, 't will be
> A mark of thy surpassing industry,
> That of the monument which men shall rear
> Over thy most inestimable bone,
> Thou didst thy very self lay the first stone!"

(Addressed by T. Hood to Mr. Macadam, the inventor of *Macadamized* roads.)

6. Give all the words you know derived from, or connected with, the following English words: *true*,[1] *say*, *share*, *wane*,[2] *make*, *other*,[3] *can*, *fool*, *man*, *turn*, *good*, *bit*,[4] *clothe*, *half*.

7. Give as many derivatives as you know from the following Latin words: *candidus*, white; *canto*, I sing (root *cant*, stem *cantāt*); *scio*, I know, compound with *con* and *ne*; *major*, greater; *minor*, less; *sto*, I stand (root *stā*, stem *stāt*), compound with *con*, *in*, *circum*, and *dis*; *guberno*, I steer (through Fr.).

8. With each of the following words and phrases make a sentence illustrating its proper use: *abstract*, *compact*, *convert*, *convoy*, *digest*; *to get rid of vain expectations*; *to occupy one's self with*; *to serve the purpose of the moment*; *to know all the ins and outs of*.

[1] *Trow*, *troth*, etc.
[2] *Want*, etc.
[3] *Or*, *either*, etc.
[4] *Bite*, *bitter*, etc.

GREAT CITIES.

PARIS.

Ambas'sadors, officials who represent their sovereigns or states at a foreign court.

Arcade', a walk arched over. From Lat. *arcus*, a bow.

As'pect, appearance. From Lat. *aspicio* (*aspectum*), I look on.

Av'enues, a name for a wide approach or street. From Fr. *a*, to, and *venir*, to come

Bas'tion, a mass of earth or masonry, *built* at the angles of a fortification. From O. Fr. *bastir*, to build.

Bou'levards, wide streets generally planted with trees. From German *bollwerk*, hence, our *bulwark*, originally a fortification, or *work*, made of the trunks or *boles* of trees.

Diver'sity, variety. From Lat. *diversus*, different. Cognate, *diverse*.

Embel'lishment, making beautiful. From Fr. *embellir*, from Lat. *bellus*, pretty.

En'ergy, great and steady activity. From Gr. *energeia*, from *en*, in, and *ergon*, a work.

En'terprise, courageous and *undertaking* character. From Fr. *entreprendre*, to undertake.

Exte'rior (a Latin word), outside; opposed to Lat. *interior*, inside.

Fortifica'tions, long mounds, ditches, and fortresses for the protection of a town or country against an enemy. From Lat. *fortis*, strong, and *facio*, I make.

Mar'vel, wonder. From Fr. *merveille*; from Lat. *mirabilis*, wonderful. (The *b* and *v*, being both labials, are interchangeable.)

Or'ganized, planned and arranged. From Gr. *organon*, an instrument; from *ergo*, I do or make.

Pes'tilent, harboring disease. From Lat. *pestis*, plague or severe disease.

Preoccupa'tion, occupation of the mind with something else than what is going on around From Lat. *præ*, before, and *occupo*, I seize.

Rec'ord, account, -generally a *written* account. From Lat. *re*, again, and *cor* (*cord-is*), the heart or mind.

Rook'eries, a name here given to low and crowded quarters of a town, frequented by thieves and bad characters.

Suites, sets of rooms connected with and *following* each other. From Fr. *suivre*, to follow; from Low Lat. *sequere*; from Lat. *sequi*. Cognates, *suit* (of clothes, or suit at law); *suitable*, and (straight from

Latin) *sequel, sequent; consequence; prosecute; persecute,* etc.

Translu'cent, allowing light to pass through, but not perfectly. From Lat. *trans,* through, and *luceo,* I lighten; from *lux* (*luc-is*), light.

Untaint'ed, pure, unblemished. From Fr. *teindre,* to dye; from Lat. *tingo* (*tinctum*), to dye. Cognates, *tinge, tincture.*

Vicis'situdes, changes, generally from good to bad. From Lat. *vices,* turns; *vicissim,* by turns.

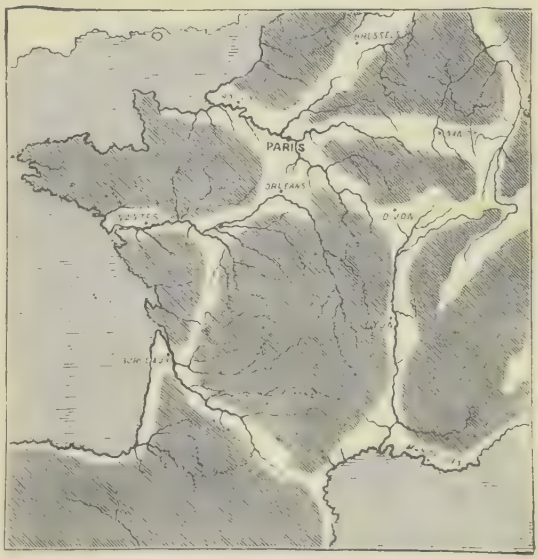
1. Paris is the largest city on the continent of Europe. If London is the business capital of the world, Paris is the pleasure capital. To Paris come people from all parts of the globe to enjoy themselves, to spend a pleasant holiday, and to spend also in the most agreeable manner any money they may have to spare. 2. It has other points of contrast with London. London is built of brick; Paris of beautiful white stone. London has a dull, murky sky; the sky of Paris is clear blue, untainted with smoke. The streets of London are often narrow and mean; those of Paris are for the most part wide and noble. There is in London a general aspect of business, hard work, and preoccupation; the best-known parts of Paris are filled with people who seem to have no other occupation than that of enjoying themselves.

3. Paris received its name from a small tribe of Gauls, called the *Parisii.* In the earliest times we have any record of, the spot was a rude fortress and place of refuge, — with huts built of mud, reeds, and branches of trees, to which this wild tribe betook themselves when hard pressed by their enemies, and where they were protected by the two branches of the river, which parted at the island now called the Island of the City (*Isle de la Cité*). Early in the sixth century the town built here was already the chief city of the north of France; it stood upon two islands, the Isle de la Cité and the Isle de St. Louis. It was then but a small village; it is now,

PONT-NEUF AND OLD CITY, PARIS.

as has been said, the largest and most beautiful city on the continent.

4. Paris stands upon both banks of the Seine, two thirds of it upon the north or right bank, and one third upon the south or left bank of the river. It does not stand in the geographical centre of France; but, as Paris is the head and the brain of that great country, it is indeed its moral and intellectual centre. Again, though Paris is not in the geographical centre of France, it stands at the head of all the land ways, of all the most fertile alluvial river valleys of France. All the natural roads of the country, which take their way through the centre of the great river-valleys, meet at Paris.



PARIS AT HEAD OF THE LAND WAYS OF FRANCE.

5. Just as London stands at the centre of the great water ways of the world, and thus commands the commerce of the world, so Paris stands at the centre of the great land ways of France, the richest and most fertile country in Europe. It is about 250 miles from London; 500 miles from the Mediterranean; 750 from Rome; 650 from Madrid; and 1300 from Constantinople. Railways

unite it with all these towns (except the last), and indeed with every town of the smallest importance in Europe. 6. Paris is the seat of the government of France, the place where all the ambassadors from foreign countries reside, the centre of all the banking branches of the country, the home of law, learning, and science. It has seen the most terrible vicissitudes; it has gone through the most fearful experiences of war, through the most awful scenes of blood and fire; but it has emerged with little injury from them all.

7. The city itself is a marvel of architectural beauty, and of ever-pleasing variety. It is surrounded by a strong wall of stone, with ninety-four bastions, and with a deep exterior ditch, and a broad military road outside. The hills and rising grounds around Paris are also crowned with very strong fortifications. Paris has always been surrounded by walls; but the present system of fortifications was begun in the year 1840. 8. Despite the wars and sieges she has had to undergo, Paris has grown steadily in size, in beauty, and in population. Four centuries ago — in the year 1474, the year when the first English printed book was published in London — Paris had a population of only 150,000; in the year 1802 it had slowly grown to 670,000; but from the beginning of this century it has shot up with marvellous rapidity, until now — in the year 1880 — Paris numbers about two millions of inhabitants. 9. The wealth and industry of the inhabitants have changed the whole appearance of this splendid city within the last quarter of a century. Magnificent streets of palaces, broad boulevards and avenues, buildings of wonderful beauty, strike the new-comer with amazement as he enters this modern Babylon. 10. Broad boulevards and avenues, lined with trees, and commanded by lofty houses built of fine white

stone, — houses which are seven or eight stories high, with balconies ornamented by light ironwork and filled with flowers of various colors, — run for miles round the whole town. Some of these boulevards run also through the heart of Paris, and are crowded with carriages, cabs, and foot-passengers, who stream along in the afternoon sunshine in one unbroken current of pleasure-seeking men and women. The shops are the most beautiful, varied, and striking in Europe. 11. The Passages, which are covered streets, and which are also lined with gay and brilliant shops of every kind, form a special feature in the varied world of Paris. There are one hundred and sixty of them; and thus the Parisian and the foreigner may walk for miles under a covering of glass in any weather. Paris has her squares too, with arcades round the sides, with gardens in the middle of them, — gardens gay with flowers and green with trees, while often a beautiful marble fountain will send up its column of glittering spray into the bright sunshine, and give a sense of hush and quiet and coolness by the gentle plash and perpetual fall of its waters. 12. The magnificent quays, which line the river for miles, are due to the enterprise and energy of Napoleon I. But as commerce has nearly deserted the Seine, and prefers the land-road of railways, they are lined, not by forests of masts, but — oddly enough — by rows of old-book stalls. Still they are splendid promenades, and add to the finished beauty of the whole river scene. The river itself is crossed by twenty-six light and elegant bridges, mostly built of stone, but some consisting of wide sweeps of iron arches, as strong as they are graceful. The city contains also many gardens and parks, gay with many-colored flowers; though they are not so numerous nor so large as can be seen in London.

13. The whole city contains about seventy thousand houses; but as these are much higher than most of the houses in London, and contain different families living in separate suites of rooms upon each story, the population is much more dense than in London. The greatest improvements in the city have been made since the year 1854, when Napoleon III. invited Baron Hausmann to Paris, and ordered him to set to work. Hausmann quickly cleared out the dark and narrow streets, pulled down the picturesque but pestilent old houses, drove splendid boulevards and streets through the crowded rookeries, and let in light and air upon all the old parts of Paris.

14. The Museums, under which head the French include galleries of painting and sculpture, form a remarkable feature of this remarkable city. Museums of antiquities, of natural history, of war, of geography, of art, of science, — all are open free of expense to the intelligent and inquiring visitor. The National Library of Paris has itself nearly two million books, — almost double the number of the books in the British Museum; and it has scores of miles of shelves. 15. Fine buildings meet the eye everywhere, — churches of every age and in every style, palaces, spacious markets, hospitals and colleges, theatres and magnificent barracks. The International Exhibitions of Paris have always been famous for the scale upon which they have been organized, as well as for the results achieved. 16. There are in Paris industries of almost every kind. Jewelry, clock-making; working in gold, silver, and iron; furniture, chemicals, printing, — all these exercise the patient and cheerful ingenuity of the Parisian workman. Paris has also long been noted for beautiful porcelain and rich carpets.

17. The first attempts at the embellishment of Paris

on a large scale were made by Louis XIV., called also Louis the Great. Very great changes and improvements were also due to the practical and active brain of Napoleon I.; but by far the greatest changes and most striking improvements were made by Napoleon III. 18. All this variety of street and square and boulevard, all this splendor of church and palace and public building, all this perpetual movement of people and of vehicles, all this gay diversity of color, is arched over by a sky of clear, translucent blue, untainted by mist, untouched by cloud, and untinged by smoke.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 9 to 12, inclusive.

2. Write a short paper on "Open-Air Paris" from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) Paris has other points of *contrast* with London. (2) *Alluvial* river valleys. (3) The centre of all the banking branches of the country. (4) It has seen the most terrible *vicissitudes*. (5) Magnificent streets of palaces strike the new-comer with *amazement*. (6) The *quays* are due to the *enterprise* and energy of Napoleon I. (7) Commerce has nearly deserted the Seine. (8) Separate suites of rooms. (9) *Pestilent* old houses. (10) *Rookeries*. (11) *Embellishment*. (12) This gay *diversity* of color.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentence: "The greatest improvements have been made since the year 1854, when Napoleon III. invited Baron Hausmann to Paris."

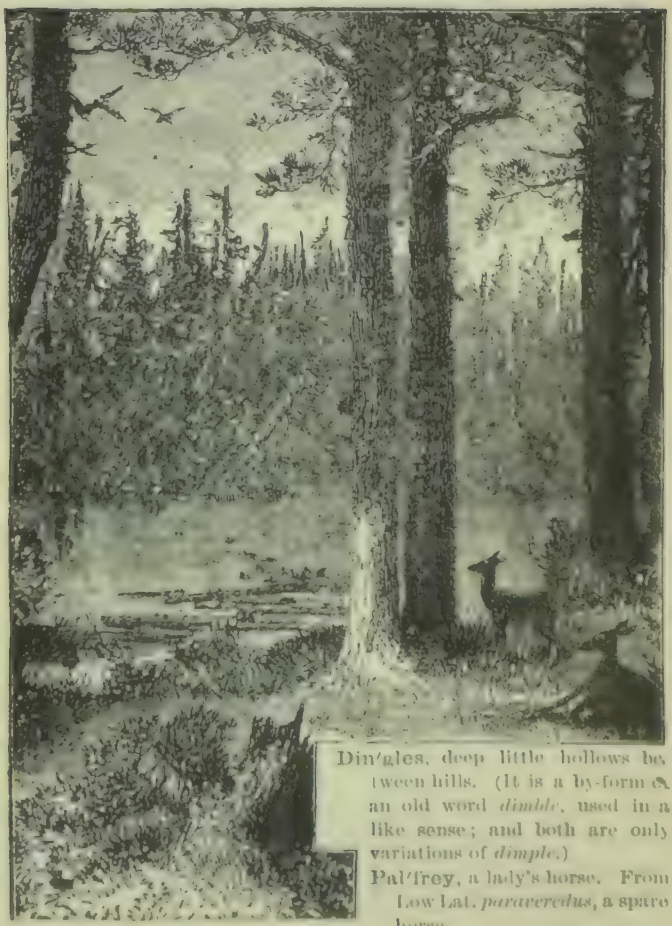
5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "Haroun, who felt that on a soul like this
> The mightiest vengeance could but fall amiss,
> Now deigned to smile, as one great lord of fate
> Might smile upon another half as great."

6. Write in columns all the words you know connected with the following English words: *name, stand,*[1] *town, fire, glow, give, self, strong, high, up,*[2] *meet,*[3] *kin,*[4] *live.*

[1] *Stead*, etc. [2] *Op-en.* [3] *Mate*, etc. [4] *Kind*, etc.

A FOREST SCENE.



Din'gles, deep little hollows between hills. (It is a by-form of an old word *dimble*, used in a like sense; and both are only variations of *dimple*.)

Pal'frey, a lady's horse. From Low Lat. *paraveredus*, a spare horse.

Peered, peeped. From the Middle English *piren*, to look closely.

1. They came to where the brushwood ceased, and day
Peered 'twixt the stems; and the ground broke away

In a sloped sward down to a brawling brook,
And up as high as where they stood to look
On the brook's farther side was clear; but then
The underwood and trees began again.

2. This open glen was studded thick with thorns,
Then white with blossom; and you saw the horns,
Through the green fern, of the shy fallow-deer
Which come at noon down to the water here.

3. You saw the bright-eyed squirrels dart along
Under the thorns on the greensward; and strong
The blackbird whistled from the dingles near,
And the weird chipping of the woodpecker
Rang lonelily and sharp; the sky was fair,
And a fresh breath of spring stirred everywhere.

4. Merlin and Vivian stopped on the slope's brow
To gaze on the green sea of leaf and bough
Which glittering lay all round them, lone and mild,
As if to itself the quiet forest smiled.

5. Upon the brow-top grew a thorn, and here
The grass was dry and mossed, and you saw clear
Across the hollow; white anemonës
Starred the cool turf, and clumps of primroses
Ran out from the dark underwood behind.
No fairer resting-place a man could find.
"Here let us halt," said Merlin then; and she
Nodded and tied her palfrey to a tree.

Matthew Arnold.

CAUTIONS AND DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1. — Line 2: Avoid the verse accent upon *'twixt*. Read *'twixt-the-stems* as one word.

VERSE 2. — Line 3: Read *through-the-green-fern* as one word.

VERSE 3. — Line 4: Avoid the verse accent upon *the*.

VERSE 4. — Line 2: Read *on-the-green-sea* as one word.

CHARACTER OF SIR WALTER SCOTT.

Appur'tenances, belongings. From Lat. *ad*, to, and *pertineo*, I belong. Cognates, *appertain*, *impertinent*.

Au'dible, to be heard. From La. *audio*, I hear. Cognates, *auditor*, *audience*, *inaudible*.

Dis'cipline, training. From Lat. *discipulus*, a scholar; from *disco*, I learn. Cognates, *disciple*, *disciplinarian*.

Exten'sion, a widening out. From Lat. *ex*, out of, and *tendo* (*tens-um*), I stretch. Cognates, *extend*, *extensive*; *I use* (= stretched); *intend*.

For'titude, quiet courage or bravery. From Latin *fortis*, strong

or brave. Cognates, *fort*, *fortress*.

Imperceptibly, without any one noticing it. From Lat. *in*, not, and *percipio*, I perceive. Cognates, *perception*, *perceptible*; (through Fr.) *perceive*.

Incarnated, clothed in flesh. From Lat. *caro* (*carn-is*), flesh. Cognates, *carnation* (a flesh-colored flower); *carnivorous*; *incarnation*.

Indefatigable, not to be wearied out. From Lat. *in*, not, and *defatīgo*, I tire out. Cognate, *fatigue* (through Fr. The ending *ue* is of Fr. origin).

Intercourse, coming together. From Lat. *inter*, between, and *curro* (*curs-um*), I run. Cognates, *current*, *cursory*; (through Fr.) *course*.

Modelled, moulded or fashioned. From Fr. *modèle*, a model; from Lat. *modŭlus*, a diminutive of *modus*, a measure. Cognates, *mode*, *moderate*, *moderation*.

Repositories, places in which things are kept. From Lat. *re*, back, and *pono* (*posit-um*), I place. Cognates, *repose*; *depose*, *deposit*, *depository*.

Scrupulous, very careful. From Lat. *scrupulus*, a small sharp stone, which, getting into the shoe, would make a person move carefully.

Testament, will. From Lat. *testis*, a witness. Cognates, *testator*, *testatrix*; *testify*, *testimony*.

Texture, woven fibre. From Lat. *texo* (*textum*), I weave. Cognates, *text*, *textile*.

Tincture, that which tinges. From Lat. *tingo* (*tinctum*), I stain. Cognate, *tinge*. See page 200.

1. About half-past one P. M. on the 21st of September, 1832, Sir Walter Scott breathed his last, in the presence of all his children. It was a beautiful day; so warm, that every window was wide open; and so perfectly still, that the sound of all others most delicious to his ear — the gentle ripple of the Tweed over its pebbles — was distinctly audible as we knelt around the bed, and his eldest son kissed and closed his eyes. No sculptor ever modelled a more majestic image of repose.

2. It will, I presume, be allowed that no human character, which we have the opportunity of studying with equal minuteness, had fewer faults mixed up in its texture. The grand virtue of fortitude, the basis of all others, was never displayed in higher perfection than in him; and it was, as perhaps true courage always

is, combined with an equally admirable spirit of kindness and humanity. His pride, if we must call it so, undebased by the least tincture of mere vanity, was intertwined with a most exquisite charity, and was not inconsistent with true humility. 3. If ever the principle of kindliness was incarnated in a mere man, it was in him; and real kindliness can never be but modest. In the social relations of life, where men are most effectually tried, no spot can be detected in him. He was a patient, dutiful, reverent son; a generous, compassionate, tender husband; an honest, careful, and most affectionate father. Never was a more virtuous or a happier fireside than his. The influence of his mighty genius shadowed it imperceptibly; his calm good sense, and his angelic sweetness of heart and temper, regulated and softened a strict but paternal discipline. 4. His children, as they grew up, understood by degrees the high privilege of their birth; but the profoundest sense of his greatness never disturbed their confidence in his goodness. The buoyant play of his spirits made him sit young among the young; parent and son seemed to live in brotherhood together; and the chivalry of his imagination threw a certain air of courteous gallantry into his relations with his daughters, which gave a very peculiar grace to the fondness of their intercourse.

5. Perhaps the most touching evidence of the lasting tenderness of his early domestic feelings was exhibited to his executors, when they opened his repositories in search of his testament, the evening after his burial. On lifting up his desk, we found arranged in careful order a series of little objects, which had obviously been so placed there that his eye might rest on them every morning before he began his tasks. These were the old-fashioned boxes that had garnished his mother's

toilet when he, a sickly child, slept in her dressing-room: the silver taper-stand which the young advocate had bought for her with his first five-guinea fee; a row of small packets inscribed with her hand, and containing the hair of those of her offspring that had died before her; his father's snuff-box and pencil-case; and more things of the like sort, recalling the "old familiar faces." 6. The same feeling was apparent in all the arrangements of his private apartment. Pictures of his father and mother were the only ones in his dressing-room. The clumsy antique cabinets that stood there — things of a very different class from the beautiful and costly productions in the public rooms below — had all belonged to the furniture of George's Square. Even his father's rickety washing-stand, with all its cramped appurtenances, though exceedingly unlike what a man of his very scrupulous habits would have selected in these days, kept its ground.

7. Such a son and parent could hardly fail in any of the other social relations. No man was a firmer or more indefatigable friend. I know not that he ever lost one; and a few with whom, during the energetic middle stage of life, from political differences or other accidental circumstances, he lived less familiarly, had all gathered round him, and renewed the full warmth of early affection in his later days. There was enough to dignify the connection in their eyes; but nothing to chill it on either side. 8. The imagination that so completely mastered him when he chose to give her the rein, was kept under most determined control when any of the positive obligations of active life came into question. A high and pure sense of duty presided over whatever he had to do as a citizen and a magistrate; and as a landlord he considered his estate as an extension of his hearth.

Lockhart (1794–1854).

EXERCISES. — 1. Make a SUMMARY of paragraphs 2 to 6, inclusive.

2. Write "The Character of Sir Walter Scott," from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) A more *majestic* image of repose. (2) *Fortitude* is the *basis* of all other virtues. (3) Undebased by the least *tincture* of vanity. (4) *Incarnated*. (5) His angelic sweetness softened a strict discipline. (6) *Intercourse*. (7) *Repositories*. (8) *Garnished*. (9) *Crampea appurtenances*. (10) More *indefatigable* friend. (11) Energetic middle stage of life. (12) He considered his estate as an extension of his hearth.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: "In the social relations of life, where men are most effectually tried, no spot can be detected in him."

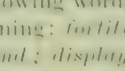
5. Analyze the following sentence: "I'm truly sorry man's dominion has broken nature's social union, and justifies that ill opinion which makes thee startle at me, thy poor earth-born companion and fellow-mortal."

6. Give as many words as you know, derived from, or in any way connected with, the following English words: *late*,[1] *day*,[2] *wide*, *knee*,[3] *true*, *rue*,[4] *live*, *give*, *begin*, *slow*,[5] *know*, *no*.

7. Give as many derivatives as you know from the following Latin words: *tendo*, I stretch (root *tend*, stem *tens*), compound with *con*, *ex*, *in*; *ligo*, I bind (root *lig*, stem *ligat*), compound with *ob*; *quæro*, I seek (root *quær*, stem *quæsit*), compound with *ex*, *in*, and *con*; *imago* (*imagin-is*), an image; *socius*, a companion; *pater*, a father; *frater*, a brother.

8. With each of the following words and phrases make a sentence illustrating its meaning: *fortitude*, *courage*, *equanimity*, *contentment*, *deep*, *profound*; *display in perfection*; *not inconsistent with*; *shake confidence*; *insinuate a doubt*.

[1] *Lateness*, etc. [2] *Dawn*, etc. [3] *Kneel*, etc.
[4] *Ruth*, *ruthless*. [5] *Slug*, *sluggard*, *slack*, etc.



THE SPANISH ARMADA (1588).

Communica'tions, connections. From Lat. *communis*, common or joined.

Con'cert, action together. From Lat. *con*, together, and *certo*, I strive.

Demor'alized, disheartened. From Fr. *démoraliser*, to bring down from a *moral*, upright, or confident condition. Cognates, *moral*, *morality*.

Descent', landing. From Lat. *de*, down, and *scando* (*scans-um*), I climb. Cognates, *descend*; *ascend*, *ascent*.

Detach'ments, separate bodies of men. From Fr. *détacher*. Its opposite is *attach*; and it is connected with the English word *tack*.

Gal'leons, great galleys. From Spanish *galeon*.

Her'etics, persons who do not believe in the "true faith," and *separate* themselves from believers. From Gr. *haireo*, I take or choose.

Kerns, common people, peasantry.

Mili'tia, men enrolled and partially drilled, liable to be called upon only for the internal defence of the country.

Mus'tering, assembling. From O. Fr. *mustrer*; Fr. *montrer*, to show; Lat. *monstrāre*. (The idea is that of *showing one's self*, like the O. E. *wapenschaw* = a showing of weapons.) Cognates, *demonstrate*, *demonstration*.

No'table, considerable. From Lat. *nota*, a mark; hence *notabilis*. *Notable* is contracted into *noble*. Cognates, *ignoble*, *nobility*.

Pa'triotism, love of one's country. From Lat. *pater*, a father; *patria*, the fatherland. Cognates, *patriot*, *expatriate*.

Rear, hinder part. From Fr. *arrière*, behind; from Lat. *ad*, to, and *retro*, behind (This word has nothing to do with the English *rear*, which is a by-form of *rise*, *raise*, and *rouse*.)

1. It was only on the last day of July that the sails of the Armada were seen from the Lizard,[1] and the English beacons flared out their alarm along the coast. The news found England ready. An army was mustering under Leicester at Tilbury,[2] the militia of the midland counties were gathering to London, while those of the south and east were held in readiness to meet a descent on either shore. 2. Had Parma[3] landed on the earliest day he purposed, he would have found his way to

London barred by a force stronger than his own, — a force, too, of men who had already crossed pikes on equal terms with his best infantry in Flanders. "When I shall have landed," he warned his master, "I must fight battle after battle; I shall lose men by wounds and disease; I must leave detachments behind me to keep open my communications; and in a short time the body of my army will become so weak, that not only I may be unable to advance in the face of the enemy, and time may be given to the heretics and your Majesty's other enemies to interfere, but there may fall out some notable inconveniences, with the loss of everything, and I be unable to remedy it."

3. Even had the Prince landed, in fact, the only real chance of Spanish success lay in a Catholic rising; and at this crisis patriotism proved stronger than religious zeal in the hearts of the English Catholics. Catholic gentry brought their vessels up alongside of Drake[4] and Lord Howard,[5] and Catholic lords led their tenantry to the muster at Tilbury. But to secure a landing at all, the Spaniards had to be masters of the Channel; and in the Channel lay an English fleet, resolved to struggle hard for the mastery. 4. As the Armada sailed on in a broad crescent past Plymouth, moving toward its point of junction with Parma at Dunkirk, the vessels which had gathered under Lord Howard of Effingham slipped out of the bay, and hung with the wind upon their rear. In numbers the two forces were strangely unequal; the English fleet counted only eighty vessels against the one hundred and thirty which composed the Armada. In size of ships the disproportion was even greater. 5. Fifty of the English vessels, including the squadron of Lord Howard and the craft of the volunteers, were little bigger than yachts of the present day.

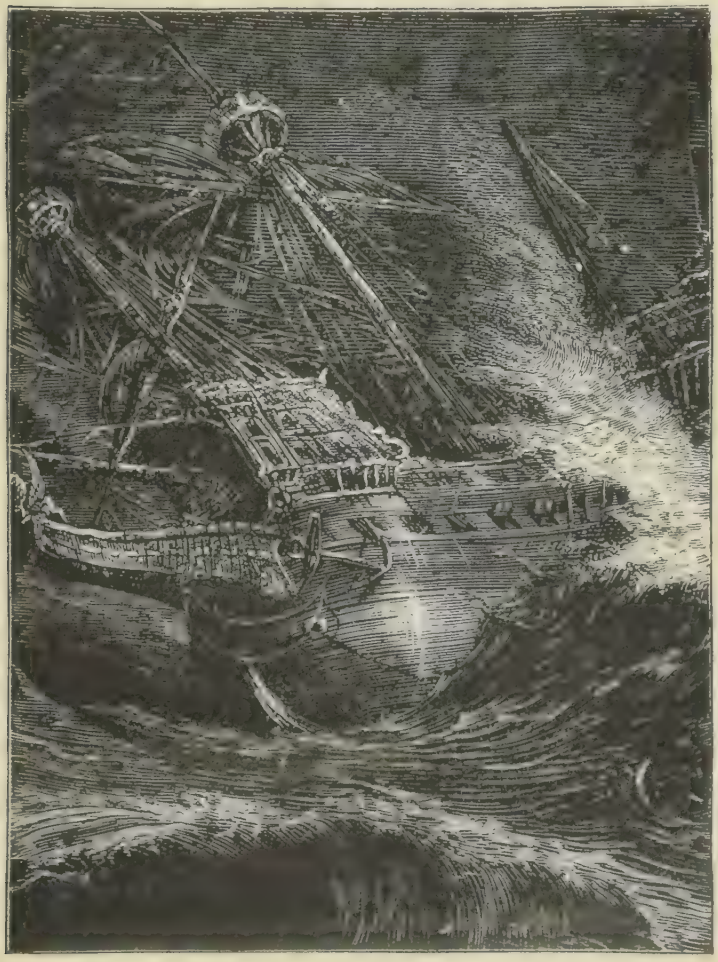
Even of the thirty Queen's ships which formed its main body, there were only four which equalled in tonnage the smallest of the Spanish galleons. Sixty-five of these galleons formed the most formidable half of the Spanish fleet; and four galliasses, or gigantic galleys, armed with fifty guns apiece, fifty-six armed merchantmen, and twenty pinnaces made up the rest.

6. The Armada was provided with two thousand five hundred cannon, and a vast store of provisions; it had on board eight thousand seamen and twenty thousand soldiers; and if a court-favorite, the Duke of Medina Sidonia, had been placed at its head, he was supported by the ablest staff of naval officers which Spain possessed. Small, however, as the English ships were, they were in perfect trim; they sailed two feet for the Spaniards' one; they were manned with nine thousand hardy seamen, and their admiral was backed by a crowd of captains who had won fame in the Spanish seas. With him was Hawkins,[6] who had been the first to break into the charmed circle of the Indies; Frobisher,[7] the hero of the Northwest Passage; and above all Drake, who held command of the privateers. 7. They had won too the advantage of the wind; and, closing in, or drawing off as they would, the lightly-handled English vessels, which fired four shots to the Spaniards' one, hung boldly on the rear of the great fleet as it moved along the Channel. "The feathers of the Spaniard," in the phrase of the English seamen, "were plucked one by one." Galleon after galleon was sunk, boarded, driven on shore, and yet Medina Sidonia failed in bringing his pursuers to a close engagement. 8. Now halting, now moving slowly on, the running fight between the two fleets lasted throughout the week, till the Armada dropped anchor in Calais roads. The time had now

come for sharper work if the junction of the Armada with Parma was to be prevented; for, demoralized as the Spaniards had been by the merciless chase, their loss in ships had not been great, while the English supplies of food and ammunition were fast running out. Howard resolved to force an engagement, and, lighting eight fireships at midnight, sent them down with the tide upon the Spanish line. The galleons at once cut their cables and stood out in panic to sea, drifting with the wind in a long line off Gravelines.[8]

9. Drake resolved at all costs to prevent their return. At dawn the English ships closed fairly in, and almost their last cartridge was spent ere the sun went down. Three great galleons had sunk, three had drifted helplessly on to the Flemish coast; but the bulk of the Spanish vessels remained, and even to Drake the fleet seemed "wonderful great and strong." 10. Within the Armada itself, however, all hope was gone. Huddled together by the wind and the deadly English fire, their sails torn, their masts shot away, the crowded galleons had become mere slaughter-houses. Four thousand men had fallen, and, bravely as the seamen fought, they were cowed by the terrible butchery. Medina himself was in despair. "We are lost, Señor Oquenda," he cried to his bravest captain; "what are we to do?" "Let others talk of being lost," replied Oquenda; "your Excellency has only to order up fresh cartridge." 11. But Oquenda stood alone, and a council of war resolved on retreat to Spain by the one course open, that of a circuit round the Orkneys. "Never anything pleased me better," wrote Drake, "than seeing the enemy fly with a southerly wind to the northwards. Have a good eye to the Prince of Parma, for, with the grace of God, if we like, I doubt not ere it be long so to handle the matter with the Duke

of Sidonia, as he shall wish himself home again among his orange trees." 12. But the work of destruction was reserved for a mightier foe than Drake. Supplies fell



sho-t, and the English vessels were forced to give up the chase; but the Spanish ships which remained had no sooner reached the Orkneys than the storms of the

northern seas broke on them with a fury before which all concert and union disappeared.

13. Fifty reached Corunna,[9] bearing ten thousand men stricken with pestilence and death; of the rest some were sunk, some dashed to pieces against the Irish cliffs. The wreckers of the Orkneys[10] and the Faroes,[11] the clansmen of the Scottish Isles, the kerns of Donegal and Galway, all had their part in the work of murder and robbery. Eight thousand Spaniards perished between the Giants' Causeway[12] and the Blaskets.[13] 14. On a strand near Sligo,[14] an English captain numbered eleven hundred corpses which had been cast up by the sea. The flower of the Spanish nobility, who had been sent on the new crusade under Alonzo da Leyva, after twice suffering shipwreck, put a third time to sea to founder on a reef near Dunluce.[15] *J. R. Green.*

NOTES.

1. Lizard Point, the most southern promontory of England. The word is a corruption of *Lazar Point.* A *lazar* (so called from *Lazarus*) was the name in the Middle Ages for a *leper.* A house for lepers and other sick people was a *Lazar house* or *Lazaretto.* There was a house erected on this point for the reception of persons stricken, or supposed to be stricken, with plague. Hence the name. (The *d* is an excrescence, like the *d* in *sound*, *thunder*, etc.)

2. Tilbury, a fort in Essex, near the mouth of the Thames, opposite Gravesend.

3. Parma, the Duke of Parma, who was in command of the Spanish army stationed near Dunkirk, and prepared for the invasion of England.

4. Drake, Sir Francis (1545–1595), one of the great sailors of England. He was for many years the plague of Spain, the Spanish possessions, and the Spanish fleet, both naval and commercial.

5. Lord Howard of Effingham (1536–1624) was Lord High Admiral of England, he commanded, in 1588, the fleet which destroyed the invincible Armada.

6. Hawkins, Sir John (1520–1590), a gallant English admiral, who served under Drake, and also on many expeditions. His adventures are described in Hakluyt's *Voyages*.

7. Frobisher, Sir Martin (died 1594), a great sailor, who served under Drake in the West Indies, etc. The discovery of the Northwest Passage was his most besetting thought, and he made three attempts. Frobisher's Strait is named after him.

8. Gravelines, a town on the coast of France, about twelve miles from Calais.

9. Corunna, a town in the northwest of Spain, now famous as the spot where Sir John Moore shipped off his troops after effecting one of the most masterly retreats in history, and where he met his death in January, 1800.

10. Orkneys, islands between Scotland and the Shetland Isles.

11. Faroes (more correctly the *Far*, or *Sheep Islands*), a group of islands lying between the Shetland Isles and Iceland. (*Oe* is a Norwegian word meaning *island;* it is the *ey* in Orkn*ey*, Jers*ey*, etc.)

12. Giants' Causeway, a promontory of basaltic rock, in Antrim, which runs a long way out into the sea. It is about 122 miles from Dublin.

13. Blaskets, a group of islands on the west coast of Ireland.

14. Sligo, the capital of County Sligo, a seaport on the west coast of Ireland.

15. Dunluce, a small town on the north coast of Ireland.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 6 to 12, inclusive.

2. Write a short paper on "The Spanish Armada" from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases: (1) An army was mustering at Tilbury. (2) To meet a descent on either shore. (3) I must leave detachments behind me to keep open my communications. (4) Notable inconveniences. (5) Patriotism proved stronger than fanaticism. (6) The English hung with the wind upon their rear. (7) Closing in or drawing off as they would. (8) Demoralized by the merciless chase. (9) A council of war resolved on retreat. (10) All concert and union disappeared. (11) The flower of the Spanish nobility. (12) The wreckers and the clansmen.

4. Parse the following sentence: "Even had the Prince landed, in fact, the only real chance of Spanish success lay in a Catholic rising."

5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "There is a flower, the lesser celandine,
> That shrinks like many more from cold and rain
> And the first moment that the sun may shine,
> Bright as the sun himself, 'tis out again!"

6. Write down as many words as you know derived from or cognate with, the following English words: *late*, *while*, *meat*,[1] *lose*,[2] *body*, *fall*, *land*, *lie*, *heart*, *hard*, *hang*, *wind*.

7. Write down in columns as many derivatives as you know from the following Latin words: *scando*, I climb (root *scand*, stem *scans*), compound with *ad* and *de*; *fero*, I carry, compound with *con*, *de*, *re*, and *inter*; *patria*, one's country; *volo*, I wish (root *vol*, noun *voluntas*, will); *jungo*, I join (root *jung*, stem *junct*), compound with *ad*, *con*, and *dis*.

8. With each of the following words and phrases make a sentence illustrating its proper use: *straight* and *strait*; *suite* and *sweet*; *lave* and *leave*; *to get the upper hand*; *to hold the reins*; *to wield the power*.

[1] *Mate*, etc. [2] *Forlorn*, etc.

THE SPANISH ARMADA.

Ala'rum, call to arms. From the Italian *all' arme* = to arms! from Lat. *ad arma!*

Bla'zon, the heraldic "fields" or divisions *blazoned* on a flag.

Castile', the part of Spain which occupied the central table-land of the Peninsula, — here used for Spain.

Halberdiers', soldiers with halberds or long battle-axes. From Fr. *hallebarde*; from O. Ger. *helmbarte*. (*Helm* is a pole or handle, and *barte* an axe.)

Her Grace, Queen Elizabeth

Lil'ies, the blazon of France. The lily, or *fleur-de-lis*, was the emblem of France under the monarchy.

List, care or please.

Sem'per ea'dem, ever the same.

The lion, the English lion on the flag.

Wards, divisions of a town or city. The city of London is divided into wards, each of which is represented by an alderman.

1 Attend, all ye who list to hear our noble England's praise;
I tell of the thrice-famous deeds she wrought in ancient days

When that great fleet invincible against her bore in vain
The richest spoils of Mexico, the stoutest hearts of Spain.

2. It was about the lovely close of a warm summer day,
There came a gallant merchant-ship full sail to Plymouth Bay;
Her crew hath seen Castile's black fleet beyond Aurigny's[1] isle,
At earliest twilight, on the waves lie heaving many a mile;
At sunrise she escaped their van, by God's especial grace;
And the tall Pinta,[2] till the noon, had held her close in chase.

3. Forthwith a guard at every gun was placed along the wall;
The beacon blazed upon the roof of Edgecumbe's[3] lofty hall;
Many a light fishing-bark put out to pry along the coast;
And with loose rein and bloody spur rode inland many a post.
With his white hair unbonneted the stout old sheriff comes;
Behind him march the halberdiers, before him sound the drums;
His yeomen, round the market-cross, make clear an ample space,
For there behoves him to set up the standard of Her Grace.

4. And haughtily the trumpets peal, and gayly dance the bells,
As slow upon the laboring wind the royal blazon swells.
Look how the lion of the sea lifts up his ancient crown,
And underneath his deadly paw treads the gay lilies down.
So stalked he when he turned to flight, on that famed Picard field,[4]
Bohemia's plume, and Genoa's bow, and Cæsar's eagle shield:
So glared he when at Agincourt[5] in wrath he turned to bay,
And crushed and torn beneath his claws the princely hunters lay.
Ho! strike the flagstaff deep, Sir Knight; ho! scatter flowers, fair maids:
Ho! gunners, fire a loud salute: ho! gallants, draw your blades:
Thou sun, shine on her joyously, — ye breezes, waft her wide, —
Our glorious "SEMPER EADEM," the banner of our pride!

5. The freshening breeze of eve unfurled that banner's massive fold,
The parting gleam of sunshine kissed that haughty scroll of gold;
Night sank upon the dusky beach, and on the purple sea, —
Such night in England ne'er had been, nor e'er again shall be!

From Eddystone[6] to Berwick[7] bounds, from Lynn[8] to Milford Bay,[9]
That time of slumber was as bright and busy as the day;
For swift to east and swift to west the ghastly war-flame spread;
High on Saint Michael's Mount[10] it shone, it shone on Beachy Head.[11]

3 Far on the deep the Spaniard saw, along each southern shire,
Cape beyond cape, in endless range, those twinkling points of fire;
The fisher left his skiff to rock on Tamar's[12] glittering waves,
The rugged miners poured to war from Mendip's[13] sunless caves.
O'er Longleat's[14] towers, o'er Cranbourne's[15] oaks, the fiery herald flew;
He roused the shepherds of Stonehenge,[16] the rangers of Beaulieu.[17]
Right sharp and quick the bells all night rang out from Bristol town,
And ere the day three hundred horse had met on Clifton down;[18]
The sentinel on Whitehall gate[19] looked forth into the night,
And saw o'erhanging Richmond Hill[20] the streak of blood-red light.

4 Then bugle's note and cannon's roar the deathlike silence broke,
And with one start, and with one cry, the royal city woke.

At once on all her stately gates arose the answering fires;
At once the wild alarum clashed from all her reeling spires;
From all the batteries of the Tower pealed loud the voice of fear;
And all the thousand masts of Thames sent back a louder cheer:
And from the farthest wards was heard the rush of hurrying feet,
And the broad streams of pikes and flags rushed down each roaring street:
And broader still became the blaze, and louder still the din,
As fast from every village round the horse came spurring in:
And eastward straight, from wild Blackheath,[21] the warlike errand went,
And roused in many an ancient hall the gallant squires of Kent.

Southward from Surrey's pleasant hills flew those bright couriers forth;
High on bleak Hampstead's[22] swarthy moor they started for the north;
And on, and on, without a pause, untired they bounded still,
All night from tower to tower they sprang, they sprang from hill to hill:
Till the proud Peak[23] unfurled the flag o'er Darwin's[24] rocky dales,
Till like volcanoes flared to heaven the stormy hills of Wales;

Till twelve fair counties saw the blaze on Malvern's[25] lonely height,
Till streamed in crimson on the wind the Wrekin's[26] crest of light,
Till broad and fierce the star came forth on Ely's[27] stately fane,
And tower and hamlet rose in arms o'er all the boundless plain;
Till Belvoir's[28] lordly terraces the sign to Lincoln sent,
And Lincoln sped the message on o'er the wide vale of Trent;
Till Skiddaw[29] saw the fire that burned on Gaunt's[30] embattled pile,
And the red glare on Skiddaw roused the burghers of Carlisle.[31]

Lord Macaulay (1800–1859).

NOTES.

1. Aurigny, another name for *Alderney*, one of the Channel Islands, about seven miles from Cape La Hogue, in Normandy.

2. Pinta, the name of one of the high-built vessels of the Spanish Armada.

3. Edgecumbe, or *Edgecombe*, the seat of Lord Mount Edgecombe, opposite the town of Plymouth.

4. Picard field, Crecy, a village in Picardy, about ten miles from Abbeville, near which the battle of Crecy was fought, in 1346. In that battle the French were completely overthrown; the king of Bohemia was killed; his son, — here called *Cæsar*, — Emperor elect of Germany, shared in the defeat; and the Genoese bowmen were "turned to flight."

5. Agincourt, a village in the north of France, about seven miles from Hesdin. Here Henry V. gained a great victory over the French in 1415.

6. Eddystone (where there is now a lighthouse), a reef of rocks in the English Channel, about fourteen miles from Plymouth breakwater; and

7. Berwick-upon-Tweed. Respectively the extreme south-western and northeastern points of England.

8. Lynn, commonly called *Lynn Regis*, or *King's Lynn*, a borough in the east of Norfolk, on the Ouse; and

9. Milford Bay, in Pembrokeshire, in the west of Wales. These two points represent the extreme east and west.

10. Saint Michael's Mount, a granite rock in Mount's Bay, in Cornwall, opposite Marazion.

11. Beachy Head, farther east along the coast, in Sussex, — the highest promontory on the south coast of England.

12. Tamar, the river which flows into the sea near Plymouth, and forms at its mouth the harbor of the Hamoaze.

13. Mendip, the Mendip Hills, a mineral range in Somersetshire.

14. Longleat, in Wiltshire, the seat of the Marquis of Bath.

15. Cranbourne, an old town in Dorsetshire.

16. Stonehenge, the remains of the ancient Druidical temple in the middle of Salisbury Plain, about three miles from Amesbury.

17. Beaulieu (pronounced *Bolu*), a parish at the mouth of the river Exe, six miles from Lymington. It was an ancient place of refuge.

18. Clifton down, a well-known watering place about a mile from Bristol, on the opposite side of the Avon.

19. Whitehall, an ancient palace in Westminster. Only a part of it is still standing. The *name* is now, however, given to the seat of the Education Department for Great Britain.

20. Richmond Hill, a beautiful hill overlooking the valley of the Thames, in Surrey, about ten miles from London.

21. Blackheath, now a suburb of London, near Woolwich, in Kent.

22. Hampstead, a heath to the north of London, in Middlesex.

23. Peak, the *High Peak* of Derbyshire.

24. Darwin, a district in Derbyshire.

25. Malvern Hills, a range in the counties of Worcester and Hereford.

26. Wrekin, a solitary conical mountain in Shropshire.

27. Ely's stately fane, the cathedral of Ely, about sixteen miles from Cambridge. (Ely is the only city in England which is unrepresented in the House of Commons.)

28. Belvoir Castle (pronounced *Beever*), the seat of the Dukes of Rutland.

29. Skiddaw, one of the highest mountains in England, in Cumberland, about four miles from Keswick.

30. Gaunt's pile. Lancaster Castle, from which John of Gaunt took the title of Duke of Lancaster.

31. Carlisle, the county town of Cumberland. It here represents the extreme N.W. point of England. — All the places mentioned are *representative*, and mark prominent points in England.

CAUTIONS AND DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 2. — Line 1: Avoid the verse accent on *was*, and read the first six words rapidly in one group, and the last five as a second group. Line 4: Do not accent *on*. Line 5: Avoid the verse accent on *she*, and make a slight pause after *sunrise*.

VERSE 3. — Line 2: Read *upon-the-roof* as one word. Line 4. A slight pause after *And ;* and read *with-loose-rein* as one word. Line 8: Avoid the verse accent upon *to*.

VERSE 4. — Line 2: Do not accent *upon*. Line 3: Avoid the verse accent on *how ;* make a pause after *Look*, and hasten on to *ancient crown*. Line 5: Pause slightly after *So*. Line 11: Do not accent *on*. Line 12: Read *of-our-pride* as one word.

VERSE 5. — Line 3: Pause slightly after *and*. Line 4: Pause after *Such night*. Line 6: Do not emphasize *was ;* pause after *slumber*. Line 7: Pause after *For*, *east*, and *west*.

VERSE 6. — Line 1: Pause after *Far*. Line 8: Pause after *And*, and after *day*.

VERSE 7. — Line 1: Pause after *Then*. Line 2: Pause after *And ;* avoid the verse accent on *with* and *with ;* the emphatic word is *one*. Line 5: Do not accent *of*. Line 7: Pause slightly after *And*.

VERSE 8. — Line 5: Read *Till-the-proud-Peak* as one word. Line 6: Pause after *Till* and *volcanoes*. Line 9: Pause after *Till* and *fierce*.

EXERCISES. — 1. Parse the first four lines.

2. Analyze the first four lines.

3. Paraphrase the third and fourth verses.

GREAT CITIES.

BERLIN.

Acad'emy, a place for education. The *Akademeia* was the garden near Athens where Plato taught.

Ambas'sadors, see page 200.

Discus'sion, talk for, against, or about any object. From Lat. *dis*, apart, and *quatio* (*quassum*), I shake. Cognates, *discuss*, *concussion*.

En'terprise, see page 200.

Eques'trian, on horseback. From Lat. *equestris*, relating to horses; from *equus*, a horse. Cognate, *equine*.

Gymna'sia, in Athens, schools for wrestling; in Germany, classical schools for the teaching of Latin and Greek. From Gr. *gymnos*, naked; as the Greek wrestlers, who fought stripped.

Middle Ages, a term variously applied to a period between the fifth and the sixteenth centuries. In France it is generally placed between Clovis and Louis XI., from 481 to 1461. In England, from 409 to Henry VII., in 1485. In general European history, from the overthrow of the Roman Empire in the fifth, down to the Revival of Learning in the fifteenth century.

Ram'part, a defensive work, as a wall or embankment (Lat. *re*, again, and *parare*, to get ready.

Thier'garten (*teer-*), a zoölogical garden,—an enclosure in which animals of different countries are kept in confined spaces allotted to them.

Unter (a German word, pronounced *oonter*), under; among.

1. Berlin, the capital of the German Empire, stands upon a little muddy stream called the Spree, which flows into the Havel, a tributary of the noble Elbe. It is situated in the middle of a flat sandy plain, dry, dusty, and dreary, and so level that drainage is hardly possible for the city. It was for a long time in the Middle Ages a mere fishing village on some islands in the Spree. In 1688, the year of the English Revolution, it was a small town of only 18,000 inhabitants; at the death of Frederick the Great, in 1786, the population had increased to 145,000; in 1858 its population numbered nearly half a million;

while now, in the year 1880, it has risen to more than a million. 2. The climate of Berlin is a climate of extremes, — very hot in summer, chiefly from the heat reflected from the hard, dry soil, and extremely cold in winter, because no range of mountains shelters the city from the cold northeast blasts which sweep in an almost unbroken current from the Arctic Ocean down upon its streets. But, in spite of both the soil and the climate, the enterprise and perseverance of its people have made it one of the finest and largest cities of the Continent. As the centre, moreover, of a vast network of railways, which stretch in every direction throughout the continent, Berlin has grown rapidly in wealth and in population. It contains more than five hundred streets, forty squares, and about thirty bridges. 3. The widest and finest street is called *Unter den Linden* (a name which means *Under the Limes*). This street is as broad as five ordinary streets placed side by side. It is adorned by four rows of trees, — limes, chestnuts, aspens, acacias, and plantains, — and between these rows of trees run four roads, two for carriages and two for horsemen, while the middle is occupied by a broad, shady walk for foot-passengers. On both sides of this magnificent street stand large buildings of every kind, — palaces, a university, an opera-house, an academy of arts, and the residences of the ambassadors of powerful foreign states. Splendid hotels and large shops add to the gay appearance of the street. 4. Besides the university, there are in the city institutions of all kinds, such as an academy of science and the fine arts, an academy of the mechanical sciences and of architecture, military schools, large gymnasia, numerous elementary schools, and twenty-seven public libraries open to any and to all readers. All kinds of activity

fill the town, — manufactures, fine arts, political discussion; and there is perpetual movement both of mind and of energies. Besides the active, busy, stirring population of the city, there is a silent, fixed population of statues of military heroes. The finest of these is the equestrian statue of Frederick the Great. For Prussia is essentially a military state. It was founded in war, and it has grown by war. And yet, though at every corner Berlin reminds the observer of war and of military glory, the town has neither rampart nor fortress; it is surrounded by an ordinary stone wall, for the simple purpose of collecting local taxes on all country produce that is carried into the town. 5. Near the heart of the town is the large and attractive park called the Thiergarten. Its walks are much frequented in the summer evenings by the citizens, who come with their wives and families to saunter, or to sit in the open air over a cup of coffee, or an ice, or a glass of cool German beer. Near the town is also a splendid botanical garden, which contains more than twenty thousand different kinds of trees. 6. The university is one of the most modern of the great German universities. It was founded in 1810, and now numbers more than three thousand students. Of these, most are students of law. Berlin is, in fact, the intellectual capital of Germany. The Royal Library contains more than half a million volumes. Berlin has long been famous for artistic iron castings; it also manufactures a beautiful variety of porcelain. Standing almost in the heart of the continent of Europe, it is evidently destined to grow larger and larger, — to grow not only with the growth of Germany, but with the growth of its powerful and wealthy neighbors.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 1 to 4, inclusive.

2. Write a short paper on "Berlin" from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) A climate of extremes. (2) The northeast blasts sweep in almost unbroken *current*. (3) Large *gymnasia*. (4) All kinds of *activity* fill the town. (5) *Discussion*. (6) An equestrian statue. (7) *Local* taxes. (8) *Intellectual* capital. (9) *Porcelain*. (10) The mechanical sciences.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: "In spite of both the soil and the climate, the enterprise and perseverance of its people have made it one of the finest and largest cities of the Continent."

5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "How happy is he born or taught,
> That serveth not another's will;
> Whose armor is his honest thought,
> And simple truth his utmost skill!"

6. Give as many words as you know derived from, or cognate with, the following English words: *look*, *great*, *name*, *dry*,[1] *stand*,[2] *flow*,[3] *hard*, *grow*, *shield*,[4] *rise*, *nigh*.[5]

7. Give as many derivatives as you know from the following Latin words: *caput*, the head (root *cap*, stem *capit*); *dirigo*, I guide (root *dirig*, stem *direct*); *terra*, the earth; *fluo*, I flow (root *flu*, stem *flux*), compound with *con*, *de*, *in*, and *sub*; *tribuo*, I pay or give (root *tribu*, stem *tribut*); *populus*, the people (*populicus* is contracted into *publicus*).

8. With each of the following words and phrases write a sentence illustrating its meaning: *tier* and *tear*; *their* and *there*; *told* and *tolled*; *to be disappointed*; *to have one's hopes dashed*; *to miss his aim*.

[1] *Drought* (compare *sly* and *slight*).
[2] *Stead*, *instead*, etc.
[3] *Flood*, etc.
[4] *Shelter*, etc.
[5] *Neighbor*, *near*, etc

A VOYAGE ROUND THE WORLD.

Part I.

Appall′, to terrify.

Appli′ance, something applied or added; here, *means*. From the Lat. *applicare*, to fold to, through the Fr. *appliquer*.

Bight, a form of the word *bay*; the old guttural appearing in the one case as a *y*, in the other as a *gh*.

Cen′tury, a period of a hundred years, from Lat. *centum*, a hundred. (Compare *per cent.*)

Col′onize, to settle; from the Lat. *colonia*, a settlement. (This word is also found in *Cologne*, the Roman colony on the Rhine; and in *Lincoln*, the Roman colony on the *river* or *pool*.)

Compressed′, pressed together.

Devel′op, to bring out or unfold. (The opposite of this word is *envelop*.)

Em′blem, a sign, token, or symbol.

Excur′sion, a running out or "outing"; from the Lat. *ex*, out, and *curro*, I run.

Ex′iled, driven out of, or banished; from Lat. *exul*, a person out of his own country.

Expanse′, wide stretch; from Lat. *expando*, I stretch out.

Explore′, to search; from the Lat. *explorare*, to search.

Fam′ine, a state of the greatest scarcity; from the Lat. *fames*, hunger.

Fiord′, a Norse form of the word *firth*, a long arm of the sea.

Gla′cier, a large slow-moving river of ice; from Lat. *glacies*, ice.

Hesper′ides, the name of the famous sisters who guarded the golden apples which Hera (Juno) received from Gē (the Earth) on her marriage with Zeus (Jupiter). The garden which contained the trees lay north of the Caucasus.

Hur′ricane, a sudden and violent storm of wind; from the Spanish *huracan*, a word brought originally from the natives of the Antilles.

Imagina′tion, fancy; literally, the power of making images (Lat. *imagines*) in the mind.

Launch, to let go into the sea; properly, *to throw*. From Lat. *lancea*, lance; through the Fr. *lancer*, to throw.

Lia′nas, binding or climbing vines making a network among the tallest trees.

Pacif′ic, peaceful or peacemaking; from Lat. *pax* (= *pacis*), peace, and *facio*, I make.

Par′allel, always at exactly the same distance from

Plague, an epidemic or prevalent disease; from the Lat. *plaga*, a stroke.

Polyne'sia, from Gr. *polus*, many, and *nesos*, an island.

Prime'val, original, or existing at the earliest times; from Lat. *primus*, first, and *ævum*, an age.

Sub-trop'ical, under or next to the tropical.

Twi'light, from the English *two* and *light*. (The word *two* appears in different forms in *twi*, *twai*, *twain*, and *twen* — in *twenty*.)

Vegeta'tion, growth of plants; from Lat. *vegetare*, to grow, to be lively.

Ver'tical, right overhead; from Lat. *vertex*, the top.

Wrest'ed, taken by force. (A form of the noun *wrist*; the continuative verb is *wrestle*.)

1. Let us make a voyage in imagination round the world. An actual voyage round the world is a very easy thing nowadays. But three centuries ago it was not an easy thing. Three centuries ago it was full of dangers, known and unknown, — dangers from hurricanes, from ignorance of coast lines, from plague and famine, and from cruel and savage races of men. Magellan, a Portuguese sailor, born in Oporto in 1470, was the first man to sail round the world; and the task took him three years. 2. He set sail on the 20th of September, 1519, kept his course to the west, discovered and sailed through the strait that now bears his name, and his fleet reached home only on the 6th of September, 1522. He had only five small vessels, — so small that no one would nowadays think of risking his life in them for a long voyage. His largest vessel was a miserable little ship of 130 tons, and his smallest amounted to only 60. About half a century later, the great Englishman, Sir Francis Drake, also sailed round the world; and his fleet also numbered only five vessels, of from 15 to 100 tons. The vessels that cross the Atlantic today are from 3,000 to 4,000 tons burden. 3. Magellan, as has been said, took three years to sail round the world (he himself never reached home, as he fell in a fight with the natives of the Philippine Islands, the second year of the voyage); Sir Francis Drake also

took three years; and the last voyage of Captain Cook (who was killed at the Sandwich Islands in 1779) occupied four full years. Now, the voyage is a mere holiday excursion; it can be made, by the aid of steam, with ease and comfort, and with every appliance of interest and amusement. It may almost be made in as many months as Magellan took years.

4. But *we* have neither time enough nor money enough to go round the world. We can, however, do so in imagination; we can do so by the help of books of travel, and we can see with the eyes and hear with the ears of famous sailors and of daring travellers who have been exploring the different seas, continents, islands, and countries of this planet for many hundred years. 5. The sea encircles the land of the world; and the land lies in it like a number of islands. The sea has neither beginning nor end; and, as the old adventurous sailors launched their ships upon it, trusting in God and in their own stout hearts, so let us launch our thoughts on the boundless ocean, and survey the different countries that we cross in our imaginary voyage. Let us suppose ourselves at the North Pole, and let us start from there.

"Emblem of Eternity,
Unbeginning, endless sea!
Let me launch my soul on thee.
Sail, nor keel, nor helm, nor oar,
Need I, ask I, to explore
Thine expanse from shore to shore.

"Eager fancy, unconfined,
In a voyage of the mind,
Sweeps along thee like the wind.
Where the billows cease to roll,
Round the silence of the pole,
Thence set out my venturous soul!"

6. And first we come to Greenland,— a land of frost and snow, of rugged and barren mountains, of a coast line broken by innumerable bays, inlets, creeks, bights, and fiords, without trees, almost without vegetation, and with only a few Danes and Esquimaux scattered about

SCENE IN GREENLAND.

on its outer fringe. The interior is one vast glacier, parts of which creep slowly down to the coast, and then break off on the edges of the cliffs and fall into the sea with a mighty splash and a noise like thunder. 7. If we bid good by to the southernmost point of Greenland, which was called by some sailor, who was glad to see the last of it, Cape Farewell, and hold a southwest

course, we shall come to Labrador. This, too, is a very cold country. The interior is a wilderness of pine forests; and the coast is bleak and barren, and blocked up with ice for nine months in the year. There are fisheries, and there is a great deal of seal-hunting. 8. Large herds of seal are found on the sheets of floating field-ice, called "seal meadows." The animals are surprised while sleeping and knocked on the head with bludgeons. Labrador is in the same latitude as England; yet it has a winter of nine months, the other seasons being compressed into three. This difference in climate is due to the fact that the coasts of Labrador are washed by a cold current, full of icebergs, from Baffin's Bay, while the shores of England are bathed by the warm waters of the great Gulf Stream from the sub-tropical climate of the Gulf of Mexico.

"See o'er Greenland, cold and wild,
Rocks of ice eternal piled;
Yet the mother loves her child.
Next, on lonely Labrador,
Let me hear the snow-storm roar,
Blinding, burying all before."

9. Coming farther south, we light upon the Dominion of Canada, — the name for the chief part of British North America. It is a splendid country, still containing vast primeval forests, with land as fertile as any on the globe, and with a dry and healthy climate. It abounds in mighty lakes and clear rivers, whose waters teem with salmon and other kinds of fish. The five great lakes which discharge their waters into the St. Lawrence form the largest body of fresh water in the world. 10. Striking southeast, we come to New England, — which received its name from the English Puritans who left their country in the seventeenth

century in order to have full possession of their religious liberty. It consists of six States, which are among the most industrious and prosperous of the United States of America.

"But a brighter vision breaks
O'er Canadian woods and lakes;
These my spirit soon forsakes.
Land of exiled Liberty,
Where our fathers once were free,
Brave New England, hail to thee!"

11 Winging our imaginary way still farther to the south, we pass the prosperous State of Pennsylvania. This State was not wrested from the American Indians by force, but was peacefully purchased from them by William Penn, a Quaker, who founded and settled the State. Penn wanted to call the country, which is now nearly as large as England, *Sylvania*, because it was so well wooded; but Charles II., when granting him a charter to hold the land, jocularly insisted on adding the word *Penn* to it, and the name remains *Pennsylvania* to this day. 12. Still farther and farther south, when the rich clusters of the West Indian Islands break upon our view! Here is eternal summer; here the day is flooded with sunlight, and the deep black nights, which come without any twilight, are brilliant with stars; here are the most delicious fruits in the world; here are landscapes with high and ragged mountains, rapid rivers, graceful cocoa-nut trees, breadths of sugar-cane and maize; and here are all kinds of spice plants growing in profusion.

"Pennsylvania!—while thy flood
Waters fields unbought with blood,
Stand for peace, as thou hast stood
The West Indies I behold,
Like the Hesperides of old,—
Trees of life with fruits of gold;"

13. On to South America, with the largest forests and the largest river in the world! The northeast trade-winds, laden with moisture from the North Atlantic, strike at a right angle on the north coast of this continent, carry their burden of moisture across hill and valley, dropping showers as they go, till at last they give up every particle of rain to the cold, snow-covered sides of the Andes, and cross that range as a perfectly dry wind. The southeast trades blow upon the southern

coast of South America, also at a right angle, carry even more moisture than the northeast trade-winds, and also penetrate to and cross the Andes, having left behind them all the moisture they bore away from the broad Atlantic. It is the northeast trades that make the northern tributaries of the Amazon, and the southeast trades that make the southern tributaries. 14. More rain falls here than in any other part of the world, and hence we have the largest river, which flows, almost parallel with the equator, exactly midway between the

two sets of rain-bearing winds. With the largest amount of rain in the world, and with the tropical and vertical heat of the sun, we have, as a necessary result, the most

extensive forests and the most luxuriant vegetation in the world. These forests, called the Selvas, cover millions of square miles of country. 15. The highest and thickest trees, tied together with countless long ropes of lianas and tree-creepers, with a ground-growth of

underwood in the upper branches that only fire could penetrate, contain a population of an infinite number of brilliantly colored birds, of monkeys, apes, and other animals, while the middle air is filled with butterflies, bats, and winged creatures of all kinds. There is everything here that the world of nature can show to appall, to astonish, and to strike with admiration. So great is the power of vegetation that in a few months a stone house would be covered with a luxuriant overgrowth, or torn to pieces by the aid of the numberless plants that would find a lodging-place everywhere in its chinks. 16. The whole continent demands a nobler people; and it may be that the Anglo-Saxon race will yet colonize this, as they have already colonized the sister continent of North America.

"South America expands
Mountain forests, river lands,
And a nobler race demands;
And a nobler race arise,
Stretch their limbs, unclose their eyes,
Claim the earth, and seek the skies."

17. Steering still south in our voyage of thought, imagination, and memory, we pass the Falkland Islands on the left and come to the Straits of Magellan. The great sailor from whom the straits are named took a month to go through them; and then he reached a mighty ocean of unknown extent, sailed north and west till he came to the Ladrones (or *Thieves' Islands*, "a haunt of wiles," because the inhabitants stole from the Spanish and Portuguese sailors whenever they had an opportunity). Thence he held on his way to the Philippines, "a haunt of violence," where he lost his life in a skirmish with the natives on the 26th of April, 1521. Magellan had very fine weather and regular breezes

when crossing the Pacific, so he named the ocean the *Peaceful Ocean*, or the *Pacific*. 18. The islands of the Pacific are almost innumerable. One region filled with these islands is called *Polynesia*, or the *Many-Islanded*. There, besides, is the largest island — or the smallest continent — in the world, where a Southern England is arising to aid the mother country in developing her industry and her resources.

"Gliding through Magellan's straits,
Where two oceans ope their gates,
What a glorious scene awaits!
The immense Pacific smiles
Round ten thousand little isles, —
Haunts of violence and wiles."

19. New South Wales is the oldest of the Australasian colonies; the others are branches from this parent tree. The discovery of gold in 1851 raised the territory of Victoria to the first rank in wealth and population. Melbourne quickly grew to be the largest and richest town in the whole of Australasia, and it has remained so ever since. Sydney is the next largest town.

20. Let us keep away from the deserts of Siberia and the long promontories of Kamtschatka, and turn to the south, — to the lands of the sun.

"North and west, receding far
From the evening's downward star,
Now I mount Aurora's car,
Pale Siberia's deserts shun,
From Kamtschatka's storm-cliffs run,
South, and east, to meet the sun."

But a glance at Siberia need not be forbidden. There the long rivers Obi, Lena, and Yenisei flow, through lands but thinly inhabited, into a frozen and shipless ocean. 21. These lands, however, are being opened up to the mer-

chant and the trader. The sources of these rivers are in warm climates, their mouths are within the arctic circle; and hence, while the upper parts are still flowing, the lower parts and the mouths are frozen. Thus the waters of these rivers cannot reach the sea, but overflow thousands upon thousands of square miles of land, and turn them into the largest and dreariest marsh in the whole world. This marsh, which stretches also into Europe, is called the *Tundras*.

22. Now we are in sight of the islands of Japan. The word *Japan* means "land of the rising sun," so named by the Chinese, from whose country it lies to the east. This empire has lately had an awakening. The power of the great feudal princes (or Daimios) has been broken; and all authority is now centred in the Mikado. Railways were introduced in 1870; English is taught in the schools; the mechanical sciences are taught in government colleges; and an army and navy have been formed after the English and French models. 23. Tokio is the capital, — a veritable human ant-hill, not much inferior to London in population. There is one street ten miles long; and some of the houses of the nobility are said to be large enough to hold more than 10,000 persons. The town lines the margin of the bay or inlet of Tokio for a distance of ten miles, and extends seven miles inland. Earthquakes are frequent, and hence the houses are of only one story; they are built of wood, and thus fires are not uncommon. 24. To the west and south China lies, — the land of oddities and contrarieties. Everything seems to be the exact opposite of what we have in this country. In China the old men fly kites, and the boys look on; people whiten their shoes with chalk, instead of blacking them; white is the color worn in mourn-

ing; a Chinaman mounts his horse from the right, instead of the left side; the place of honor is the left; when he enters a room, he takes off, not his hat, but his shoes; and when he meets a friend he shakes hands with himself, and works his own hands up and

A VIEW IN CHINA.

down like a pump. Men carry fans, and women smoke; men wear their hair as long as it will grow, women very carefully put theirs up. 25. The spoken language of China is never written, and the written language is never spoken. A Chinese begins to read a book from the end; and he does not read across the page, but up and down. The wealthy classes have a

soup made of birds' nests. Wheelbarrows have sails; the ships have no keels; the roses have no perfume; and the workmen no Sunday. It is the most populous empire in the world, there being between four and five hundred millions of people in it. The Emperor's palace is called the Tranquil Palace of Heaven. The streets of the capital, Pekin (which means *North Court*), have the oddest names, — "Bad Smell Street," "Dog's Tail Street," and so on. Nearly half a million of people in Canton live on the river in boats.

THE SKYLARK.

(*Verse printed as prose.*)

Bird of the wilderness, blithesome and cumberless, sweet be thy matin o'er moorland and lea! Emblem of happiness, blest is thy dwelling-place: O to abide in the desert with thee! Wild is thy lay and loud, far in the downy cloud; love gives it energy, love gave it birth. Where on thy dewy wing, where art thou journeying? Thy lay is in heaven, thy love is on earth. O'er fell and fountain sheen, o'er moor and mountain green, o'er the red streamer that heralds the day, over the cloudlet dim, over the rainbow's rim, musical cherub, soar, singing away! Then, when the gloaming comes, low in the heather blooms, sweet will thy welcome and bed of love be! Emblem of happiness, blest is thy dwelling-place! O to abide in the desert with thee!

James Hogg.

THE CASTLE BY THE SEA.

(*Verse printed as Prose.*)

Chime, bells ringing in tune.
Rap'ture, pride, excessive joy.
Resplen'dent, shining brightly.
Weeds, garments.

This is the story of a king's castle seen by two different persons at different times, the one by day, at a time when the castle was full of gladness and splendor, the other by night, when the king had lost his only daughter, and the castle was full of sorrow and gloom. (The verses numbered 1, 3, and 5 should be read by one reader; and 2, 4, and 6 by another, in reply.)

1. "Hast thou seen that lordly castle, that castle by the sea? Golden and red above it the clouds float gorgeously." 2. "Well have I seen that castle, that castle by the sea; and the moon above it standing, and the mist rise solemnly." 3. "The winds and the waves of ocean, had they a merry chime? Didst thou hear from those lofty chambers the harp and the minstrel's rhyme?" 4. "The winds and the waves of ocean, they rested quietly; but I heard on the gale a sound of wail, and tears came to mine eye." 5. "And sawest thou on the turrets the king and his royal bride? and the wave of their crimson mantles? and the golden crown of pride? Led they not forth in rapture a beauteous maiden there, — resplendent as the morning sun, beaming with golden hair?" 6. "Well saw I the ancient parents, without the crown of pride; they were moving slow, in weeds of woe; *no* maiden was by their side!"

Uhland (translated by Longfellow).

Directions. — Verse 1. Do not accent *by*; *by-the-sea* as one word. Verse 3. Do not accent *they*.

THE FORESTS OF THE AMAZON.

Al'ligator (called by the Spaniards *el lagarto*) the great lizard; hence the name.

Den'izen, inhabitant.

Intense', very great. From Lat. *intendo* (*intens'um*), I stretch. (The metaphor is taken from the stretching of a bow.)

Intersect′, cut their way through. From Lat. *inter*, between, and *seco* (*sect-um*), I cut. Cognates, *sect*, *section*; *insect*.

Myr′iads, very large numbers. From Gr. *myrias* (*-ades*), a ten thousand.

Prehen′sile, adapted for seizing or grasping. From Lat. *prehendo*, to seize. Cognates, *apprehend*, *comprehend*.

Prime′val, see page 234.

Recess′es, spots far withdrawn. From Lat. *recedo* (*recessum*), I go back. Cognates, *recede*; *secede*, *secession*.

Trop′ical, belonging to the tropics. From Gr. *trĕpō*, I turn; *tropos*, a turning. At the Tropic of Cancer the sun is said to "turn back" on the 22d of June, and to go towards the south; and at the Tropic of Capricorn he is said to "turn back" on the 22d of December, and to come to the north.

Vora′cious, very greedy. From Lat. *vŏro*, I devour; *vorax* (*-acis*), greedy. Cognate, *devour*.

1. The largest forests in the world are those which are found in the valley of the Amazon River, in South America. This gigantic stream, with its tributaries, drains country equal in extent to about twelve times the size of France. All this vast tract of flat and fertile land is heated by the burning rays of a tropical sun, and is covered with the most luxuriant vegetation, through which the great river and its numerous tributaries slowly wind their way to the Atlantic Ocean.

2. The forests of the Amazon are composed of a great number of different kinds of large trees, many of which — unlike our common woodland trees — are covered with brilliantly colored flowers. Here and there slender and graceful palms raise their feathery heads into the air, showing us that we are within the tropics. Beneath the shade of the great trees grow huge reeds and grasses of all kinds, mixed with myriads of tree-ferns, and bushes of different sorts. Thousands of climbing plants and cord-like creepers twine round the trunks of the trees, stretching from branch to branch, and matting the undergrowth together, till a thicket is formed through which no human being could make his way

except by the use of the axe. 3. In fact, the natives of these regions have no means of moving from place to place except by the numerous streams which intersect the plains. In the daytime, especially in the intense heat of the noontide, deep silence reigns within the forest, broken only by the faint humming of insects. The larger animals seek shelter in the recesses of the forest, and the birds hide themselves in clefts or under the thick foliage of the trees. At night, on the other hand, the forest is often a scene of the wildest uproar, and resounds with the howling and piping of monkeys, the shrieking of parrots, and the roaring of carnivorous animals.

4. The great forests of the Amazon are the home of innumerable animals, most of which are expert climbers, and spend the greater part of their time amongst the branches. The commonest creatures are the monkeys, of which there are many kinds. They live together in troops in the woods, and make more noise than all the other animals put together. The curious little spider-monkeys have very slender bodies, long thin arms and legs, and long prehensile tails, by means of which these agile creatures can grasp a branch just as we use our hands, and swing themselves from branch to branch, or hang head downwards, with the greatest ease. The little squirrel like marmosets have thick bushy tails, and can climb about only by means of their feet. The most curious of the monkeys, however, are the howlers, which raise terrific cries in the stillness of the night. 5. One of the most extraordinary animals of the South American forests is the sloth. This curious beast has long, rough gray hair, and a round, good-natured face, and spends its entire life amongst the trees, upon the leaves of which it feeds. It never comes down upon

the ground unless forced to do so by some overpowering necessity; and then it drags itself along slowly and painfully, for its feet are so bent that it can walk only with the greatest difficulty. Up amongst the trees, however, it is quite at home, climbing about, back downwards, suspended from the branches by means of its long, crooked claws. It even sleeps in this apparently unnatural position; the trees, moreover, are so close together that, in moving about, it can easily pass from one to the other without being compelled to descend to the ground.

SLOTH.

6. The gloom of the forests is enlivened by throngs of brightly colored parrots, which chatter and scream over the juicy fruits which form their food; while the toucans, with their monstrous bills, enjoy *their* meals in peace and quietness. Gorgeous butterflies flit through the air, and visit the countless flowers in search of their honeyed juices; they are with difficulty distinguished from the equally brilliant humming-birds which dart like lightning hither and thither.

7. Nor is the ground without its denizens. The little armadillos, clad in an armor of bony plates, burrow in the soil; while the great ant-eater, with its long bushy tail, pulls down the nests of the white ants by means of its sharp, crooked claws, and devours the defenceless insects by thousands. In the burning rays of the mid-day sun countless lizards bask on the heated banks,

while many-colored snakes crawl through the herbage, or lie concealed in the branches; in the night-time the huge jaguar, or American panther, roams at will through the tangled forest.

8. The waters swarm with fishes of strange forms and colors, and are haunted by multitudes of alligators. These terrible reptiles swim and dive actively, or they float at the surface of the pools, like so many long, brown logs of wood. Enjoying the hot sun, they lie for hours without moving; but it would fare badly with any animal or naked Indian who might try to swim across a river tenanted by these voracious monsters. In an instant the water would be alive with lashing tails and snapping jaws, and the swimmer would hardly escape with whole limbs, or even with life itself.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 2 to 6, inclusive.

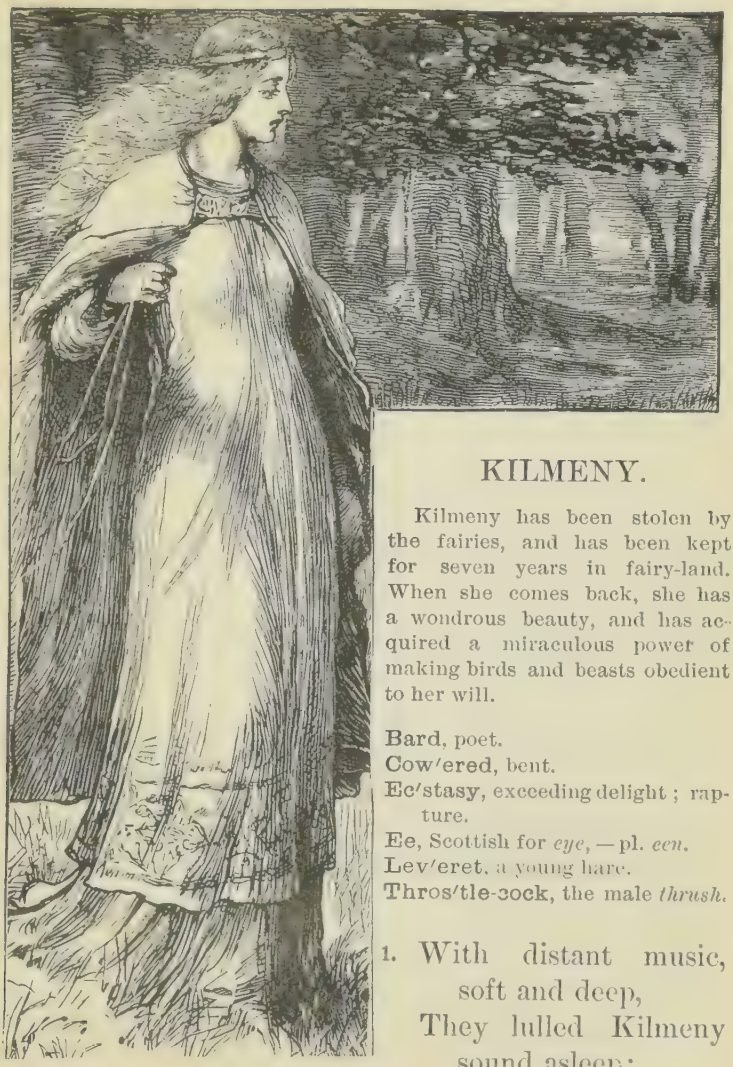
2. Write a short paper on "The Great Forests of South America," from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) *Luxuriant* vegetation. (2) *Matting* the undergrowth together. (3) The dense *primeval* forest. (4) The forest is a scene of the wildest *uproar*. (5) Nor is the ground without its *denizens*. (6) The waters are *haunted* by multitudes of alligators. (7) *Voracious*.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: "The commonest creatures are the monkeys, of which there are many kinds, living in troops in the woods."

5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "That time of year thou mayst in me behold,
> When yellow leaves, or none, or few, do hang
> Upon those boughs which shake against the cold,
> Bare, ruined choirs, where late the sweet birds sang."



KILMENY.

Kilmeny has been stolen by the fairies, and has been kept for seven years in fairy-land. When she comes back, she has a wondrous beauty, and has acquired a miraculous power of making birds and beasts obedient to her will.

Bard, poet.
Cow'ered, bent.
Ec'stasy, exceeding delight; rapture.
Ee, Scottish for *eye*, — pl. *een*.
Lev'eret, a young hare.
Thros'tle-cock, the male *thrush*.

1. With distant music, soft and deep,
They lulled Kilmeny sound asleep;
And when she awakened she lay alone,
All covered with flowers on a green-mossed stone.
When seven long years had come and fled,
When grief was calm and hope was dead,

When scarce was remembered Kilmeny's name,
Late, late in the twilight, Kilmeny home came

2. And oh! her beauty was fair to see,
But still and steadfast was her ee!
Such beauty bard may never declare,
For there was no pride nor passion there,
And the soft desire of maidens' een
In that mild face could never be seen.

3. Her neck was like the lily flower,
And her cheek the moss-rose in the shower
And her voice like the distant melodye
That floats along the twilight sea.
But she loved to walk the lonely glen,
And kept afar from the haunts of men,
Her holy hymns unheard to sing,
To suck the flowers, and drink the spring.

4. But wherever her peaceful form appeared,
The wild beasts of the hills were cheered;
The wolf played blithely round the field,
The lordly bison lowed and kneeled;
The dun deer wooed with manner bland,
And cowered beneath her lily hand.

5. And when at even the woodlands rung,
When hymns of other worlds she sung
In ecstasy of sweet devotion,
O then the glen was all in motion!
The wild beasts of the forest came,
Broke from their pens and folds the tame,
And stood around, charmed and amazed;
Even the dull cattle stood and gazed,
And murmured and looked with anxious pain
For something the mystery to explain.

6. The buzzard came with the throstle-cock,
The raven left her nest in the rock:

The blackbird along with the eagle flew;
The hind came tripping o'er the dew;
The wolf and the kid their walk began;
And the fox, and the lamb, and the leveret ran;
And all in a peaceful ring were hurled!
It was like an eve in a sinless world!

James Hogg.

THE SOCIAL ASPECTS OF TEMPERANCE.

Al'cohol, pure spirit. (In its ordinary form, it is, however, more or less impure.) From Arabic *al-kohl*, the powder of antimony, which was used to blacken the eyelashes. (*Al* is the Arabic for *the*, as in *alcoran*, *algebra*, *alchemy*, etc.)

Arrests', seizures by the police. From O. Fr. *arrester*; from Lat. *ad*, to, and *restare*, to stand still. Cognate: *Rest* (= the remainder).

Athlet'ic, relating to exercise. From Gr. *Athlētēs*, a prize-fighter. Cognate: *Athlete*.

Commu'nity, society founded on *common* interests and aims. From Lat. *communis*, common. Cognates: *Communion*; *communicate*; *commune*.

Incum'bent, resting on. From Lat. *in*, upon, and *cumbo* (*cubit-um*), I lie. Cognates: *Incumbency*; *cubit* (the part of the arm on which we lie).

Intense', very great. From Lat. *intendo* (*intens-um*), I stretch. Cognates: *Intensify*; *intenseness*.

Lu'natic, a person who has lost his ordinary judgment. From Lat. *luna*, the moon. (Such persons were believed to be effected by the various changes of the moon.) Cognates: *Lunar*; *lunacy*; *sublunary*.

Posi'tion, place or rank in society. From Lat. *pono* (*posit-um*), I place. Cognates: *Deponent*; *opponent*; *deposit*, *depôt* (through Fr.); *opposite*, *opposition*; *repose*.

Sphere, circle. From Gr. *sphaira*, a globe. Cognates: *Spherical*; *spheral*.

Stim'ulants, drugs which do not produce new strength, but force persons to expend reserved strength. From Lat. *stimulus*, a goad. Cognates: *Stimulus*; *stimulate*; *stimulation*.

Unproduc'tive, without the power of producing anything useful. From Eng. *un*, not, and Lat. *pro*, forth, and *duco*,

I lead. Cognates: *Produce, product, producer, production.*

Vest'ed, placed in some business in which it is likely to produce more. (The usual form is *invest.*) From Lat. *vestis*, a dress. Cognates: *Vest; vestry* (originally the room where the priest robed); *vestment; vesture.*

1. There can be no doubt that TEMPERANCE of every kind is a duty incumbent upon both young and old, in every relation and sphere of life. There ought to be temperance in eating and drinking, temperance in amusement and athletic games, temperance in sleep, work, and emotion. There ought also to be temperance in expression, for temperance tries to get at the truth in everything, and is as careful not to overstate the exact truth as it is not to understate it; because, if the cost of a piece of land be $500, it is as great a blunder to say the cost is $510 as to say the cost is only $490. Exactness of statement is the high intellectual virtue of perfect temperance. 2. It is the duty of all of us, not only to cultivate exactness of statement and perfect accuracy of thought, but also to keep our relations with other people perfectly simple, true, and kindly. No honest man wishes to blame or to be blamed; to be dependent on others, or to be compelled to provide for the wants of idle and thriftless persons whom he has not seen; he desires to be surrounded by a community devoted to cheerful labor, healthy habits, and kindly social relations. Work, health, and social gayety, — these are what go to make a happy society. 3. No man can be happy through and by himself; happiness is essentially a social quality. We are all born into a world of give and take; we find here a society which has been built up by the care and the labor of many generations of kindly and hard working men and women; and it is our duty to do nothing that may tend to tear down the framework

of this society. It takes a long time to build up; it is easy to destroy. What has taken years to raise may be pulled down in a single day.

4. Now, we find prevailing amongst us habits of intemperance which are unspeakably injurious, tending to make social life, not only difficult, but in many cases impossible. These habits often settle into a kind of madness, which nothing can cure, and which can end only in death. But even in cases which have not such a disastrous termination, they produce intense misery or discomfort to the poor victim himself, and to all connected with him. Loss of health, loss of time, loss of happiness, loss of fortune and position, loss of life itself, may all be traced directly to these habits. 5. It is very important, then, for young persons, that they should early become acquainted with the true relation of such habits to the society in which they live, that they should understand how dangerous these habits are, and that they should make up their minds to discourage them both in themselves and in others. They must learn as early as they can to look at the social effects of alcohol, and its cost both to individuals and to the nation.

6. It is calculated that nearly $750,000,000 are spent upon beer, wine, and spirits every year in the United Kingdom. If this sum produced food or manufactures to the same or to a greater amount, there would be no remark to make. But unfortunately it is the means of producing crime and its consequent misery. This crime, again, is itself unproductive; or, rather, it is negatively productive. It produces prisons, workhouses, and asylums, — warders, policemen, and other persons, whose time is taken up with looking after people who will not work in an honest and steady manner.

7. It is always well to come to special facts and fig-

ures. Although the United Kingdom spends $750,000,000 a year on alcoholic drinks, and although it has probably about $2,500,000,000 invested in the trade, this business gives employment to the smallest number of hands of any trade in the kingdom in proportion to its vested capital. 8. The grain used in producing spirits in one great distillery in Scotland amounts to 800,000 bushels a year, but the work gives employment to only 150 men. These 800,000 bushels produce spirits to the amount of $7,500,000. But if these seven millions and a half of money were spent in building, or in agriculture, or in weaving, they would give employment to about 15,000 hands, instead of to a mere fraction of that number. 9. Again, though a gallon of ale contains a little nutriment, it costs from ten to twenty times as much as the same amount of nutriment in the form of bread. From the point of view of saving, moreover, — which is a most important one in a crowded country, — a glass of beer a day means $15 a year, and therefore three glasses daily means $45 yearly. But this $45 a year laid by would, with compound interest at six per cent., amount in twenty years to nearly $1,800, — a sum that would purchase a small house and garden.

10. Again, from the point of view of health and muscular vigor, we must never forget that the strongest people muscularly have generally been total abstainers from alcohol. The greatest feat in swimming that the world has ever seen was when Captain Webb swam across the English Channel; and he employed no stimulants. Weston, the well known American pedestrian, walked a thousand miles without tasting a drop of alcohol; and Adam Ayles, the Arctic explorer, has given his testimony that, in regions of excessive cold, whiskey

or any kind of spirits is not only hurtful, but also very dangerous. 11. So much for the individual. But we who are young must learn to think more of others than of ourselves, — must learn to think more of society than of our own individual persons. We are, in very deed, "our brothers' keepers"; and while we take care to stand upright ourselves, we must also help others to stand upright. During the course of each year hundreds of thousands of persons are arrested for drunkenness and for offences committed under its baneful influence. 12. But this is only what we *see*. What is *not seen* is much more, and much more terrible. Every one of these arrests undoubtedly means a large amount of misery inflicted upon a household of wife and children; it means bad food and poor clothing; it often means wife-beating, cruelty, and violence of the worst kind. We should certainly not be far wrong if we were to say that each of these arrests brings to the public eye only one-tenth part of the misery, the shame, the ruin, the agony, inflicted upon innocent and helpless persons.

13. The best physicians agree in stating that growing persons are better in health, stronger in muscle, clearer in head, and gayer in spirits, without the use of alcoholic liquors, than with them. In cases of great weakness, they may be useful, under medical advice. That is sufficient for ourselves. But if we consider that temperance and sobriety would close two-thirds of our prisons, would make useless two-thirds of our poorhouses, and would stop the supply to a large number of our lunatic asylums, then it becomes a manifest duty resting upon every one of us to promote careful and temperate habits in ourselves and in others. Let each of us govern *one*, and let each be the friendly adviser of another.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of the facts in the preceding lesson.

2. Write a short paper on "Temperance," from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) Temperance is a duty *incumbent* upon both young and old. (2) *Sphere* of life. (3) Exactness of statement is the high intellectual virtue of perfect temperance. (4) A *community* devoted to cheerful labor. (5) Happiness is *essentially* a *social* quality. (6) Accuracy of thought. (7) Loss of position. (8) Crime is *negatively productive*. (9) Muscular vigor. (10) *Pedestrian*. (11) We are "our brothers' keepers." (12) It becomes a *manifest* duty.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: "They must learn as early as they can to look at the social effects of alcohol, and at its cost both to individuals and to the nation."

5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "Alas! the joys that fortune brings
> Are trifling, and decay;
> And those who prize the trifling things,
> More trifling still than they."

6. Give as many words as you know derived from, or cognates with, the following English words: *find*, *no*, *day*,[1] *hard*, *mid*, *all*,[2] *ere*,[3] *will*, *like*, *one*,[4] *heal*,[5] *kin*,[6] *say*,[7] *gibe*, *ever*.

7. Give as many derivatives as you know from the following Latin words: *socius*, a companion; *exprimo*, I express (root *exprim*, stem *express*), compound *press* with *con*, *de*, *re*, and *sub*; *existo*, I exist; *cedo*, I go or yield (root *cede*, stem *cess*), compound with *con*, *de*, *ex*, *pro*, *pre*, and *sub*; *stimulus*, a spur.

8. With each of the following words and phrases make a sentence illustrating its proper use: *ób'ject* and *object'*; *rébel* and *rebél'*; *récord* and *recórd'*; *the duty is incumbent upon*; *go to make*; *to provide for wants*; *to promote careful habits*.

[1] *Dawn*, etc. [2] *Alone*, *almost*, *altogether*, etc. [3] *Erst*, *early*, etc.
[4] *Only*, *atone*, *alone*, etc. [5] *Whole*, *hail*, *health*.
[6] *Kind*, *kina*, etc. [7] *Saw*, etc.

THE POWER OF SHORT WORDS.

I.

Think not that strength lies in the big, round word,
Or that the brief and plain must needs be weak.
To whom can this be true who once has heard
The cry for help, the tongue that all men speak
When want or woe or fear is in the throat,
So that each word gasped out is like a shriek
Pressed from the sore heart, or a strange, wild note
Sung by some fay or fiend? There is a strength
Which dies if stretched too far, or spun too fine,
Which has more height than breadth, more depth than length.
Let but this force of thought and speech be mine,
And he that will may take the sleek fat phrase
Which glows and burns not, though it gleam and shine,—
Light, but not heat,—a flash, but not a blaze!

II.

Not mere strength is it that the short word boasts:
It serves of more than fight or storm to tell,—
The roar of waves that clash on rock-bound coasts,
The crash of tall trees when the wild winds swell,
The roar of guns, the groans of men that die
On blood-stained fields. It has a voice as well
For them that far off on their sick-beds lie,
For them that weep, for them that mourn the dead,—
For them that laugh, and dance, and clap the hand.
To Joy's quick step as well as Grief's slow tread,
The sweet, plain words we learn at first keep time;
And though the theme be sad, or gay, or grand,
With each, with all, these may be made to chime,
In thought or speech or song, in prose or rhyme.

Rev. J. A. Alexander (1809-1860).

ROSLIN CHAPEL.

ROSABELLE.

But'tress, see page 130.
Copse'-wood, or coppice, a grove of small trees.
Deign, be kind enough.
Dirge, funeral chant.
Feat, deed; from the French *fait* (which itself comes from the Lat. *fact-um*, a deed).
Inch, an island; *inch* is used for *island* in several instances in the mouth of the Forth.
Mail, armor.
Pale, an enclosed space.
Pan'oply, complete suit of armor.
Pin'net, a small spire.
Ra'vensheuch, Ravenscrag.
Sac'risty, vestry; a room in a church where the *sacred* garments and vessels are kept.
Sea'mew, the gull.
Wa'ter-Sprite, a fabulous spirit of evil.

1. O listen, listen, ladies gay!
No haughty feat of arms I tell;
Soft is the note, and sad the lay,
That mourns the lovely Rosabelle.

2. "Moor, moor the barge, ye gallant crew,
And, gentle lady, deign to stay!
Rest thee in Castle Ravensheuch,
Nor tempt the stormy firth[1] to-day.

3. "The blackening wave is edged with white;
To inch and rock the sea-mews fly;
The fishers have heard the Water-Sprite,
Whose screams forebode that wreck is nigh.

4. "Last night the gifted Seer[2] did view
A wet shroud swathed round lady gay;
Then stay thee, fair, in Ravensheuch:
Why cross the gloomy firth to-day?"

5. "'T is not because Lord Lindesay's heir
To-night at Roslin[3] leads the ball;
But that my lady mother there
Sits lonely in her castle hall.

6. "'T is not because the ring[4] they ride,
And Lindesay at the ring rides well;
But that my sire the wine will chide,
If 't is not filled by Rosabelle."

7. O'er Roslin all that weary night
A wondrous blaze was seen to gleam;[5]
'T was broader than the watch-fire's light,
And redder than the bright moonbeam.

8. It glared on Roslin's castled rock,
It ruddied all the copse-wood glen;
'T was seen from Dryden's groves of oak,
And seen from caverned Hawthornden.[6]

9. Seemed all on fire that chapel proud,
Where Roslin's chiefs uncoffined lie,
Each baron, for a sable shroud,
Sheathed in his iron panoply.[7]

10. Seemed all on fire within, around,
Deep sacristy and altar's pale;
Shone every pillar, foliage-bound,[8]
And glimmered all the dead men's mail.

11. Blazed battlement and pinnet high,
Blazed every rose-carved buttress fair:
So still they blaze, when fate is nigh
The lordly line of high Saint Clair.

12. There are twenty of Roslin's barons bold
Lie buried within that proud chapelle;
Each one the holy vault doth hold,—
But the sea holds lovely Rosabelle!

13. And each Saint Clair was buried there
With candle, with book, and with knell;[9]
But the sea-caves rung, and the wild winds sung,
The dirge of lovely Rosabelle.

Sir W. Scott.

NOTES.

1. The Firth of Forth.

2. In Scotland certain persons were supposed to be gifted with the power of seeing what was about to happen, just as it would be; this power was called *second-sight*, and in this instance the Seer had had a vision of a noble lady wrapped in a wet shroud, or, in other words, drowned.

3. An old castle a few miles south of Edinburgh.

4. A ring was hung so loosely from a bar resting on two upright posts that it could be easily broken away. The players

rode at full speed through the archway thus made, and, as they went under, aimed at passing their lance-points through the ring in order to carry it off.

5. There was an old legend, that, when any evil or death was about to befall one of the Saint Clairs of Roslin, the chapel always appeared on fire the night before.

6. A lovely glen near Roslin. *Dryden* is the name of a property near Edinburgh.

7. The lords of Roslin were buried in their coats of mail.

8. The pillars in the chapel at Roslin are exquisitely carved with leaves and flowers.

9. The old funeral service of torch or candles, sad singing, and tolling bells.

EXERCISES. — 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) Haughty feat of arms. (2) Nor tempt the stormy firth. (3) The blackening wave is edged with white. (4) Whose screams forebode that wreck is nigh. (5) The gifted Seer. (6) The ring they ride. (7) Sheathed in his iron panoply. (8) Every pillar, foliage-bound. (9) With candle, with book, and with knell.

2. Parse and analyze stanza 7.

3. Reproduce the substance of "Rosabelle" under the following heads: (1) The first speaker's request, with the reasons. (2) The answer, with the reasons. (3) The strange appearance of Roslin Castle. (4) The fate of Rosabelle.

4. Commit this poem to memory.

A BRAVE SAILOR.

Consterna'tion, greatest alarm.
Distract'ed, with confused and troubled thoughts.
Inter'minable, endless.
Tattooed', marked by punctures on the skin, into which coloring matter is rubbed.

1. In the morning the wind had lulled a little; but the sea, having upon it the additional agitation of the whole night, was infinitely more terrific than it had been on the day before; the height to which the breakers rose, and, looking over one another, bore one another down,

and rolled in, in interminable hosts, was most appalling.

In the difficulty of hearing anything but wind and waves, and in the crowd, and the unspeakable confusion, and my first breathless efforts to stand against the weather, I was so confused that I looked out to sea for the wreck, and saw nothing but the foaming heads of the great waves. 2. A half-dressed boatman, standing next me, pointed with his bare arm (a tattooed arrow on it pointing in the same direction) to the left; and then I saw it, close in upon us. The life-boat had been bravely manned an hour ago, and could do nothing; and, as no man would be so desperate as to attempt to wade off with a rope, and establish communication with the shore, there was nothing left to try. 3. I now noticed that some new sensation moved the people on the beach. They parted, and Ham came breaking through them to the front. I ran to him to repeat my appeal for help. But, distracted though I was by a sight so new to me and terrible, the determination in his face, and his look out to sea, awoke me to a knowledge of his danger. I held him back with both arms, and implored the men with whom I had been speaking not to listen to him, not to do murder, not to let him stir off from the shore.

4. Another cry arose on the beach, and, looking to the wreck, we saw the cruel sail, with blow on blow, beat off two men on the deck, and fly up in triumph round a third figure left alone upon the mast. Against such a sight, and against such determination as that of the calmly desperate man who was already accustomed to lead half the people present, I might as hopefully have entreated the wind. "Master Davy," he said, cheerily grasping me by both hands, "if my

time is come, it is come. If it ain't, I 'll bide it. Lord bless you, and bless all! Mates, make me ready! I 'm going off."

5. I was swept away, but not unkindly, to some distance, where the people around me made me stay, urging that he was bent on going, with help or without, and that I should endanger the precautions for his safety by troubling those with whom they rested. I saw hurry on the beach, and men running with ropes, and penetrating into a circle of figures that hid him from me. Then I saw him standing alone, in a seaman's frock and trousers, a rope slung to his wrist, another round his body, and several of the best men holding the latter, which he laid out himself slack upon the shore at his feet.

6. The wreck was breaking up. She was parting amidships, and the life of the solitary man upon the mast hung by a thread. Still he clung to it. He had a red cap on, and as the few yielding planks between him and destruction rolled and bulged he was seen to wave it. Ham watched the sea, standing alone, with the silence of suspended breath behind him and the storm before, until there was a great retiring wave, when, with a backward glance at those who held the rope which was made fast round his body, he dashed in, and in a moment was buffeting with the water, rising with the hills, falling with the valleys, lost beneath the foam, then drawn back again to land. 7. They hauled in hastily. He was hurt, and the blood streamed from his face; but he took no thought of that. He seemed hurriedly to give some directions for leaving him more free, and was gone as before. And now he made for the wreck, rising with the hills, falling with the valleys, lost beneath the rugged foam, borne in

towards the shore, borne out towards the ship, striving hard and valiantly. The distance was nothing, but the power of the sea and wind made the strife deadly.

8. At length he neared the wreck. He was so near that with one more of his vigorous strokes he would be clinging to it — when a high, green, vast hillside of water was seen moving shoreward, from beyond the ship, into which the brave sailor seemed to leap with a mighty bound, and the ship itself was gone! On running to the spot where they were hauling in, some eddying fragments were seen in the surf, as if a mere cask had been broken. 9 Consternation was in every face. They drew him to my feet — insensible — dead. He was carried to the nearest house, and I remained near him, busy, while every means of restoration was tried; but he had been beaten to death by the great wave, and his generous heart was stilled forever.

Dickens.

Exercises. — 1. Write a short composition on "A Brave Sailor" from the following summary: (1) A ship had been dashed on the rocks near the shore. (2) Three men were still alive on her; two were soon knocked overboard by the sails. (3) A sailor tried to rescue the third. (4) He had a rope put round his waist, and swam in. (5) He was drawn back, with his face all bloody. (6) He swam out again, and appeared to be seizing the side of the ship, when a great wave broke it up. (7) He was again drawn back — dead.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) The breakers rolled in, in interminable hosts. (2) Might as hopefully have entreated the wind. (3) I'll bide it. (4) Consternation was in every face.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: (1) The power of the sea and wind made the strife deadly.

4. Analyze the above sentence.

5. Select from section 2 all the words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used, such as *stand*, *point*, *arm*, etc.

THE FERRY.

(*Verse printed as Prose.*)

Blend, mingle. | **Course**, life on earth.
Yore, long time ago.

A traveller is supposed, in this poem, to come to a ferry upon the Rhine, which he had crossed many years before with two dear friends, now dead. The ruins of old castles, and the rocky crags, lit up by the evening sun, look down upon the river, and bring to the traveller's mind a vivid recollection of that former day, — and he gives the ferryman three times his fee; for along with him had crossed in the boat the spirits of his dead friends.

1. Many a year is in its grave since I crossed this restless wave; and the evening, fair as ever, shines on ruin, rock, and river. 2. Then in this same boat beside sat two comrades old and tried, — one with all a father's truth, one with all the fire of youth. 3. One on earth in silence wrought, and his grave in silence sought; but the younger, brighter form passed in battle and in storm. 4. So, whene'er I turn my eye back upon the days gone by, saddening thoughts of friends come o'er me, — friends that closed their course before me. 5. But what binds us, friend to friend, but that soul with soul can blend? Soul-like were those hours of yore; let us walk in soul once more. 6. Take, O boatman, thrice thy fee, — take, I give it willingly; for, invisible to thee, spirits twain have crossed with me.

Ludwig Uhland (*German*).

Cautions. — Verse 1. Line 1: Avoid the verse accent upon *in*, and read *is-in-its-grave* as one word. Line 2: Avoid also the verse accent on *and*. — Verse 4. Line 2: Do not accent *upon;* make *back-u*

GREAT CITIES.

ST. PETERSBURG.

Accu'mulated, heaped up. From Lat. *ad*, to, and *cumulo*, I heap. (A kind of piled-up clouds are called *cumuli*.) *Ad* becomes *ac* before *c*, as in *accommodate*, *accept*, etc.

Ad'miralty, the buildings containing the offices of those who have control of the fleet.

Bronze, a compound metal, not occurring in nature, consisting of copper and a small portion of tin, — usually from six to twelve per cent..

Colos'sal, see page 172.

Disas'trous, very unfortunate. From Gr. *dis*, aside, and *astron*, a star. In former times it was thought that the stars controlled the actions of men; if an action was entered upon when the stars were unfavorable, a *disaster* resulted. Cf. *ill-starred*.

Droschky, a Russian pleasure carriage having four wheels.

Ed'ifices, buildings. From Lat. *ædes*, a house, and *facio*, I make. Cognates: *edify*, to build up in the faith; *edification*, etc.

Expan'sion, swelling out. From Lat. *ex*, out, and *pando*, I spread. Cognates: *expand*, *expanse*, *expansive*.

Good by is a contraction, owing to rapidity of utterance, of "God be with you!"

Grada'tions, steps. From Lat. *gradus*, a step. Hence *graduate*, *gradual*, etc. (Hence too *degree*, from Fr. *dégré*, a broken-down form of the Lat. *de* and *gradus*. A psalm sung on the steps of the Temple was called a *Song of Degrees*.)

Gran'diose, full of grandeur. From Lat. *grandis*, great, and *osus*, full of. (*Osus* has become *ous* in English, and is found in such words as *plenteous*, *famous*, etc.) Cognates: *Grand*, *grandeur*.

Inclem'ent, unkind or unmerciful. From Lat. *in*, not, and *clēmens*, mild. (*I'n* is the *English* negative; *in*, the Latin.)

Insurrec'tions, risings against authority. From Lat. *in*, against, and *surgo* (*surrectum*), I rise. Cognates: *Insurgent*; *surge*.

Inunda'tion, flood. From Lat. *in*, in, and *unda*, a wave.

Irresist'ible, see page 173.

Mal'achite, a green or blue ore of copper, capable of high polish, and used in making mantelpieces, vases, etc. It is found chiefly in the Ural Mountains.

Mon'olith, one-stone. From Gr. *monos*, alone, and *lithos*, a stone. Cognates: *Monarch*, *monogram*, *monotonous*; *lithography*.

Mortal'ity, death-rate. From Lat. *mors*, death; *mortalis*, subject to death.

Mou'jiks, Russians of the lower class.

Persever'ance, keeping steadily and closely to a task. From Lat. *per*, through or thoroughly, and *sevērus*, strict or severe.

Reclaim', call or win back. From Lat. *re*, back, and *clāmo*, I call or cry out.

Tar'tars, a race of people that includes Turks, Hungarians, the inhabitants of southern Russia, and all those north of the Hindoo Koosh Mountains and in the northern part of the Chinese Empire.

Thermom'eter, see page 167.

Twi'light, see page 234.

1. St. Petersburg is one of the most remarkable monuments of the determination and perseverance of man that the world can show. It stands in a cold and barren region, upon marshy ground, under an inclement sky; and it is yearly attacked by the terrible powers of water. The position of the city forms a remarkable contrast with that of Naples. The one in the far north, the other in the sunny south; the one in the neighborhood of the external agencies of frost and water, the other standing near the internal power of fire; the former in the midst of a barren country, the latter in one of the most fertile regions of Europe, — they form, internally as well as externally, the most striking contrast.

2. St. Petersburg stands on both banks of the Neva, and on two islands formed by the river's dividing there into three large branches. It is in the latitude of about sixty degrees, and is thus about ten degrees north of London. The climate is very hot in summer, and extremely cold in winter. During midsummer — when there is but little night — the heat increases, until it marks more than one hundred degrees in the shade; while in the winter the thermometer has been known to fall to fifty-four degrees below zero. 3. The moisture of the warmer months penetrates into the stone and the seams of the buildings; this moisture freezes in the winter; so that by the expansion of the ice thus formed

even the strongest edifices in the city are shattered. Nothing stands. It is a kind of proverb in St. Petersburg that the city has to be rebuilt every year. 4. "If St. Petersburg were not constantly rebuilt," says the Marquis de Custine, a French traveller, "it is certain that in a few years — in less time, perhaps, than was needed to reclaim it from the marsh — the marsh would take the place of the city. The Russian workmen pass their life in repairing in the summer-time what the winter has destroyed; nothing can resist the influence of this climate; the buildings, even those which look oldest, were really rebuilt but yesterday."

5. The longest day of the year lasts nearly nineteen hours, and the twilight melts into the dawn with undistinguishable gradations. There is no real night at this season. Midnight is but a softened continuation of the day; and when the beams of the full moon mingle with the lingering daylight, the clear water of the river, the lofty palaces, the gilded domes, and the splendid granite quays are clothed in a garment of weird light, which invests them with a beauty such as is seen in no other part of the world.

6. The impression produced by the first view of St. Petersburg is that of the grandiose and the colossal. In no capital in Europe are there so many large buildings, and such long, regularly laid out streets. It has not the look of a Russian city, — like Moscow or Kiev. It is rather an architectural mixture of all styles, of every order, borrowed from every country in Europe at the most different stages of growth. The buildings, many of which are profusely gilded externally, glitter in the sun with an effect surprising to those who view it for the first time. 7. The contrasts within the city are very striking. Not only are buildings of ancient Greek

or Byzantine architecture side by side with the most modern forms, but the dresses of the Oriental and the Tartar brush the modern frock-coat of the Frenchman and the Englishman. The contrast in density of population is also very great. The north side of the city is comparatively empty, the south side is as lively as London or Paris. In the long, wide streets of the north side, lined with lofty, lifeless palaces, a single droschky may be seen, like a small boat on the high seas, while in the distance appears an occasional foot-passenger. 8. The streets are long, wide, and bordered with lofty buildings. The Nevski Prospekt — a name which means *New View* — is nearly three miles long, and about sixty yards broad. The number of inhabitants, though very great, amounting to over seven hundred thousand, is however by no means in proportion to the extent of ground covered by the city.

9. The increase of population in St. Petersburg has taken place with considerable rapidity, though not so fast as that of London or Paris. In 1750, there were about seventy-five thousand inhabitants; in 1804, two hundred and seventy thousand; and in 1858, five hundred and twenty thousand. Of the present inhabitants fully a hundred thousand are foreigners. 10. The annual mortality is higher than that of any other town in Europe; it reaches the number of forty-four persons in every thousand. One curious feature in this mortality is, that it is greatest in the case of people from the age of twenty to twenty-five. At that age, one hundred a year die in every thousand; that is to say, one out of ten.

11. As has been said, the buildings of St. Petersburg are remarkable for their size. The Admiralty is the largest building, and it alone is nearly half a mile long.

NEVSKI PROSPEKT, ST. PETERSBURG.

In no capital in Europe are there so many palaces. There are twelve destined for the Czar alone, — eight of stone, and four of wood. The Winter Palace — the residence of the Czar for seven or eight months — is one of the largest buildings in the world. It required eight years in building, and yet when it was burned down, in 1837, the Emperor Nicholas ordered that it should be rebuilt in one year. The task was done; but it cost the lives of thousands of moujiks. 12. The church of St. Isaac is the largest church, and also the most splendid. It is not unlike St. Paul's in London; but the model of the architect was the Pantheon, at Rome. The exterior is built of Finland marble and granite; there are forty-eight monolith pillars, of red granite; and the interior is a marvellous intermixture of gold, silver, bronze, marble, agate, and malachite. 13. The Neva is lined with the most magnificent granite quays. The different parts of the town, which are separated by the branches of the Neva, are connected by a hundred and seventy-seven bridges, thirty-six of which are of stone, and nineteen of iron.

14. The history of St. Petersburg is monotonous and uninteresting. It was founded by Peter the Great in 1703, and proclaimed as the capital in 1712. It does not possess the ancient and varied history of London, or the intensely interesting dramatic story of Paris. It has never stood sieges, or been threatened with insurrections from within. 15. The greatest danger is from the Neva. Every few years this river overflows its banks, and causes an inundation. This event most frequently occurs in spring. The ice begins to melt in the great lakes which discharge their surplus waters through the Neva. If at this time a strong west wind should prevail, the waters of the Gulf of Finland are heaped up. Then the waters

of the Neva have not a free and open passage into the Gulf, and a disastrous overflow is the consequence. 16. In some parts of the city these inundations are so frequent and so sudden that, on the signal being given, the guests of an evening party suddenly depart without saying good-by, and betake themselves, at the utmost speed of their horses, to the higher parts of the town. The most terrible of these inundations occurred in 1777 and in 1824. But almost every spring, should a west wind prevail, the grown-up inhabitants of St. Petersburg, from the Emperor down to the poorest moujik, sit up all night, and sometimes for several nights running, watching, with beating hearts, pale faces, and blanched lips, the rising of the waters and the direction of the wind.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 6 to 10, inclusive.

2. Write a short paper on "St. Petersburg" from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) An *inclement* sky. (2) The strongest edifices are shattered by the expansion of the ice. (3) To reclaim it from the marsh. (4) The twilight melts into the dawn with *undistinguishable gradations*. (5) Many of the buildings are *profusely* gilded *externally*. (6) The *annual mortality*. (7) A *marvellous* intermixture. (8) The history of St. Petersburg is *monotonous*. (9) The great lakes discharge their *surplus* waters. (10) *Inundations*. (11) They betake themselves to the higher parts of the town.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentence: "The position of the city forms a remarkable contrast with that of Naples."

5. Analyze the following sentence: —

> "There was a time when, though my path was rough,
> The joy within me dallied with distress;
> And all misfortunes were but as the stuff
> Whence fancy made me dreams of happiness."

6. Write in columns as many words as you know, derivatives of, or cognates with, the following English words: *fire*, *cold*,[1] *know*, *moon*,[2] *day*,[3] *cloth*, *grow*, *all*,[4] *high*, *ice*, *take*, *bake*,[5] *free*.

7. Give in columns as many derivatives as you know from the following Latin words: *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *fluo*, I flow (root *flu*, stem *flux*); *premo*, I press (root *prem*, stem *press*); *duco*, I lead (root *duc*, stem *duct*).

8. With each of the following words and phrases write a sentence illustrating its proper use: *peace* and *piece*; *peer* and *pier*; *plain* and *plane*; *pleas* and *please*; *sink beneath*, *sink into*, *sink under*; *start at*, *start from*, and *start with*.

9. Distinguish between the words in each of the following sets: —

splendid	beautiful	lovely
marvellous	wonderful	strange
terrible	fearful	awful
destined	fated	doomed
disastrous	destructive	fatal
residence	dwelling	home
magnificent	gorgeous	brilliant
event	occurrence	accident

[1] *Chill*, etc. [2] *Month*, etc. [3] *Dawn*, etc.
[4] *Also*, *alone*, etc. [5] *Batch*, etc.

THE SUEZ CANAL.

Abattoir', slaughter-house. From Fr. *abattre*, to knock down.

Bazaar' (a Persian word), an open-air market for all kinds of goods.

Caf'és, coffee-houses.

Concrete', compounded. From Lat. *con*, together, and *cresco* (*cretum*), I grow. Cognate: *Accretion*.

Depres'sion, hollow. From Lat. *de*, down, and *premo* (*pressum*), I press. Cognates: *Press*, *pressure*; *impress*, *express*, *compress*, etc.

Dimen'sions, measurements. From Lat. *dis*, apart, and *metior* (*mensus*), I measure. Cognates: *Mete*, *metage* (the measurement of coal).

Excavat'ed, dug or *hollowed* out From Lat. *ex*, out, and *cavo*, I hollow.

Fer'tilizing, making fruitful. From Lat. *fero*, I bear. Cognate: *Fertility*.

Involv'ing, requiring. From Lat. *involvo*, I roll or wrap in. Cognates: *Involution; revolve; revolution.*

Max'imum (a Latin word), greatest. The opposite is *minimum.*

Mole, a large mass of masonwork, generally for the purpose of a breakwater. From Lat. *moles*, a mass.

Plateau' (a French word), tableland. From Gr. *platys*, flat. Cognates: *Plot, plate, platform, platitude.*

Quays, wharfs for the loading and unloading of vessels.

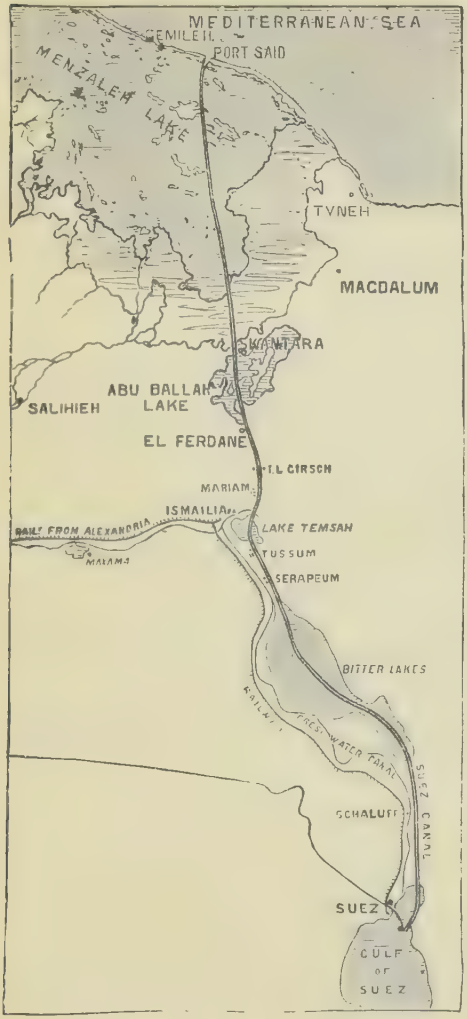
Re'cently, lately. From Lat. *recens*, fresh.

Subsid'iary, aiding or assisting. From Lat. *subsidium*, help.

Unpre'cedented, not known or experienced before. From Eng. *un*, not, and Lat. *pre*, before, and *cedo*, I go.

1. At the northern or Mediterranean end of the canal is the new town of Port Saïd, built on a strip of sand which separates the sea from Lake Menzaleh. Although so recently formed, it has a population of several thousand inhabitants, with streets, docks, basins, and quays. The Mediterranean being at this part very shallow, depth for a harbor could be obtained only by constructing two piers, or moles, the one a mile and a half, and the other a mile and a quarter long, formed of huge blocks of concrete, or artificial stone. The enclosed area, 500 acres in extent, has been dredged to a depth sufficient for large merchant-ships. 2. Basins and docks are connected with this harbor, and then begins the canal itself, just 100 miles long. For four fifths of the distance this canal is 327 feet wide at the surface of the water, 72 feet wide at the bottom, and 26 feet deep. The remaining one fifth is 196 feet wide at the water surface, with the same bottom width and maximum depth as the other. The great surface width has been adopted to render the banks very gradual in their slope or shelving, as a precaution against washing away. 3. To form a canal of such large dimensions, 96,000,000 cubic yards of stone, sand, and earth have been excavated, and an immense amount of manual labor, aided by dredging machinery of unprecedented magnitude and power,

has been needed in the work. The part of the sloping banks a little above and below the water level is protected by rough stone pitching, to resist the action of waves caused by passing steamers.



MAP SHOWING SUEZ CANAL.

4. On leaving Port Saïd the canal passes, by means of high embankments, through about thirty miles of a shallow swamp, called Lake Menzaleh. Then comes the Kantara cutting, three miles through hillocks of sand. This ends at Lake Ballah, a kind of salt marsh, through which the canal runs about nine miles, with side embankments. Next to this comes a portion of plateau, eight miles long, in some parts of which, near El Girsch, the canal had to be dug to the depth of 90 feet in hard sandstone, — an immense labor where the width of the

canal is so great. 5. Then we come to the central part of the canal, Lake Temsah, where, just about fifty miles from each end, is the new and flourishing town of Ismaïlia, provided with streets, roads, merchants' offices, banks, hotels, cafés, villas, a Roman Catholic chapel for the French inhabitants, a Mohammedan mosque for the Egyptian and Arab population, a theatre, hospital, a railway station, a telegraph station, an abattoir, a bazaar, and quays and repairing-docks for shipping. This town is one of the most remarkable of M. de Lesseps's creations.

6. The canal then passes through nine miles of dry land, where the Serapeum cutting has called for a vast amount of excavation. To this succeeds a passage of 23 miles through the Bitter Lake, which has for ages been a dry salt depression, but which is now filled with sea-water from the Mediterranean and the Red Sea, the canal itself being marked out by lofty and broad embankments. To fill up this great depression 10,000,000 cubic yards of water have been admitted. A further distance of 17 miles, through dry land and shallow dried-up lakes, carries the canal to Suez, involving extensive blasting at the Schaluff cutting. At the junction with the Red Sea, at Suez, all the necessary piers, docks, quays, etc. have been constructed.

7. A subsidiary work — without which this great ship canal could not have been constructed — is the Sweet-water Canal, which is about forty feet wide by nine feet deep. It brings the fresh water of the Nile from a point a little below Cairo to Ismaïlia and Suez, and by means of large iron pipes to Port Said. This minor canal is literally invaluable, since it not only supplies fresh water for the thousands of men employed in the works, but is gradually fertilizing what was before a

sandy desert. 8. The grand Suez Canal, which cost upwards of $80,000,000, was opened for traffic in November, 1869, and ships of large burden pass through it every day.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of the first six paragraphs.

2. Write a short paper on "The Suez Canal" from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) *Recently* formed. (2) Maximum depth. (3) Machinery of *unprecedented magnitude* and power. (4) This town is one of the most remarkable of M. de Lesseps's creations. (5) Dry salt depression. (6) A *subsidiary* work. (7) *Incalculable*. (8) It is gradually *fertilizing* what was before a sandy desert.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentence: "The grand Suez Canal, which cost upward of $80,000,000, was opened for traffic in November, 1869."

Analyze the following sentence: —

> "I wis, in all the senate
> There was no heart so bold
> But sore it ached, and fast it beat,
> When that ill news was told."

6. Write in columns as many words as you know derived from, or cognates with, the following English words: *deep*, *begin*, *wet*,[1] *bank*,[2] *mark*,[3] *town*, *through*,[4] *broad*, *long*, *fore*.

7. Write in columns derivatives from the following Latin words: *populus*, people (root *popul-*; the adjective *populicus* was contracted into *publicus*); *struo*, I build (root *stru*, stem *struct*); *caro*, I hollow (root *car*, stem *carat*); *sto*, I stand (root *sta*, stem *stat*).

8. With each of the following words and phrases make a sentence illustrating its proper use: *pain* and *pane*; *pail* and *pale*; *pair* and *pare*; *remain at*, *remain in*, *remain over*; *rest from*, *rest in*, and *rest upon*.

[1] *Water*, etc.
[2] *Bench*, etc.
[3] *March*, *Lord Marcher*, *market*, etc.
[4] *Thorough*, etc.

CONTENTMENT.

Cordial'ity, heartiness.
Disas'ter, see page 271.
Eleva'tion of spir'it, a state of mind raised above its ordinary level.
Esplanade', a level place for walking or dancing on.
Flag'on, a narrow-necked drinking vessel.
Geneal'ogy of, the tracing of one's ancestors (here used metaphorically for *descendants*).
Illit'erate, unlettered *or* without learning.
Invest' myself' with the char'acter, put myself in the place and position of.
Len'til, a plant allied to the pea and bean.
Prel'ate, a bishop *or* archbishop.
Prevailed' upon', succeeded in persuading.
Sabots' (pronounced *sah-bō*), wooden shoes.
Tes'timony, mark *or* sign.

1. A shoe coming loose from the forefoot of the post-horse at the beginning of a long ascent, the postilion dismounted, twisted the shoe off, and put it in his pocket. As the ascent was five or six miles, and that horse our main dependence, I made a point of having the shoe fastened on again as well as we could; but the postilion had thrown away the nails, and the hammer in the chaise-box being of no great use without them, I submitted to go on. 2. He had not mounted half a mile higher, when, coming to a flinty piece of road, the poor horse lost a second shoe, and from off his other forefoot. I then got out of the chaise in good earnest; and, seeing a house about a quarter of a mile to the left hand, with a great deal to-do I prevailed upon the postilion to turn up to it. 3. The look of the house and of everything about it, as we drew nearer, soon reconciled me to the disaster. It was a little farmhouse, surrounded by about twenty acres of vineyard, nearly as many of grain, and close to the house, on one side, was a kitchen garden, of an acre and a half, full of everything that could make plenty in a French peasant's

house, and on the other side was a little wood, which furnished wherewithal to dress it. 4. It was about eight in the evening when I got to the house, so I left the postilion to manage his own business; and as to mine, I walked directly into the house. The family consisted of an old, gray-headed man and his wife, with five or six sons and sons-in-law, and their several wives, and a joyous genealogy of grandchildren. They were all sitting down together to their lentil soup; a large wheaten loaf was in the middle of the table, and a flagon of wine at each end of it promised joy through the stages of the repast: it was a feast of love. 5. The old man rose up to meet me, and with a respectful cordiality would have me sit down at the table. My heart had sat down the moment I entered the room, so I took my place like a son of the family, and to invest myself with the character as speedily as I could, I instantly borrowed the old man's knife, and, taking up the loaf, cut myself a hearty slice; and as I did it, I saw a testimony in every eye, not only of an honest welcome, but of a welcome mixed with thanks that I had not seemed to doubt it. 6. Was it this — or tell me, Nature, what else it was — that made this morsel so sweet? and to what magic did I owe it that the draught I took of their flagon was so delicious that the flavor remains upon my palate to this hour?

When supper was over, the old man gave a knock on the table with the haft of his knife, to bid them prepare for the dance. 7. The moment the signal was given, the women and girls all ran together into a back apartment to tie up their hair, and the young men to the door to wash their faces and change their sabots; and in three minutes every soul was ready, upon a little esplanade before the house, to begin. The old man and his wife

came out last, and, placing me betwixt them, sat down upon a sofa of turf by the door. 8. The old man had in his earlier years been no mean performer upon the guitar; and, old as he was then, he touched it well enough for the purpose. His wife sang now and then a little of the tune, now leaving off, and then joining her old man again, as their children and grandchildren danced before them.

It was not till the middle of the second dance, when, from some pauses in the movements wherein they all seemed to look up, I fancied I could distinguish an elevation of spirit different from that which is the cause or the effect of simple jollity. 9. The old man, as soon as the dance ended, told me that this was their constant way; and that all his life long he had made it a rule, after supper was over, to call out his family to dance and rejoice, believing, he said, that a cheerful and contented mind was the best sort of thanks to Heaven that an illiterate peasant could pay. "Or a learned prelate, either," said I. *Sterne.*

COMPOSITION. — Write a short story about CONTENTMENT from the following summary: 1. A traveller is driving along a road in the South of France, and his horse is lamed. (2) He enters a small farm house, and is invited to supper. 3. After supper the whole family dance, and the old father plays to them. 4. The old man tells the traveller that this is their regular custom every evening.

EXERCISES. — 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) That one horse was our main dependence. (2) The look of the house soon recovered me to the disaster. (3) The little wood furnished wherewithal to dress it. (4) There was a joyous genealogy of grandchildren. (5) The old man showed me respectful cordiality. (6) I saw in every eye a testimony of welcome. (7) The old man had been no mean performer on the guitar. (8) A contented mind is the best sort of thanks.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The look of the house very soon reconciled me to the disaster.

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Give the principal parts of the following verbs: *shoe*, *lose*, *put*, *make*, *fasten*, *use*, *come*, *get*, *see*, *leave*, *draw*.

5. Select from the first three sections words which may be either nouns or verbs, according to the way in which they are used, such as *use*, *twist*, etc.

6. Give the verbs or the adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *assent*, *dependence*, *submission*, *prevalence*, *reconciliation*, *furniture*, *consistency*, *seat*, *cordiality*.

7. With each of the first six of the above words make a sentence illustrating its proper use.

8. Write as many compounds of the following words as you know: *come*, *turn*, *manage*, *part*, *touch*, *join*.

9. Words involving the idea of *year* are as follows: *yearly*, *annual*, *half-yearly*, *biennial* (happening every two years), *triennial*, *septennial*, *century*, *perennial* (lasting through the year), *millennium* (a space of a thousand years), and others. Give in the same way (but write them in columns), with their meanings, the words involving the idea of *house* and *vine*.

A VOYAGE ROUND THE WORLD.

Part II.

Anni′hilated, utterly destroyed. From Lat. *nihil*, nothing.

Bewil′dered, perplexed, as if lost in a *wilderness*.

Bombard′, to throw *bombs* at.

Cai′tiff, rascally. (The word is really a N. Fr. form of the word *captive*. It was applied to those who gave themselves up in battle too easily, and without hard fighting.)

Cur′rants, small dried fruit. (The word is a corruption of *Corinth*, which originally exported them.)

Cyc′lades, from the Gr. *kyklos*, a circle. (The same word gives *cycle*, and *encyclical* = a circular letter.)

Dey, a Turkish word which means literally *uncle by the mother's side*. Then *governor*.

Geom′etry, the science of the relations of space. (Literally, it means *earth-measuring*, from the Gr. *ge*, the earth, and *metro*, I measure.)

Hal′cyon, calm, happy. (In Greek the *kingfisher*, — it being supposed that the sea was calm

when the kingfisher was brooding.)

Hespe′ria, from the Gr. *Hesperos*, the evening star. (When Hesperos became the morning star, it was called *Phosphoros*, the light-bringer. To the Greeks Italy itself was *Hesperia*, because it lay west of them.)

Hi′eroglyphs, see page 181.

Memo′rials, reminders, things to keep up the *memory* of.

Phœ′nix, a fabulous bird, the only one of its kind; it lived five hundred years and then burned itself, a young one arising from the ashes. Hence, the phœnix is often used as a symbol of immortality.

Pi′racy, acting as a pirate, or sea-robber.

Plateau′, see page 277.

Realm, the *real* or *royal* domain (*Real* is the N. Fr. of the word *royal* or *regal*; and it was in the 14th century also an English word.)

Reful′gent, shining. From Lat. *fulgere*, to shine.

Sier′ra, the Spanish name for a *mountain range*. It is a form of the Latin word *serra*, a saw, because the jagged edge of a mountain range looks like a saw against the blue sky.

Type, kind or model.

Typhoons′, terrible storms moving in a circle, frequent in the Chinese seas. (The name comes from *Typhon*, a giant of ancient Greek fable.)

Yard′-arm, the arm, or end of the yard, which crosses the masts at right angles.

1. Let us pass to the south and east. The poet Montgomery calls the numerous islands at the south of Asia the "Eastern Cyclades." The true Cyclades (or *circled islands*) lie in a group in the south of the Ægean Sea. The seas in which the Eastern Cyclades lie are beautiful, and often calm; but sometimes they are visited by fearful hurricanes, called typhoons.

Jealous China, strange Japan,
With bewildered eyes I scan!
They are but dead seas of man.
Lo! the Eastern Cyclades,
Phœnix nests, and halcyon seas;
But I tarry not with these.

2. Working our way through these beautiful islands, we come to Australia, which has been already mentioned, and which was formerly called New Holland. The savage of Australia are the lowest type of man

ever discovered, but are gradually becoming fewer and fewer, as the white man extends his civilizing influence.

3. If, now, we strike northwest, we shall reach the Bay of Bengal, and have the two Indias — India, or Hindustan, and Farther India — on each side of us. The population of British India amounts to over 200,000,000. In the province of Oude, which also is under our rule, the population is so dense that it reaches the large number of 468 to the square mile. The mighty river Ganges rolls through one of the most fertile plains in the world. 4. Calcutta, the capital of the government of Bengal, and the seat of the Viceroy of India, is often called the "City of Palaces." The poet thinks that Britain, in gaining the empire of India, lost her own good name. But this is not so; because the British government is much superior in justice and in mildness to any government that preceded it in India.

5. Sailing south, past the island of Ceylon, rounding Cape Comorin, and striking to the northwest, we pass the Gulf of Persia. Persia is a high table-land, ten times larger in extent than the British Islands, but with a very sparse population of about four millions. One of the popular stories of the country is, that the nightingale makes love to the rose, a flower much cultivated in this Eastern country. 6. Arabia, where we next touch at, is a barren table-land, with fertile strips only along the coasts. It has long been celebrated for the spices it grows. When the breeze is from the land, sweet perfumes are often wafted far out to sea; and odors from "Araby the blest" have been famous for many centuries.

By the Gulf of Persia sail,
Where the true-love nightingale
Woos the rose in every vale.
Though Arabia charge the breeze
With the incense of her trees,
On we press o'er southern seas.

7. Bartholomew Diaz, a knight of the royal household of Portugal, set out in 1486 with three vessels to

TABLE MOUNTAIN, CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

explore Southern Africa. He came in sight of Table Mountain and a cape, which he called *Cabo Tormentoso*, or the *Stormy Cape*; but his sovereign changed the name to the Cape of Good Hope, — a name of better augury. Another Portuguese, Vasco de Gama, was the first to double this cape, — a feat that he performed in 1497.

Commanding Table Bay and Cape Town stands the rugged mass called Table Mountain. Sometimes a white cloud lies rolled upon the surface, and the sailors call such a cloud "the table-cloth." 8. Sailing to the northwest, up through the Southern Atlantic, we touch at St. Helena, for six years the prison of the great Napoleon. To this barren rock he was banished by the English government shortly after the battle of Waterloo, in 1815. Here he died in 1821, and under a well-known willow-tree his body lay until it was brought back to France, in 1840, in the reign of Louis Philippe.

Cape of Storms, thy spectre's fled,
And the angel Hope, instead,
Lights from heaven upon thy head.
Lonely monarch of the wave,
Chosen St. Helena, gave
To resting warrior a grave.

9. Almost opposite lies the slave-coast of Africa. Traffickers in human beings, chiefly Portuguese, have for centuries carried on this villanous trade. English law regards slave-dealing as piracy, and the captain and every man of the crew of a slave-ship may be hanged at the yard-arm if captured. To check this traffic, Great Britain keeps a small fleet of men-of-war constantly upon this coast.

10. Steering to the north, we come to the Straits of Gibraltar. The rock of Gibraltar and the mountain of Ceuta, on the African side, were in ancient times called the Pillars of Hercules, because it was believed that the travels of this great Greek hero had ended here, and that he had placed pillars on these rocks as memorials of the points which he had reached in his journeyings. In the distance rises the snow-capped range of the Atlas Mountains.

11. Let us turn east and survey the historic coasts of the Mediterranean. On the south lies Algiers, the former abode of Moorish pirates. The practice of holding Christians as slaves was finally put down in 1816 by Lord Exmouth, who bombarded the city for seven hours, destroyed the Algerine fleet and many public

THE NILE AND PYRAMIDS.

buildings, and forced the Dey of Algiers to agree to the demands of Britain. The French took possession of Algeria in 1830, and since then the country has been gradually rising in wealth and industry. 12. East, and farther east! and we approach the mouths of "old Nile" and the ancient land of Egypt. Ancient Egypt had two languages, — one written by the priests, the other spoken by the people. The written characters (or

short-hand pictures) employed by the priests were called hieroglyphs.

> Mark the dens of caitiff Moors;
> Ha! the pirates seize their oars, —
> Fly the desecrated shores!
> Egypt's hieroglyphic realm
> Other floods than Nile's o'erwhelm, —
> Slaves turned despots hold the helm.

13. In the year 1801 the French were driven out of Egypt, and the country was once more placed in the power of Turkey. It was then ruled by Mehemet Ali, a vassal of the Ottoman Porte, — a slave of the Sultan, who, when left to himself, showed how tyrannical and despotic a slave can become. The two most famous things in Egypt are the Nile and the Pyramids. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is the true benefactor of Egypt. One of its branches brings down millions of tons of mud, which the inundations every year spread over the face of the whole country, fertilizing the soil, and enabling large crops of rice and wheat to be raised where otherwise there would be only barren sand. 14. The Pyramids were and are among the wonders of the world. They are scattered up and down the lower part of the country. The three largest are the most famous. The largest of all, which is 480 feet 9 inches high, was the sepulchre of Cheops, one of the great kings of ancient Egypt. They were built as sepulchres, or monuments, or places for keeping treasure. The Egyptians were great astronomers and land-surveyors. They were obliged to learn land-surveying; for, as the Nile every year, by its inundations, completely removed all landmarks, the fields and plots had to be measured over again.

15. Steering now to the north, we come to Syria and

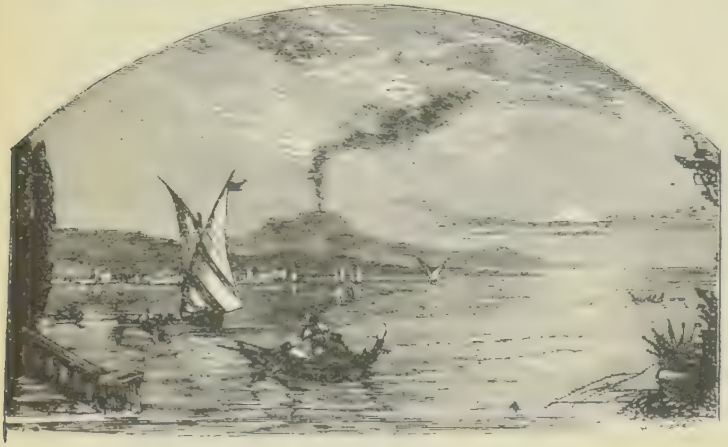
the Levant. The ancient glories of Judah are departed. Jerusalem is a poor town of 25,000 inhabitants, half of whom are Mohammedans, and the rest Jews and Christians. Greece is next approached. The battle of Navarino, in 1827, when the combined British, French, and Russian fleets annihilated the navies of Turkey and Egypt, materially helped Greece to free herself from the cruel yoke of Turkey. 16. It was hoped that this would awaken the ancient spirit of Greece, bring back the old sages and poets, and make the country one of the civilizing powers of Europe. But as yet she is only a small trading community. Currants are her chief product; but two thirds of the land is uncultivated.

Judah's cities are forlorn,
Lebanon and Carmel shorn,
Zion trampled down with scorn.
Greece, a wind, is on the wing,
At whose breath new hopes may spring,
Sages teach, and poets sing.

17. Ever west! and we come in sight of the lovely land of Italy. Up to 1859, the name *Italy* was only a geographical expression. The country was ruled by tyrannical kings, grand-dukes, and dukes, all of whom held their power by the help of Austria. But in the beginning of 1859 Napoleon III. declared that Italy should be free from the Alps to the Adriatic; and, as the ally of the Piedmontese, in a series of bloody battles, he drove the Austrians farther and farther to the east. 18. Venetia was the last part freed, and the country was united in 1866, when the power of Austria fell before Prussia in the battle of Sadowa. The great names of Mazzini and Garibaldi are in the mouths of every one when Italy is spoken of.

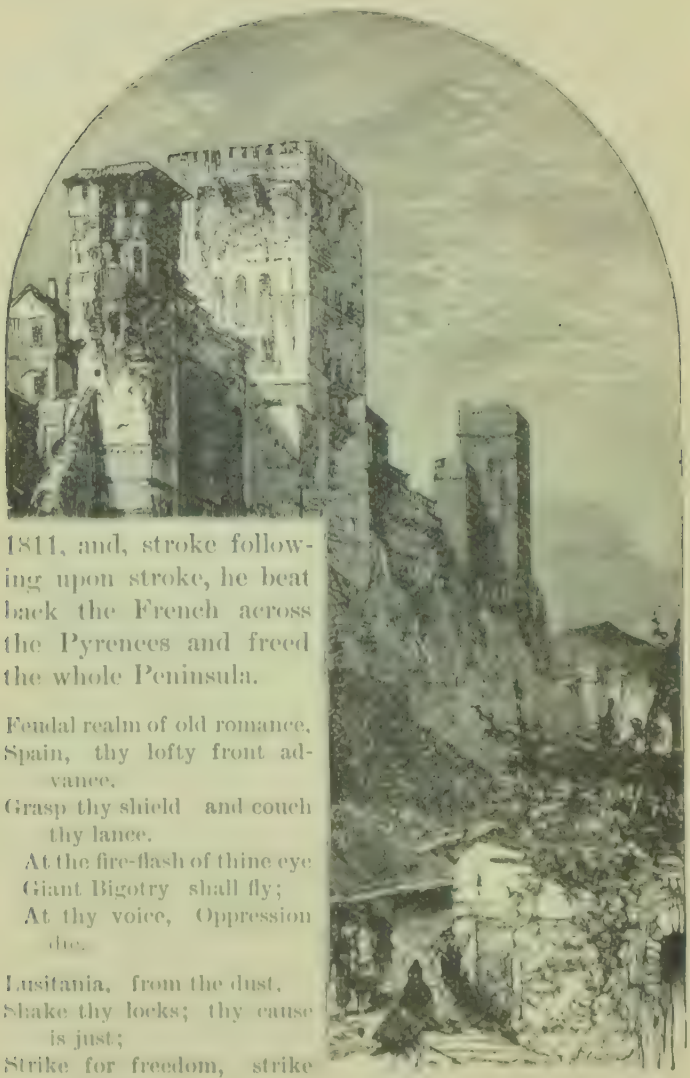
Italy, thy beauties shroud
In a gorgeous evening cloud;
Thy refulgent head is bowed;
Yet where Roman genius reigns
Roman blood *must* warm the veins:
Look well, tyrants! to your chains.

The Bay of Naples — with Mount Vesuvius looking down upon it — is said to be the loveliest in the world. "See Naples, and die," is the country proverb.



BAY OF NAPLES, AND MOUNT VESUVIUS.

19. Spain — called by the ancient Italians *Hesperia*, or "the land of the evening star" — next looms on the horizon. A land of high plateaus, wide, barren plains, snow-capped sierras, picturesque valleys, ancient castles, splendid Moorish buildings and public works, it attracts the traveller as much by its past history as by its present strange and weird beauty. The poet, who bids Spain "grasp her shield" and "advance her front," wrote when the armies of Napoleon were swarming all over the Peninsula, and when Wellington, in 1810, was compelled to retire into Portugal (called by the ancient Romans *Lusitania*). 20. Thence he issued in



1811, and, stroke following upon stroke, he beat back the French across the Pyrenees and freed the whole Peninsula.

Feudal realm of old romance,
Spain, thy lofty front advance,
Grasp thy shield and couch thy lance.
At the fire-flash of thine eye
Giant Bigotry shall fly;
At thy voice, Oppression die.

Lusitania, from the dust,
Shake thy locks; thy cause is just;
Strike for freedom, strike and trust!

NIGHT.

How beautiful is night!
A dewy freshness fills the silent air;
No mist obscures, nor cloud, nor speck, nor stain,
Breaks the serene of heaven:
In full-orbed glory yonder moon divine
Rolls through the dark blue depths.
Beneath her steady ray
The desert circle spreads
Like the round ocean, girdled with the sky:
How beautiful is night!

Robert Southey, 1774-1843.

DIRECTION. — This short poem should be read with great slowness and distinctness.

Commit this poem to memory.

THE GENTLEMAN.

The Gentleman is a man of truth, lord of his own actions, and expressing that lordship in his behavior, not in any manner dependent or servile, either on persons, or opinions, or possessions. Beyond this fact of truth and real force, the word denotes good-nature or benevolence: manhood first, and then gentleness. . . . . What *is* rich? Are you rich enough to help anybody? to succor the weak and the needy? to make the poor swarthy Italian with his few broken words of English, the lame pauper driven by overseers from town to town, even the poor insane wreck of man or woman, feel the noble exception of your presence and your house from the general bleakness and storminess? to make such feel that they were greeted with a voice which made them both remember and hope?

> "Look! he that is most virtuous alway,
> Abroad and home, and most intendeth aye
> To do the gentle actions that he can,
> Take *him* for the greatest gentleman."
>
> *Chaucer.*

BATTLE OF WATERLOO.

JUNE 18, 1815.

Assail'ants, persons attacking. From Low Lat. *assalire*, for Lat. *assilire*, to leap against.

Concen'trated, massed together.

Con'vex, bulging out, the opposite of *concave*, which means *hollow*.

Deci'sive, complete, producing an end. An adjective from *decide*, which comes from Lat. *decido*, *decisum*, *decidere*, to cut off.

Deploy', to extend in line. From Fr. *deployer*, to unfold.

Dispers'ing, routing and scattering.

Expelled', driven out. From Lat. *ex*, out of, and *pello*, I

drive. Connected with *repel*, *compel*, *impel*; *repulse*, *compulsion*, *impulse*, etc.

Farm of′fices, out-houses.

Fic′tion, made-up story. From Lat. *fingo*, I fashion or make, *fictum*, something made up.

Force (in a military sense), take.

Fu′gitives, runaways. From Lat. *fugio*, I flee.

Impetuos′ity, fury. From Lat. *impetus*, an attack.

Inces′sant, never ceasing. From Lat. *in*, not, and *cesso*, I cease or stop.

Intrepid′ity, fearlessness. From Lat. *in*, not, and *trepidus*, fearful.

Mask (in a military sense), to surround and so render useless for the time being.

Op′erate a diver′sion, attack the enemy in a different place, and so *divert* his attention.

Precip′itate, throw headlong. From Lat. *præ*, before, and *caput*, the head.

Reinforced′, strengthened by the addition of.

Repelled′, drove back. From Lat. *re*, back, and *pello*, I drive.

Retrieve′, make up for losses, *or* win back.

Sal′lied, rushed forth. From Lat. *salire*, to leap. Connected with *assail*, *assailant*, etc.

Secur′ing, making sure of. From Lat. *securus*, free from care.

Seg′ment, a portion (cut off). From Lat. *seco*, I cut.

Spike, to drive a nail into the touch-hole.

Took the advance′, led the way.

Transferred′, carried to another place. From Lat. *trans*, across, and *fero*, I carry.

Vet′erans, old soldiers. From Lat. *vetus* (*veteris*), old. Hence also *inveterate*.

1. Between eleven and twelve in the forenoon, on the memorable 18th of June, this dreadful and decisive action began with a cannonade on the part of the French, which was instantly followed by an attack commanded by Jerome, on the advanced post of Hougomont. The troops of Nassau, which occupied the wood round the chateau, were driven out by the French; but the utmost efforts of the assailants were unable to force the house, garden, and farm offices, which a party of the guards held with the most dauntless resolution. The French redoubled their efforts, and precipitated themselves in large numbers on the outside hedge, which screens the garden wall, not perhaps aware of the internal defence afforded by the latter. 2. They fell in great numbers at this point by the well-directed fire of the

defenders, to which they were exposed in every direction. The number of their troops, however, enabled them to take possession of the wood, and so to mask Hougomont for a time, and to push on with their cavalry and artillery against the British right, which formed in squares to receive them. The fire was incessant, but without apparent advantage on either side. The attack was at length repelled so far that the British again opened their communication with Hougomont, and that important garrison was reinforced by Colonel Hepburn and a body of the guards.

3. Meantime, the fire of artillery having become general along the line, the force of the French attack was transferred to the British centre. It was made with the most desperate fury, and received with the most stubborn resolution. The assault was here made upon the farmhouse of Saint Jean by four columns of infantry, and a large mass of cuirassiers, who took the advance. The cuirassiers came with the utmost intrepidity along the Genappe causeway, where they were encountered and charged by the English heavy cavalry; and a combat was maintained at the sword's point, till the French were driven back on their own position, where they were protected by their artillery. 4. The four columns of French infantry, engaged in the same attack, forced their way forward beyond the farm of La Haye Sainte, and, dispersing a Belgian regiment, were in the act of establishing themselves in the centre of the British position, when they were attacked by the brigade of General Peck, brought up from the second line by General Picton, while, at the same time, a brigade of British heavy cavalry wheeled round their own infantry, and attacked the French columns in flank at the moment when they were checked by the fire of

the musketry. The results were decisive. The French columns were broken with great slaughter, and two eagles, with more than two thousand men, were captured. The latter were sent off instantly to Brussels.

5. About this period the French made themselves masters of the farm of La Haye Sainte, cutting to pieces about two hundred Hanoverian sharpshooters, by whom it had been most gallantly defended. The French retained this post for some time, till they were at last driven out of it by shells. Shortly after this event, the scene of conflict again shifted to the right, where a general attack of French cavalry was made on the squares, chiefly towards the centre of the British right, or between that and the causeway. They came up with the most dauntless resolution, in despite of the continued fire of thirty pieces of artillery, placed in the front of the line, and compelled the artillerymen, by whom they were served, to retreat within the squares. 6. The enemy had no means, however, of securing the guns, nor even of spiking them, and at every favorable moment the British artillerymen sallied from their place of refuge, again manned their pieces, and fired on the assailants. The cuirassiers, however, continued their dreadful onset, and rode up to the squares in full confidence, apparently, of sweeping them before the impetuosity of their charge. The British squares stood unmoved, and never gave fire till the cavalry were within ten yards, when every shot told, — men rolled one way, horses galloped another, and the cuirassiers were in every instance driven back.

7. Blucher, faithful to his engagement with the Duke of Wellington, had, early in the morning, put in motion Bulow's division, which had not been engaged at Ligny,

to communicate with the British army, and to operate a diversion on the right flank and rear of the French. But Bulow, with the fourth Prussian corps, who had been expected by the Duke at or about the time the battle commenced, did not announce his approach — which he did by a distant fire — till half-past four in the afternoon.

8. It was now about six o'clock in the evening, and during this long series of the most furious attacks, the French had gained no success, save occupying for a time the wood around Hougoumont, from which they had been expelled, and the farmhouse of La Haye Sainte, which had been also recovered. The British, on the other hand, had suffered very severely, but had not lost one inch of ground, save the two posts now regained. Ten thousand men were, however, killed and wounded; some of the foreign regiments had given way, though others had shown the most desperate valor. The ranks were also thinned both by the actual fugitives and by the absence of individuals who left the bloody field for the purpose of carrying off the wounded, and some of whom might naturally be in no hurry to return to so fatal a scene. 9. About half an hour afterwards the second grand division of the Prussian army began to enter into communication with the British left, by the village of Ohain, while Bulow pressed forward from Chapelle Lambert, on the French right and rear, by a hollow, or valley, called Fischemont. It became now evident that the Prussians were to enter seriously into the battle, and with great force. Napoleon had still the means of opposing them, and of securing a retreat, at the certainty, however, of being attacked upon the ensuing day by the combined armies of Britain and Prussia. His celebrated Guard had not yet taken any part in the

conflict. With the aid of these tried veterans, he hoped to retrieve the fortunes of the day, and drive the British from their position.

10. About seven o'clock they were formed in two columns, under his own eye, near the bottom of the slope of La Belle Alliance. They were put under the command of the dauntless Ney. Bonaparte told the soldiers, and, indeed, imposed the same fiction upon their commander, that the Prussians whom they saw on the right were retreating before Grouchy. The Guard answered with shouts of "Long live the Emperor!" and moved resolutely forward, supported by four battalions of the Old Guard in reserve, who stood prepared to protect the advance of their comrades. A gradual change had taken place in the British line, in consequence of the repeated repulse of the French. 11. Advancing by slow degrees, the right, which, at the beginning of the conflict, presented a segment of a convex circle, now resembled one that was concave, the extreme right, that had been thrown back, being now rather brought forward, so that their fire, both of artillery and infantry, fell upon the flank of the French, who had also to sustain that which was poured on their front from the heights. The British were ranged in a line of four deep, to meet the advancing columns of the French Guard, and poured upon them a storm of musketry which never ceased an instant. The soldiers fired independently, as it is called, — each man loading and discharging his piece as fast as he could. 12. At length the British moved forward, as if to close round the heads of the columns, and at the same time continued to pour their shot upon the enemy's flanks. The French gallantly attempted to deploy, for the purpose of returning the discharge. But in their effort to do so, under

so dreadful a fire, they stopped, staggered, became disordered, were blended into one mass, and at length gave way, retiring, or rather flying, in the utmost confusion. This was the last effort of the enemy, and Napoleon gave orders for the retreat; to protect which he had now no troops left, save the four battalions of the Old Guard, which had been stationed in the rear of the attacking columns. These threw themselves into squares, and stood firm. 13. But at this moment the Duke of Wellington commanded the whole British line to advance, so that, whatever the bravery and skill of these gallant veterans, they were thrown into disorder, and swept away in the general rout, in spite of the efforts of Ney, who, having had his horse killed, fought, sword in hand, and on foot, in the front of the battle, till the very last.

Whilst this decisive movement took place, Bulow, who had concentrated his troops, and was at length qualified to act in force, carried the village of Planchenois, in the French rear, and was now firing so close on their right wing that the cannonade annoyed the British, who were in pursuit, and was suspended in consequence. 14. Moving in oblique lines, the British and Prussian armies came in contact with each other on the heights so lately occupied by the French, whose army was now in total and inextricable confusion and rout; and when the victorious generals met at the farm-house of La Belle Alliance, it was agreed that the Prussians, who were comparatively fresh, should follow up the chase, a duty for which the British, exhausted by the fatigues of a battle of eight hours, were totally inadequate.

Sir W. Scott.

INCIDENTS OF THE BATTLE.

Ardor, heat and eagerness. From Lat. *ardēre*, to burn.

Bu′gle, originally, *bugle-horn*. (In the sixteenth century *bugle* meant *a young ox*. From Lat. *bos*, an ox, dim. *boviculus*, *buculus*, Fr. *beugler*, to bellow.)

Can′ister, bullets, scraps of iron, etc., enclosed in a case; case-shot.

Car′bine, a short, light musket.

Con′template, look at thoughtfully.

Convul′sive, violent and involuntary (i. e. without, or against the will of, the person).

Cuirassier′, see page 135.

Exhort′ed, encouraged, urged, or strongly advised.

Grenadier′, a tall, strong foot soldier, formerly armed with grenades, a kind of bombshell thrown by the hand.

Hur′ricane, see page 234.

Iden′tify, to recognize; here, to imagine to be in the place of. From Lat. *idem*, the same, and *fio*, I become.

Inutil′ity, uselessness. From Lat. *in*, not, and *utilitas*, usefulness.

Involʹuntarily, without willing it. From Lat. *in*, not, and *voluntas*, will.

Momen′tous, highly important.

Rear, see page 215.

Reinforced′, strengthened by the addition of.

Stock, a kind of stiff cravat.

Unan′imously, with one mind. From Lat. *unus*, one, and *animus*, mind.

Unlim′bered, took off or undid the horses and carriage attached to the gun-carriage, in readiness for action.

Vol′leys, shots fired from a number of guns at once. From Fr. *volée*, a flight.

Vis′ors, the face-plate of a helmet, perforated to look through. From Fr. *visière*, from Lat. *vidēre*, to see.

War′ranted, authorized *or* gave them reasons for doing.

1. One of the most interesting narratives of personal adventure at Waterloo is that of Colonel Frederick Ponsonby, of the Twelfth Light Dragoons, who was severely wounded when the brigade to which he belonged attacked the French lancers in order to bring off the Union Brigade, which was retiring after its magnificent and memorable charge. The Twelfth, like those whom they rescued, advanced much farther against the French than prudence warranted. Ponsonby, with many others, was speared by some Polish lancers, and left

for dead upon the field. The narrative of the pang of an individual with whom we can identify ourselves always comes more home to us than a general description of the miseries of whole masses. His tale may make us remember what are the horrors of war, as well as its glories. 2. It is to be remembered that the operations to which he refers took place about three o'clock in the afternoon, and that the fighting went on for five hours more. After describing how he and his men charged through the French whom they first encountered, he states: —

"We had no sooner passed them than we were ourselves attacked, before we could form, by about 300 Polish lancers, who had hastened to their relief, the French artillery pouring in upon us a heavy fire of grape, though for one of our men they killed three of their own.

3. "In the struggle I was almost instantly disabled in both arms, losing first my sword, and then my reins; and, followed by a few men, who were presently cut down, no quarter being allowed, asked, or given, I was carried along by my horse, till, receiving a blow from a sabre, I fell senseless on my face to the ground.

"Recovering, I raised myself a little to look round, being at that time, I believe, in a condition to get up and run away, when a lancer, passing by, cried out, 'You rascal, not dead yet!' and struck his lance through my back. My head dropped, the blood gushed into my mouth, a difficulty of breathing came on, and I thought all was over.

4. "Not long afterwards — it was impossible to measure time, but I must have fallen in less than ten minutes after the onset — a skirmisher stopped to plunder me, threatening my life. I directed him to a small side-

pocket, in which he found three dollars, all I had; but he continued to threaten, and I said he might search me. This he did immediately, unloosing my stock and tearing open my waistcoat, and leaving me in a very uneasy position.

5. "He was no sooner gone than an officer, bringing up some troops, to which, probably, the skirmisher belonged, and happening to halt where I lay, stooped down and addressed me, saying he feared I was badly wounded. I said that I was, and expressed a wish to be removed to the rear. He said it was against their orders to remove even their own men; but that, if they gained the day (and he understood the Duke of Wellington was killed, and that some of our battalions had surrendered), every attention in his power would be shown me. 6. I complained of thirst, and he held his brandy-bottle to my lips, directing one of the soldiers to lay me straight on my side, and place a knapsack under my head. He then passed on into action, — soon, perhaps, to want, though not to receive, the like assistance, — and I shall never know to whose generosity I was indebted, as I believe, for my life. Of what rank he was I cannot say; he wore a great-coat. 7. By and by another skirmisher came up, full of ardor. He knelt down and fired over me, loading and firing many times, and conversing with me all the while." The Frenchman, with strange coolness, informed Ponsonby of how he was shooting, and what he thought of the progress of the battle. "At last he ran off, exclaiming: 'You will probably not be sorry to hear that we are going to retreat. Good-day, my friend.' 8. It was dusk," Ponsenby adds, "when two squadrons of Prussian cavalry, each of them two deep, came across the valley, and passed over me in full trot, lifting me from the ground,

and tumbling me about cruelly. The clatter of their approach, and the apprehensions they excited, may be imagined, but not described.

9. "The battle was now at an end, or removed to a distance. The shouts, the imprecations, the outcries, the discharge of musketry and cannon, were all over; and the groans of the wounded, all round me, became every moment more and more audible. I thought the night would never end. 10. Much about this time I found a soldier of the Royals lying across my legs; he had probably crawled thither in his agony, and his weight, his convulsive motions, and the air issuing through a wound in his side, distressed me greatly; the last circumstance most of all, as I had a wound of the same kind myself. It was not a dark night, and the Prussians were wandering about to plunder. 11. Several stragglers looked at me, as they passed by one after another, and at last one of them stopped to examine me. I told him, as well as I could, for I spoke German very imperfectly, that I was a British officer, and had been plundered already; he did not desist, however, but pulled me about roughly. 12. An hour before midnight I saw a man in an English uniform walking towards me. He was, I suspect, on a like errand, and came and looked in my face. I spoke instantly, telling him who I was, and assuring him of a reward if he would remain by me. He said he belonged to the 40th Regiment, but had missed it. He released me from the dying soldier, and being unarmed, took up a sword from the ground, and paced backwards and forwards, keeping guard over me. 13. Day broke; and at six in the morning some British were seen at a distance, and he ran to them. A messenger being sent off to Harvey, a cart came for me, I was placed in it and carried to the village of

Waterloo, a mile and a half off, and laid in the bed from which, as I understood afterwards, Gordon had been just carried out. I had received seven wounds; a surgeon slept in my room, and I was saved by excessive bleeding."

14. The late Major Macready also served at Waterloo, in the 30th Regiment. During the earlier part of the day he and his company were thrown forward as skirmishers in front of his brigade; but when the French cavalry began their attacks on the British right centre, he and his comrades were ordered to fall back. He says: —

"Before the commencement of the attack our company and the grenadiers of the 73d were skirmishing briskly on the low ground, covering our guns, and annoying those of the enemy. The line of French riflemen opposed to us was not stronger than our own; but on a sudden they were reinforced by numerous bodies, and several guns began playing on us with canister. Our poor fellows dropped very fast, and in about two minutes several of our officers were carried off badly wounded. 15. I was now commander of our company. We stood under the hurricane of small shot until Halkett sent to order us in, and I brought away about a third of the company; the rest were killed or wounded, and I really wonder how one of them escaped. As our bugler was killed, I shouted and made signs to move by the left, in order to avoid the fire of our guns.

16. "When I reached Lloyd's abandoned guns, I stood near them for a minute to contemplate the scene. It was grand beyond all description. Hougomont and its wood sent up a bright flame through the dark masses of smoke that overhung the field; beneath this cloud the French were indistinctly visible. Here a waving mass

of long red feathers could be seen; there, gleams as from a sheet of steel showed that the cuirassiers were moving; four hundred cannon were belching forth fire and death on every side; the roaring and shouting were indistinguishably commingled; together they gave me an idea of a laboring volcano. 17. Bodies of infantry and cavalry were advancing upon us, so I moved towards our columns, which were standing up in square. Our regiment and the 73d formed one; the 33d and 69th another; to our right, beyond them, were the Guards; and on our left the Hanoverians and German Legion of our division. As I entered the rear face of our square I had to step over a body, and, looking down, I recognized Harry Beere, an officer of our grenadiers, who, about an hour before, had shaken hands with me, laughing, as I left the column. The tears started to my eyes as I sighed out 'Poor Harry!' The tear was not dry upon my cheek when poor Harry was no longer thought of. 18. In a few minutes after, the enemy's cavalry galloped up, and crowned the crest of our position. Our guns were abandoned, and they formed between the two brigades, about a hundred paces in our front. Their first charge was magnificent. As soon as they quickened their trot into a gallop the cuirassiers bent their heads, so that the peaks of their helmets looked like visors, and they seemed cased in armor from the plume to the saddle. Not a shot was fired till they were within thirty yards, when the word was given, and our men opened suddenly upon them. The effect was magical. 19. Through the smoke we could see helmets falling, cavaliers starting from their seats with convulsive springs as they received our balls, horses plunging and rearing in the agonies of fright and pain, and crowds of the troopers dismounted, part of the squadron in

retreat, but the more daring backing their horses to force them on our bayonets. Our fire soon disposed of these. The main body re-formed in our front, and rapidly and gallantly repeated their attacks. 20. In fact, from this time — from four till about six — we had a constant repetition of these brave but unavailing charges. There was no difficulty in repulsing them, but our ammunition decreased alarmingly. At length an artillery wagon galloped up, emptied two or three casks of cartridges into our square, and then we felt comfortable.

21. "Though we constantly beat off our steel-clad opponents, we found much more troublesome the round-shot and grape, which all this time played upon us with terrible effect, and fully avenged the cuirassiers. As often as the volleys created gaps in our squares would the cavalry dash on; but they were uniformly unsuccessful. A regiment of light dragoons came up to our left and charged the cuirassiers. We cheered each other as they passed us; they did all they could, but were obliged to retire after a few minutes at the sabre. A body of Belgian cavalry advanced for the same purpose, but, on passing our square, they stopped short. 22. Our noble Halkett rode out to them and offered to charge at their head: it was of no use. The Prince of Orange came up and exhorted them to do their duty, but in vain. They hesitated till a few shots whizzed through them, when they turned about and galloped away with the rapidity that fear inspires. As they passed the right face of our square, the men, irritated by their cowardly conduct, unanimously took up their pieces and fired a volley into them.

23. "The enemy's cavalry were by this time nearly disposed of, and, as they had discovered the inutility

of their charges, they commenced annoying us by a spirited and well-directed carbine fire. While we were employed in this manner, it was impossible to see farther than the columns on our right and left, but I imagine most of the army were similarly situated. All the British and Germans were doing their duty. 21. About six o'clock I perceived some artillery trotting up our hill, which I knew, by their caps, to belong to the Imperial Guard. I had hardly mentioned this to a brother officer when two guns unlimbered within seventy paces of us, and, by their first discharge of grape, blew seven men into the centre of our square. Our men immediately reloaded, and kept up a constant and destructive fire. 22. It was noble to see our fellows fill up the gap after every discharge. I was much distressed at this moment. Having ordered up three of my company, they had hardly taken their station when two of them fell, horribly lacerated. One of them looked up in my face and uttered a sort of reproachful groan, and I involuntarily exclaimed, 'I couldn't help it.' We would willingly have charged these guns, but, had we deployed, the cavalry that flanked them would have made short work of us.

23. "The glow which fires one on entering into action had ceased; it was now to be seen which side had most real mettle and steadiness, and would hold out the longest. The Duke visited us frequently at this momentous period; he was coolness personified. As he crossed the rear face of our square, a shell fell amongst our grenadiers, and he checked his horse to see its effect. Some men were blown to pieces by the explosion, and he merely stirred the rein of his charger, apparently as little concerned at their fate as at his own danger. 24. No leader ever possessed so fully the confidence of

his men. Wherever he appeared, a murmur of 'Silence! stand to your front! here's the Duke!' was heard through the column, and then all was steady as on parade. His aides-de-camp, Colonels Canning and Gordon, fell near our square, and the former died within it. As he came near us late in the evening, Halkett rode out to him and represented our weak state, begging his Grace to afford us a little support. 'It 's impossible, Halkett,' said he. Our general replied, 'If so, sir, you may depend on the brigade to a man.'"

From CREASY'S *Decisive Battles of the World (adapted).*

EXERCISES. — 1. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) We can identify ourselves with an individual. (2) Had we deployed, the cavalry that flanked them would have made short work of us. (3) Crowned the crest of our position. (4) Some of our battalions had surrendered. (5) I was indebted to his generosity for my life. (6) They excited terrible apprehensions. (7) He and his company were thrown forward as skirmishers. (8) They were reinforced by numerous bodies. (9) "Silence! stand to your front!" (10) He was coolness personified.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: In the struggle I was almost instantly disabled in both arms.

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *description*, *misery*, *attention*, *progress*, *circumstance*, *distance*, *recognition*, *discovery*, *confidence*, *steadiness*.

5. Note carefully the endings of the following words: —

Fragrance	Preference	Recompense
Grievance	Prudence	Condense
Nuisance	Eminence	Suspense
Appearance	Eloquence	Immense
Temperance	Evidence	Expense

ARCTIC COSTUMES.

A WINTER DAY IN THE ARCTIC REGIONS.

Despatch', message.
Dulcin'ea, a sweetheart.
Face'tious, funny, witty.
Floe, a field of floating ice.
Hum'mock, a little irregular-shaped hill.
Incred'ible, not to be believed.
Inev'itable, not to be escaped
Monot'ony, see page 185.
P. M., afternoon. Lat. *post*, after, and *meridies*, noon.

Tem′perament, disposition, nature.
Tem′perature, degree of heat or cold.
Unaccount′able, not to be explained.
Ven′tilator, a contrivance for letting out bad air and letting in fresh (from the Lat. *ventus*, the wind).
View-halloo′, cry to encourage the hounds when a fox breaks away.
Vol′untary, acting from one's own free will.

1. Fancy the lower deck and cabins of a ship, lighted entirely by candles and oil-lamps; every aperture by which external air could enter, unless under control, carefully secured, and all doors doubled to prevent draughts. It is breakfast-time, and reeking hot cocoa from every mess-table is sending up a dense vapor, which, in addition to the breath of so many persons, fills the space between decks with mist and fog. Should you go on deck, (and remember you go from 50° above zero[1] to 40° below it in a few steps,) a column of smoke will be seen rising through certain apertures called ventilators, whilst others are supplying a current of pure air.

2. Breakfast done — and, from the jokes and merriment, it has been a good one — there is a general pulling on of warm clothing, and the greater part of the officers and men go on deck. A few remain to clean and clear up, arrange for the dinner, and remove any damp or ice that may have formed in holes or corners during the sleeping hours. 3. This done, a muster of all hands, called "divisions," takes place. Officers inspect the men and every part of the ship, to see that both are clean, and then they disperse to their several duties, which at this severe season are very light, — indeed, confined mainly to supplying the cook with snow to melt for water, keeping the fire-hole in the floe open,[2] and sweeping the decks. Knots of two or

three would, if there was not a strong gale blowing, be seen taking exercise at a distance from the vessels; and others, strolling under the lee, discuss the past and prophesy as to the future. 4. At noon, soups, preserved meats, or salt-beef, form the seamen's dinner, with the addition of preserved potatoes, a treat which the gallant fellows duly appreciate. The officers dine somewhat later,—two P.M. A little afternoon exercise is then taken, and the evening meal, of tea, comes next. If it is school night, the voluntary pupils go to their tasks, the masters to their posts; reading-men produce their books, writing-men their desks, artists paint by candlelight; and chess, or draughts, combined with conversation and a cigar or pipe, serve to bring round bed time again.

5. Monotony was our enemy, and to kill time our endeavor. Hardship there was none, for all we underwent in winter quarters in the shape of cold, hunger, or danger was voluntary. Monotony, I again repeat, was the only disagreeable part of our wintering at Griffith's Island. Some men amongst us seemed in their temperament to be much better able to endure this monotony than others; and others who had no source of amusement —such as reading, writing, or drawing —were much to be pitied. Nothing struck one more than the strong tendency to talk of home and England: it became quite a disease. We, for the most part, spoke as if all the most affectionate husbands, dutiful sons, and attached brothers had found their way into the Arctic expeditions.

6. We carried out, more I believe for amusement than from any idea of being useful, a plan which had suggested itself to the people of Sir James Ross's expedition when wintering in Leopold Harbor in 1848-49, that of enclosing information in collars

secured to the necks of the Arctic foxes, caught in traps, and then liberated. Several animals thus intrusted with despatches or records were liberated by different ships; but, as the truth must be told, I fear in many cases the next night saw the poor "postman," as Jack facetiously termed him, in another trap, out of which he would be taken and killed, his skin taken off, and packed away to ornament at some future day the neck of some fair Dulcinea. 7. As a "sub," I was admitted into this secret, or otherwise I with others might have accounted for the disappearance of the collared foxes by believing them busy on their honorable mission. In order that the crime of killing "the postman" may be recognized in its true light, it is but fair that I should say that the brutes, having partaken once of the good cheer on board or around the ships, seldom seemed satisfied with the mere empty honors of a copper collar, and returned to be caught over and over again. 8. Strict laws were laid down for their safety, such as an edict that no fox taken alive in a trap was to be killed. Of course no fox was after this taken alive; they were all unaccountably dead, unless it was some fortunate wight whose brush and coat were worthless; in such case, he lived either to drag about a quantity of information in a copper collar for the rest of his days, or else to die a slow death.

9. The departure of a "postman" was a scene of no small merriment. All hands, from the captain to the cook, were out to chase the fox, who, half frightened out of its wits, seemed to doubt which way to run; whilst loud shouts and roars of laughter, breaking the cold, frosty air, were heard from ship to ship, as the fox-hunters swelled in numbers from all sides, and those that could not run mounted some neighboring hummock

of ice, and gave a view-halloo, which said far more for robust health than for tuneful melody.

10. During the darker part of the winter, and when the uncertainty of the weather was such that, from a perfect calm and clear weather, a few hours would change the scene to a howling tempest and a thick drift, in which if one had been caught death must inevitably have followed, great care was necessary, in taking our walks, to prevent being so overtaken. Nevertheless, walks of seven or eight miles from the vessels were on several occasions performed, and a severe temperature faced and mastered with perfect indifference. 11. I remember well, on January 13, seeing mercury in a solid mass,[3] with a temperature of 40° below zero, and being one of a good many who had taken three hours' hard walking for mere pleasure.

We joked not a little at the fireside stories at home of bitter cold nights, and of being frozen to death on some English heath. It seemed to us incredible that people should be frost-bitten because the air was below freezing-point, whilst we should have hailed with delight the thermometer standing at zero, and, indeed, looked forward to such a state of our climate just as people in the temperate zone would to May sunshine and flowers. *Osborn.*

NOTES.

1. Zero is 32° below the freezing point of water; 40° below zero is therefore equivalent to 72° below freezing point.

2. A well is dug in the ice, a short distance from the ship, in order to afford a constant supply of water, in case of fire breaking out on board.

3. Mercury becomes solid, or *freezes*, at 39° below zero.

Composition. — Write an imaginary account of an Arctic Expedition from the following heads: 1. Object of the expedition. 2. The time of the year we started, and how the ship was

provisioned. 3. The route: what ocean crossed; what countries, provinces, straits, bays, and headlands passed, 4. Proposed destination. 5. Account of the Esquimaux. 6. Icebergs, seals, walruses, whales. 7. White bear shot. 8. How we passed the long winter days.

EXERCISES. — 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) A dense vapor. (2) A muster of all hands. (3) As a "sub," I was admitted into this secret. (4) Under the lee. (5) The good cheer on board. (6) Monotony was our enemy.

2. Parse and analyze the following sentence: The object of the Arctic expedition is to discover a passage from Behring's straits to Baffin s Bay.

3. Give the verbs or the adjectives derived from the following nouns: *secret, mission, crime, honor, law, number, melody, pleasure, tempest.*

4. With each of the first six of the above words make a sentence illustrating its proper use.

THE LOST EXPEDITION WITH FRANKLIN.

(*Verse printed as Prose.*)

Am'ethyst, a precious stone of a deep violet color.

Ber'yl, a precious stone of a greenish color.

Fraught, laden. (The word is connected with *freight.*)

Dirge, see page 262.

Shrines, records their names in writings that are sacred, and hence to be preserved. From Lat. *scrinium*, a chest to put writings in.

Lift — lift, ye mists, from off the silent coast, folded in endless winter's chill embraces; unshroud for us awhile our brave ones lost! let us behold their faces! In vain, — the North has hid them from our sight; the snow their winding-sheet, — their only dirges the groan of icebergs in the polar night, racked by the savage surges. No funeral torches, with a smoky glare, shone a farewell upon their shrouded faces; no

monumental pillar, tall and fair, towers o'er their resting-places. But northern streamers flare the long night through over the cliffs stupendous, fraught with peril of icebergs, tinted with a ghostly hue of amethyst and beryl. No human tears upon their graves are shed, — tears of domestic love or pity holy; but snowflakes from the gloomy sky o'erhead, down shuddering, settle slowly. Yet history shrines them with her mighty dead, the hero seamen of this isle of Britain; and, when the brighter scroll of *Heaven* is read, there will their names be written. *Hood*

GREAT CITIES.

VIENNA.

Banned, kept out by *proclamation*. From O. Ger. *ban*, a proclamation. Cognates: *Ban*, *banns* (of marriage); *abandon* (from O. Fr. *bandon*), a command.

Cathe'dral, the chief church in a diocese, containing the *throne* or *seat* of a bishop.

Conglom'erate, see page 172.

Con'gress, a conference or meeting for discussing important state business. From Lat. *con*, together, and *gradior* (*gressus*), I walk. Cognates: *Aggressive*, *aggression*; *digress*, *digression*.

Conver'ging, drawing together to one point. From Lat. *con*, together, and *vergo*, I incline. Cognates: *Convergent*, *convergence*.

Core, heart. From Lat. *cor* (*cordis*), the heart. Cognates: *Cordial*, *cordiality*.

Demol'ished, destroyed, thrown down.

Em'peror, in its full sense, a supreme ruler, one above law, and whose will has the force of law. Also, a ruler over inferior or subject sovereigns; as Queen Victoria is Empress of India. Lat. *imperator*, a commander.

Ep'ochal, making an epoch, or point of time. From Gr. *epochē*, a stop.

Frieze, in architecture the flat surface a little above the top or *capital* of a pillar or column often highly ornamental.

Gla'cis, gentle slope. From O. Fr. *glacier*, to slide; from Lat. *glacies*, ice. Cognates: *Glacier*, *glacial*.

Goth'ic ar'chitecture, in the

middle ages a term of contempt applied to a beautiful style of architecture, because it differed from the classic Greek and Roman styles. Its chief characteristic is the pointed arch.

Interven'tion, interference or *coming between*. From Lat. *inter*, between, and *venio* (*ventum*), I come. Cognates: *Convene, convention.*

Mus'sulman, another name for *Mohammedan*. (It is from an Arabic word, *Moslem*, submissive, with a Persian suffix, *-an*. The final syllable has nothing to do with our word *man*.)

Niche, a recess in a wall for a statue. From It. *nicchia*, a shell-like recess, *nicchio*, a shell; from Lat. *mytilus*, a sea-mussel.

Pilas'ter, a square pillar or column set within a wall. From Fr. *pilastre;* from Low Lat. *pilastrum*, a pillar.

Polytech'nic, relating to many arts. From Gr. *polys*, many, and *technē*, an art. Cognates: *Technical, technicality.*

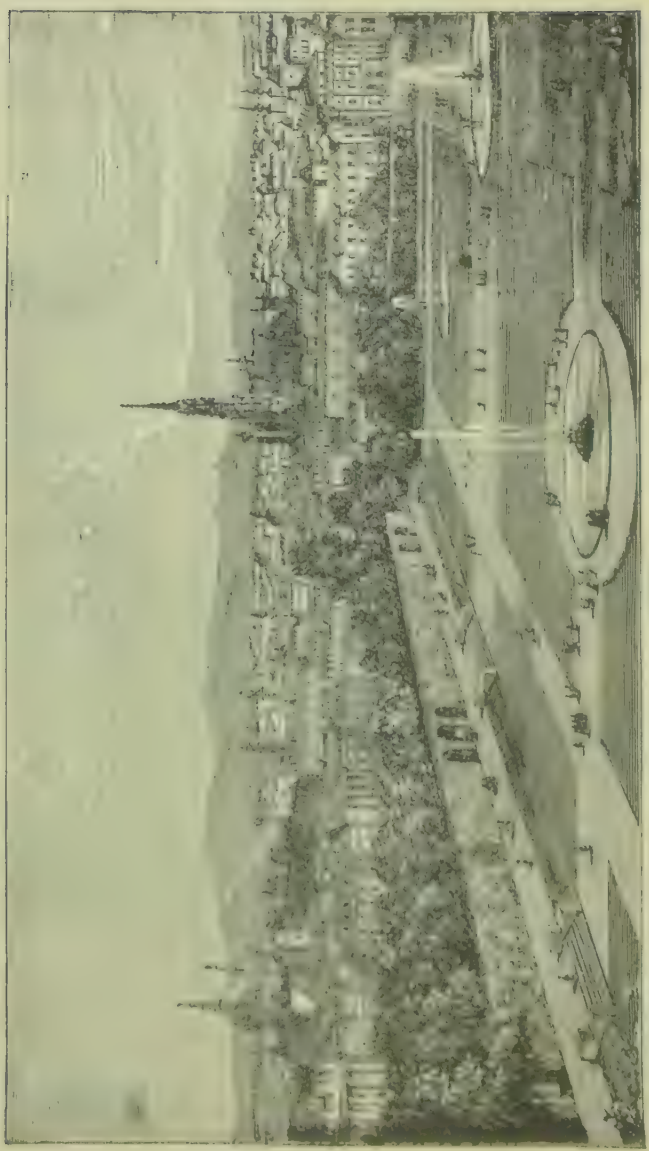
Prev'alent, most frequent. From Lat. *præ*, before, in comparison with, and *valeo*, I am strong. Cognates: *Prevail, prevalence.*

Prime'val, see page 234.

Sub'urbs, villages or districts lying near to a city.

Tor'tuous, crooked, winding. From Lat. *torqueo* (*tort-um*), I twist. Cognates: *Torment, torture.*

1. Vienna is the capital of that conglomerate of kingdoms, duchies, grand-duchies, and other states which goes by the name of the Austrian Empire. More lately, it is known as Austria-Hungary;[1] for the Hungarians compelled the Austrian government to grant them independence, and the Emperor of Austria was obliged to go to Pesth to be crowned there in the national fashion as King of Hungary. The city stands on a plain, surrounded by gently-sloping hills. It is called by the inhabitants, who are Germans, *Wien* (*Veen*), from a dirty little brook which flows through it into an arm of the mighty Danube. 2. Vienna consists of two parts,— the Old City and the New City. The Old City, or Inner Town, consists of narrow, tortuous, but well-paved streets, and high houses, and is the very core of the whole. The Outer Town contains thirty-six suburbs, which have been built in quite modern times. Between the old town and the suburbs



runs a ring of open land, varying in width, covered with grass, laid out in walks and avenues, and planted with acacia and chestnut trees. This space was formerly filled by the glacis of the fortifications, which were demolished in the year 1857. 3. The suburbs now existing are very much larger, and much better built, than the old suburbs. The latter were destroyed by the Turks at the last siege of Vienna, in 1683. At that time, there is no doubt but that Vienna would have fallen into the hands of the great Mussulman power, had it not been rescued by the courageous intervention of John Sobieski, king of Poland. In 1529, too, Vienna was besieged by the Turks, when the great Sultan, Soliman the Magnificent, delivered no fewer than twenty assaults. He was beaten back every time, and was at length compelled to retreat, after losing forty thousand men under the walls.

4. The streets of Vienna are broad and straight and sunny in the suburbs. They have one peculiarity which no other town in Europe possesses, with the exception of Carlsruhe, the capital of the grand-duchy of Baden. All of them run to a point in the centre of the city, — a point occupied by the magnificent cathedral, dedicated to St. Stephen, — like the spokes of a large wheel, or the converging threads of an enormous spider's web. 5. The Old Town is the most fashionable part, and in this respect Vienna differs from London, Paris, and other large towns. The tendency is for the wealthy classes in the great cities of Europe to move farther and farther towards the west; and the chief increase to London and Paris during the last hundred years has been made in that direction. Thus more fresh air is obtained, because in Europe the prevalent wind is the west wind, which blows, on an average, two days out of every three;

and in many instances the most beautiful parts of the country lie to the west of the great towns of Europe. But in Vienna the Old Town is not only the centre of business and pleasure, but it is also the place where the palaces of the Emperor and the Imperial family, the government offices, and the splendid mansions of the old nobility, are found.

6. The city is full of fine buildings and noble monuments. Conspicuous among them is the cathedral of St. Stephen, the patron saint of Vienna. It is one of the finest specimens of Gothic architecture in Germany. It is built in the form of a Latin cross, and its tower rises to the height of four hundred and sixty-five feet, — that is, more than sixty feet higher than the spire of Salisbury Cathedral, which is the loftiest in the British Isles.[2] 7. The favorite promenade of the inhabitants, who are eager lovers of pleasure and gayety, is the Prater, a beautiful park, on several islands which are formed by the arms of the river Danube. This park is part of the primeval forest which at one time occupied the site of Vienna; and here and there are splendid aged trees, towering over thickets and bowers so peaceful and silent, that a rambler might fancy himself hundreds of miles away from the abodes of men, instead of being in the heart of a great city.

8. The character of the architecture of Vienna is that of "sober and solid stateliness, without gloom." The modern houses are French in style; and most of them are noble and lofty, with bay-windows, ornamented friezes and pilasters, and statues in the niches. But though a beautiful, it is far from being a healthy town. While the death-rate of London is about twenty-two per thousand every year, that of Vienna is more than double; it averages about forty-nine per thousand. 9. Vienna

contains a splendid university, which was founded as early as 1365. It has about three thousand students, and one hundred and thirty professors. In addition to the university, the city also boasts an excellent polytechnic school, attended by more than a thousand students, who are taught by forty-five professors and lecturers. Not only are the applied sciences thoroughly taught in that school, but the laws and data of commerce, and the scientific principles on which each great industry is based, are carefully studied.

10. Vienna was twice occupied by the French, in 1805 and in 1809. The allied powers of Europe met here, at a congress in the end of the year 1814, and continued to sit till after the battle of Waterloo, on the 18th of June, 1815. Even before that epochal event, on the 13th of March, 1815, they issued a proclamation to Europe, declaring Napoleon Bonaparte an outlaw, — a man banned from the privileges and the protection of the laws both of war and of peace. 11. The situation of Vienna is admirably suited for commerce. Standing on the Danube, — the great highway between the east and the west of Europe, — it exchanges the goods of the one for the goods of the other. The Danube connects Western Germany with the Black Sea, with Constantinople, and with Asia. Vienna also stands at the centre of a large and much-frequented network of railways, which connect it both with the hard-working northwest and with the fertile southeast of the continent of Europe.

NOTES.

1. In A. D. 1438 Albert V. of Austria married the heiress of the kingdom of Hungary, and thus united the two crowns. It was the policy of the Austrian rulers to regard Hungary as a part of the Austrian dominions. This the Hungarians steadily

resisted, till in 1867, after the overthrow of Austria by Prussia the Emperor was crowned as a Hungarian king.

2. Salisbury cathedral is 400 feet high.

EXERCISES. — 1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 4 to 7 inclusive.

2. Write a short paper on "Vienna" from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the italicized words: (1) Narrow, *tortuous* streets. (2) The space was formerly filled by the glacis of fortifications. (3) *Courageous* intervention. (4) *Converging* threads. (5) The laws and *data* of commerce. (6) The prevalent wind. (7) *Mansions.* (8) *Conspicuous.* (9) *Promenade.* (10) This park is part of the *primeval* forest. (11) *Pilasters.* (12) The allied powers met at a congress. (13) That epochal event. (14) Banned from the protection of the laws.

4. Analyze and parse the following sentence: —

> "Dear as the wet diver to the eyes
> Of his pale wife, who waits and weeps on shore,
> By sandy Bahrein, in the Persian Gulf,
> Plunging all day in the blue waves, at night,
> Having made up his tale of precious pearls,
> Rejoins her in their hut upon the sands, —
> So dear to the pale Persians Rustum came."

5. Give as many words as you know derived from, or cognates with, the following English words: *other*,[1] *name*, *two*, *open*, *fill*,[2] *wide*, *fall*, *king*,[3] *back*, *lose*, *broad*.

6. Give as many derivatives as you know from the following Latin words: *pendeo*, I hang, compound with *de* and *in*; *habito*, I dwell (root *habit*, stem *habitat*); *struo*, I build (root *stru*, stem *struct*), compound with *con*, *de*, *in*, *ex*; *venio*, I come (root *ven*, stem *vent*), compound with *con*, *inter*, *sub*.

7. With each of the following words and phrases make a sentence illustrating its proper use: *waive* and *wave*; *ware* and *wear*; *Whig* and *wig*; *to take into consideration*; *to put to the proof*; *to grapple with a question*.

[1] *Or* (which is a contraction of *other*); *either*, *neither*.

[2] *Full*. [3] *Kin*, *kind*; *kinsman*, *kinsfolk*, etc.

ONE BY ONE.

Elate, to excite, lift up.

1. One by one the sands are flowing,*
   One by one the moments fall;
   Some are coming, some are going:
   Do not strive to catch them all.

2. One by one thy duties wait thee;
   Let thy whole strength go to each,
   Let no future dreams elate thee,
   Learn thou first what these can teach.

3. One by one, bright gifts from heaven,
   Joys are sent thee here below;
   Take them readily when given,
   Ready, too, to let them go.

4. One by one thy griefs shall meet thee;
   Do not fear an armèd band:
   One will fade as others greet thee,
   Shadows passing through the land.

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1. — Line 1: *One by one* should be read very slowly and distinctly. Line 3: Each *some* has a slight emphasis. Line 4: *All* is emphatic. VERSE 2. — Line 2: *whole* has the weight of emphasis. Line 3: Avoid the verse-accent on *Let*, and place the emphasis on *no* and *future*. Line 4: *first* and *these* are emphatic. VERSE 3. — Line 3: *readily* has a slight emphasis. VERSE 4. — Line 3: *One* and *others* balance each other, and are emphatic. Line 4: *Shadows* (= mere shadows) carries the weight of emphasis.

* In an hour-glass.

THE BATTLE OF HOHENLINDEN.[1]

Arrayed', drawn up in order of battle.
Can'opy, covering.
Chiv'alry, knighthood; gallant soldiers.
Com'batants, persons fighting.
Com'pass, grasp, comprehend.
Dun, dark, lead-colored.
Inces'sant, never ceasing or stopping.
Inex'tricable, not to be unravelled.
Mu'tilated, with limbs lopped off.
Oblit'erated, blotted out.
Pon'derous, heavy, and difficult to move.
Ravines', deep, narrow glens.
Rev'elry, disorderly pleasure.
Som'bre, dark.

1. Between the rivers Isar[2] and Inn[3] — two of the southern tributaries of the Danube — there extends for many leagues an enormous forest of sombre firs and pines. It is a dreary and almost uninhabited wilderness of wild ravines and tangled underwood. Two great roads have been cut through the forest, and many woodmen's paths penetrate it at different points. In the centre there is a little hamlet of a few miserable huts, called Hohenlinden.

2. In this forest, on the night of the 3d of December, 1800, Moreau,[4] with sixty thousand French soldiers, encountered the Archduke John with seventy thousand Austrian troops. The clocks upon the towers of Munich[5] had but just tolled the hour of midnight, when both armies were in motion, each hoping to surprise the other. A dismal wintry storm was howling through the tree-tops, and the smothering snow, falling rapidly, obliterated all traces of a path, and rendered it almost impossible to drag through the drifts the ponderous artillery. 3. Both parties in the dark, tempestuous night became entangled in the forest, and the heads of their columns met in various places. An awful scene of confusion, conflict, and carnage then

ensued. Imagination can hardly compass the horror of that spectacle. The dark midnight, the howlings of the wintry storm, the driving sheets of snow, the incessant roar of artillery and of musketry from a hundred and thirty thousand combatants, the lightning flashes of the guns, the crash of the falling trees as the heavy cannon-balls swept through the forest, the floundering of innumerable horsemen bewildered in the pathless snow, the shouts of onset, and the shriek of death, all combined to present a scene the like of which this world has probably seldom witnessed.

4. The darkness of the black forest was so intense, and the snow fell in flakes so thick and fast and blinding, that the combatants could with difficulty see each other. They often, indeed, fired at the flashes gleaming through the gloom. At times hostile divisions became intermingled in inextricable confusion; and, hand to hand, bayonet crossing bayonet, and sword clashing against sword, they fought with the ferocity of demons. 5. As the advancing and retreating hosts wavered to and fro, the wounded, by thousands, were left to perish on the hillsides and in dark ravines, with the drifting snow crimsoned with blood for their only covering.

At last the morning dawned through the unbroken clouds, and the battle raged with renewed fury. Nearly twenty thousand of the mutilated bodies of the dead and wounded were left upon the field, where they were soon buried out of sight under mounds of snow.

6. At the close of the battle the French were victorious at every point. The Austrians fled in dismay, having lost twenty thousand men in killed, wounded, and prisoners, one hundred pieces of artillery, and an immense number of wagons.

This terrific combat the poet Campbell has immor-

talized in his noble verses, which are now familiar wherever the English language is known.

7. On Linden, when the sun was low,
All bloodless lay the untrodden snow,
And dark as winter was the flow
Of Iser, rolling rapidly.

But Linden saw another sight,
When the drum beat at dead of night,
Commanding fires of death to light
The darkness of her scenery.

8. By torch and trumpet fast arrayed,
Each horseman drew his battle-blade,
And furious every charger neighed
To join the dreadful revelry.

Then shook the hills, with thunder riven,
Then rushed the steed to battle driven,
And, louder than the bolts of heaven,
Far flashed the red artillery.

9. But redder yet that light shall glow
On Linden's hills of stainéd snow,
And bloodier yet the torrent flow
Of Iser, rolling rapidly.

'T is morn, but scarce yon level sun
Can pierce the war-clouds, rolling dun,
Where furious Frank and fiery Hun[6]
Shout in their sulphurous canopy.

10. The combat deepens. On, ye brave,
Who rush to glory, or the grave!
Wave, Munich! all thy banners wave!
And charge with all thy chivalry!

Few, few shall part where many meet!
The snow shall be their winding-sheet,
And every turf beneath their feet
Shall be a soldier's sepulchre! Campbell

NOTES.

1. Hohenlinden, a small village in Upper Bavaria, between the Isar and the Inn.

2. Isar, or Iser, is a river which rises near the Tyrol, and falls into the Danube after a course of 180 miles. München, or Munich, the capital of Bavaria, stands on its banks.

3. Inn is the largest tributary of the Danube. It is, in fact, larger than the Danube itself before they meet. It rises in the Swiss Alps, and has a course of 285 miles. Innsbrück (which means *Innsbridge*), the capital of the Tyrol, stands on its banks.

4. Moreau was the greatest general of the French republic, with the exception of Bonaparte. He was born in 1763, and died in 1813.

5. Munich is the capital of Bavaria. It stands on the high Alpine plateau which slopes gradually to the north, at the height of 1700 feet above the level of the sea. It is a beautiful town, filled with all kinds of pictures (in buildings and in the open air), statues, fine buildings, and other objects of art.

6. Frank and Hun, poetical names for French and Austrians.

Composition. — Write a short account of The Battle of Hohenlinden from the following heads: 1. The French and Austrians meet on the 3d of December, 1800, near Hohenlinden. 2. A dense forest. 3. A storm of snow. 4. Fighting in the dark. 5. The sun in the morning. 6. Defeat of the Austrians.

Exercises. — 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) There extends an enormous forest. (2) Two great roads penetrate it. (3) The snow had obliterated all traces of a path. (4) An awful scene of carnage ensued. (5) They rush to glory, or the grave. (6) Rolled dark as winter. (7) The drum commanded fires of death to light the darkness. (8) You level sun. (9) Their sulphurous canopy.

2. Parse the words in the following sentence: At the close of the battle the French were victorious at every point.

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Give as many of the derivatives and compounds as you know of the following words: *habit*, *long*, *move*, *hope*, *winter*, *fall*, *draw*.

5. Give the verbs or the adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *wilderness*, *impossibility*, *imagination*, *combatants*, *combination*, *probability*.

6. With each of the italicized words in Exercise 5 make a sentence illustrating its proper meaning.

7. Write an exercise as directed in Exercise 4, page 32, and substitute *forest* and *artillery* for *earth* and *sea*.

8. Distinguish between the words in the following sets: —

enormous	huge	ponderous
dreary	desolate	dismal
obliterate	annihilate	destroy
awful	fearful	terrible
bewildered	amazed	confused
gleaming	flashing	glittering

HEROISM AND DISCIPLINE.

Clam'oring, calling and shouting impatiently.
Flank, side.
Mus'tered, met together in rank.
Pan'ic, great alarm and confusion.
Vet'eran, old and tried.

1. The "Birkenhead," a large troop-ship, was steaming along the coast of Africa in the month of February, 1852. She had on board about five hundred troops, with women and children; and her own crew numbered more than one hundred and thirty men. Her destination was Algoa Bay,[1] and the captain, who was eager to shorten the voyage, kept as near as he could to the shore.

2. In the dead of the night the vessel struck on a reef of sunken rocks, and in a few minutes it was plain

that no power could save her. A wild shriek was heard from the women's quarters. But Colonel Seton, of the 74th Highlanders, who was in command, called his officers around him, impressed upon them the necessity of keeping perfect order and complete silence among the men, and ordered the drum to beat to arms. 3. The soldiers mustered on the upper deck, fell into their ranks, and stood in silence, patiently awaiting the commands of their officers. Sixty men were told off for the pumps; the horses were thrown overboard; the boats were lowered, and the women and children were directed to enter them. There was neither hurry nor panic. Every one carried out his orders swiftly and firmly; and now not a murmur nor a cry was heard. The soldiers were as steady as if they were on parade. 4. When the cutter, full of women and children, had put off, the ship broke in two, and the stern began to sink. At this moment the captain of the vessel shouted, "All who can swim, jump overboard and make for the boats." But Colonel Seton and the other officers ordered the men to keep in their ranks; and the men thought of nothing but obedience. Officers and men together stood, shoulder to shoulder, looking death in the face with steady calmness, that they might give a chance of escape to the women and children. Young soldiers, who had been only a few weeks in the service, were as patient and as brave as their veteran comrades. 5. The ship was slowly sinking; and in a few moments these brave soldiers were washed into the sea, some sinking, some trying to swim ashore, and some clinging to any spars that were floating about. The boats picked up a few, but there was a danger of their being overloaded. The shore was only two miles off; but the boats could not land, as the surf which beat upon it ran so high

that even approach was dangerous. They rowed about till daylight, looking for a landing-place; and, when morning came, they were picked up by a schooner.

6. The rescued passengers now directed the captain of the schooner to the wreck, on which he found about forty men clinging to the upper parts of the masts, half dead with cold and fatigue. Some of the men had succeeded in swimming ashore; some were devoured by

sharks; most of them were drowned; and, of all the souls who had embarked in the ship, only one hundred and ninety-two were saved. But the men who went down have left behind them, for the benefit of all their countrymen, an example of calm courage and self-sacrifice — even to death — more worthy of reverence and admiration than the brilliant bravery shown upon a battle-field.

7. Sir Francis Hastings Doyle, himself a brave soldier, and who was also at one time Professor of Poetry in the University of Oxford, has written the following verses on the subject. We have to imagine that a survivor is speaking.

Right on our flank the crimson sun went down,
The deep sea rolled around in dark repose,
When, like the wild shriek from some captured town,
A cry of women rose.

8. The stout ship Birkenhead lay hard and fast,
Caught, without hope, upon a hidden rock;
Her timbers thrilled as nerves, when through them passed
The spirit of that shock.

And ever, like base cowards who leave their ranks
In danger's hour, before the rush of steel,
Drifted away, disorderly, the planks
From underneath her keel.

9. Confusion spread; for, though the coast seemed near,
Sharks hovered thick along that wintry sea-brink.
The boats could hold — not all; and it was clear
She was about to sink.

"Out with those boats, and let us haste away,"
Cried one, "ere yet yon sea the bark devours."
The man thus clamoring was, I scarce need say,
No officer of ours.

10. We knew our duty better than to care
For such loose babblers, and made no reply,
Till our good colonel gave the word, and there
Formed us in line — to die.

There rose no murmur from the ranks, no thought
By shameful strength unhonored life to seek;
Our post to quit we were not trained, nor taught
To trample down the weak.

11. So we made women with their children go.
The oars ply back again, and yet again;
Whilst, inch by inch, the drowning ship sank low,
Still under steadfast men.

What followed why recall? The brave who died,
Died without flinching in the bloody surf;
They sleep as well beneath that purple tide
As others under turf.

The Queen ordered a monument to be erected in Greenwich Hospital, in memory of the "heroic constancy and unbroken discipline" of those men who died as truly for their country as if they had died fighting for it on the field of battle.

NOTE.

1. Algoa Bay. — An extensive inlet in the east of Cape Colony, in South Africa. On one part of it stands the rising town of Port Elizabeth.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING THE POETRY.

1. Do not say, "Right *on* our flank;" but "Right on-our-flank."

2. Avoid the accent upon *of*; and say, "The spirit of *that* shock."

3. Do not say, "She *was* about to sink," but "She-was-about to sink."

4. Say "Out with-*those-boats*," and avoid accent upon *with*.

5. Avoid the verse-accent upon *than* and *such*, and say,

"We knew our duty *better* than-to-care
For *such* loose babblers."

6. Put a weighty and quiet emphasis upon *no* in the line,

"There rose *no* murmur from-the-ranks."

7. Avoid the verse-accent upon *were*, and say,

"Our *post to quit* we were *not* trained."

COMPOSITION. — Write a short paper on THE LOSS OF THE BIRKENHEAD from the following outline: 1. A troop-ship, with six hundred and thirty souls on board, is sailing to Algoa Bay. 2. She strikes on a hidden rock. 3. The Colonel orders the men to fall in. 4. The women and children are placed in the boats. 5. The ship breaks in two. 6. Only one hundred and ninety-two are saved.

EXERCISES. — 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) Her destination was Algoa Bay. (2) They were as steady as if they were on parade. (3) The young soldiers were as patient as their veteran comrades. (4) The rescued passengers directed the captain of the schooner to the wreck. (5) Right on our flank the crimson sun went down. (6) Her timbers thrilled as nerves. (7) There was in us no thought by shameful strength unhonored life to seek. (8) The men showed heroic constancy and unbroken discipline.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: In the dead of the night the vessel struck on a reef of sunken rocks.

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Select from the first three sections words that may be used either as nouns or as verbs, like *steam*, *coast*, *keep*, etc.

5. Give the verbs or the adjectives from which the following nouns come: *destination*, *impression*, *patience*, *obedience*, *service*, *success*, *constancy*, *confusion*.

THE RABBI AND HIS CHILDREN.

In fee, in possession.
Lack, be without.
Part, course.
Prevent'ing, anticipating what he might be going to say.
Rab'bi, the Jewish name for a teacher or professor of the Hebrew Law.
Thresh'old, door-step.

1. Rabbi Meir, the great teacher, sat on the Sabbath day in the School of the Law, and taught the people. During the day both his sons died, already young men, full grown, and well instructed in the law. His wife took them and bore them to an upper chamber, laid them on her bed, and spread a white sheet over their bodies. 2. In the evening Rabbi Meir came home. "Where are my sons," asked he, "that I may give them my blessing?" "They are gone into the School of the Law," was her reply. "I looked round me," replied he, "and I did not see them." She set before him a cup; he praised the Lord for the close of the Sabbath, drank, and then asked again, "Where are my sons, that they also may drink of the wine of blessing?" "They cannot be far off," said she, and set before him to eat. 3. When he had given thanks after the meal, she said, "Rabbi, allow me a question." "Say on," he answered. "Some time ago," said she, "one gave me jewels to keep for him, and now he asks them back again. Shall I give him them?" "My wife should not need to ask such a question," said Rabbi Meir. "Would you hesitate to give any one back his own?" "Oh, no," replied she; "but I did not like to give them back without your knowing beforehand." 4. Soon after, she led him to the upper chamber, stepped in, and took the covering off the bodies. "Oh, my sons," sobbed the

father, "my sons!" She turned herself away and wept. At last she took him by the hand and said: "Rabbi, have you not taught me that we must not refuse to give back what was intrusted to us to keep? See, the Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away: the name of the Lord be blessed." And Rabbi Meir repeated the words, and said, from the deepest depths of his heart, "Amen."

THE MOTHER'S JEWELS.

(This is a version of the same story, by Dr. Trench, the Archbishop of Dublin.)

5. In schools of wisdom all the day was spent;
His steps at eve the Rabbi homeward bent,
With homeward thoughts, which dwelt upon the wife
And two fair children who adorned his life.
She, meeting at the threshold, led him in,
And, with these words preventing, did begin:
"Ever rejoicing at your wished return,
Yet do I most so now; for since the morn
I have been much perplexed and sorely tried
Upon one point which *you* shall now decide.

6. Some years ago, a friend into my care
Some jewels gave — rich, precious gems they were;
And, having placed them in my charge, this friend
Did after neither come for them nor send
But left them in my keeping for so long,
That now it almost seems to me a wrong
That he should suddenly arrive to-day
And take the jewels that he left away.

What think you? Shall I freely yield them back,
And with no murmuring? — so henceforth to lack
Those gems myself, which I had learned to see
Almost as mine forever, — mine in fee."

7. What question *can* be here? Your own true heart
Must needs advise you of the *only* part;
That may be claimed again which was but lent,
And should be yielded with no discontent;
Nor, surely, can we find herein a wrong,
That it was left us to enjoy so long."

8. "Good is the word!" she answered; "may we now,
And evermore, that it is good allow!"
And, rising, to an inner chamber led:
And there she showed him, stretched upon one bed,
Two children pale: and he the jewels knew
Which God had lent him, and resumed anew.

R. C. Trench.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

The poem should be read with great slowness and solemnity. The questions should be put and the answers given with a quiet and reasoning gravity. In line 3, avoid the verse-accent on *upon*, and join *upon the wife* to the next line. In line 6, take care not to place the accent upon *with*, but make a pause after *and*, and run on *with these words*. In line 9 avoid the verse-accent upon *here*, and hasten on to *much*. In line 10 there should be a quiet emphasis on *one*. In line 18 make a pause after *jewels*, and make *that he knew* into one word. In line 20 take care not to put an accent upon *with*; it should be slurred over, and the emphasis placed upon *no*. In line 25 the emphatic words *that* and *but* balance each other at each end of the line. In line 28, *That it was left us* should be regarded as one word. In line 32, avoid the accent on *upon*, and put a slight emphasis on *one*.

COMPOSITION. — Tell the story of THE LENT JEWELS from the following heads: 1. While a learned Rabbi was teaching in the *School of the Law*, his two sons died. 2. His wife meets him at the door, and asks him a question. 3. His reply. 4. She takes him up-stairs, and shows him her jewels. 5. Her reflection. 6. His answer.

EXERCISES. — 1. Explain the following phrases: (1) What question *can* be here? (2) Homeward thoughts. (3) I have been sorely tried upon one point, which you must decide for me. (4) Your own heart must needs advise you of the only part. (5) God had resumed anew the jewels.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: Rabbi Meir, the great teacher, sat on the Sabbath day in the School of the Law.

3. Analyze the above sentence.

4. Select from the first three sections words which may be either nouns or verbs, like *school*, *people*, *look*, etc.

5. Give the verbs or the adjectives from which the following nouns are derived: *instruction*, *blessing*, *hesitation*, *thought*, *abode*, *trial*, *decision*, *allowance*, *resumption*.

6. Write out as many of the compounds of the following words as you know: *place*, *come*, *give*, *head*, *turn*, *decide*, *charge*, *take*.

7. Give the words that are derived from, or are cognate with, the words *school* and *law*.

A VOYAGE ROUND THE WORLD.

Part III.

Anon′, at once, immediately.

Commer′cial, used in commerce. From Lat. *commercium*, coming and going between two towns or nations; which itself comes from *con*, with, and *merx*, *mercis*, goods or merchandise.

Compact′, brought closely together.

Di′amond, the most precious of "precious stones," and the hardest of all substances. (It is a doublet or by-form — as is also the French *diamant* — of the word *adamant*, which comes from the Gr. *a*, not, and *damao*, I subdue. It hence means *the unsubduable*.)

Elec′tric, permeated or run through by electricity. From Gr. *ēlectron*, amber, which was the earliest substance that showed the chief phenomena of electricity.

Engineer′ing, the art — based upon mathematics — of building bridges, making tunnels, canals, and railways. From Lat. *ingenium*, skill.

En′terprising, given to great and courageous undertakings. From Fr. *entreprendre*, to undertake.

En′trepot′, place — *between* two other places — where goods are landed or left for transport to another place. The place where they are finally landed is called the *depot*.

Fru′gal, thrifty, saving, careful of small things. From Lat. *frux*, *-gis*, fruit.

Impreg′nable, that cannot be taken.

Lab′yrinth, a place full of perplexing windings.

Metrop′olis, the chief or leading city, — not necessarily the capital.

Moored, fastened, anchored.

Par′liament, see page 195.

Proclaimed′, publicly and formally announced. From Lat. *pro*, forth, and *clamo*, I call.

Profu′sion, great plenty. From Lat. *profundo*, I pour out, *profusus*, poured out.

Stag′nant, standing, not flowing. From Lat. *stagnum*, a pond.

Steppes, the Russian name for a vast plain (*stepj*).

Ter′ritory, land in the possession of a government. From Lat. *terra*, land.

Vis′tas, views, prospects.

1. North of Spain lies the rich country of "sunny France," — a land of corn and wine and oil, the richest and best cultivated land in Europe. It contains many large towns, and has an army of a million and a half of

soldiers. Paris, the capital, is one of the most beautiful cities in the world. The terrible defeat which France received from Germany in 1870 she has completely recovered from; and, her people being the most industrious and most saving people in the world, she is making rapid strides in prosperity every day. France is literally "a land of corn and wine and oil." In the country north of a line drawn through Orleans, grain and beet-root (for sugar) are grown; in the country between this line and a second line drawn from Bordeaux to Lyons, wine is the chief product of value; and south of this line olive trees, from which oil is obtained, flourish and abound. The poet wrote in the beginning of this century, — in the time of Napoleon; but France is *now* a "new-born France," and seems destined to be a peaceful, as she is a hard-working country.

> France, I hurry from thy shore;
> Thou art not the France of yore;
> Prosperous days thou hast in store.

2. Holland — a flat country, defended from the German Ocean by long and high dikes, a land of canals and long rows of stiff poplars, of trim gardens full of tulips, of quiet, sluggish rivers, of quaint old towns, of slow-mannered people, of ancient wealth earned from the spices of the far East, of trim barges, as "clean as a new pin," moored under the windows of the houses, of houses built on piles, so that it was said that the people of Amsterdam lived, "like rooks, on the tops of trees," of brave and hardy sailors, of diamond-merchants and diamond-cutters, of stagnant ditches and rapid windmills, of fertile meadows and fat cheeses — need not detain us. 3. Denmark is a little, industrious country. In 1864 the power of Prussia took from her

Schleswig-Holstein; and she is now a small kingdom with less than two millions of souls. Sweden, a country of pine forests and waterfalls, iron mines and busy seaports, can only be glanced at. It would take long to describe Russia, with her vast forests in the north,

DUTCH BARGES.

her broad steppes in the south, her wide, wheat-bearing plains, her salt lakes, her mines of iron, tin, silver, and gold in the Urals, and her vast rivers, which, by the aid of canals, connect the White Sea with the Black, the Caspian with the Baltic.

> Sweep by Holland like the blast;
> One quick glance at Denmark cast;
> Sweden, Russia, — all is past.

4. The central power of Germany stands like a square block in the heart of Europe, — facing France on the

west, Russia on the east, Austria on the south, and Sweden on the north. Since Bismarck came into power, under the present Emperor, Germany has been growing more and more compact. She broke the power and influence of Austria in Germany in 1866; she humbled the power of France in 1870; and in 1871 William III., king of Prussia, was proclaimed Emperor of Germany in the great French palace of Versailles. 5. She can place in the field over a million and a half of men, and more than a quarter-million of horses; her military power stands unquestioned in Europe. But military power, like fire, is a good servant, but a bad master; for the strength and prosperity of a nation depend on steady labor, frugal habits, and honest dealings. The poet warns the Germans against their philosophers, whom he calls "schoolmen"; but the philosophers have done their country little harm: it is from their own military zeal that the Germans have suffered most.

> Elbe nor Weser tempt my stay.
> Germany, beware the day
> When thy schoolmen bear the sway.

6. Now we have only to cross the little German Ocean to be in England again. Compared with many of the Continental countries, the ever-green turf of England is a constant refreshment to the eye. England is a land of gentle hills and fruitful valleys, of beautiful streams, of lovely gardens, of wide parks full of magnificent oaks and elms, of shady lanes and leafy nooks, of quiet villages, of country churches embosomed among trees, of pretty commons and neat cottages, of a law-loving and loyal people; and, above all, this land is HOME, — the home of our fathers!

7. In this voyage we have followed the poet James Montgomery, who has taken rather a zigzag course;

But we might have gone round the world, and yet never put our foot upon any but British territory, — for the sun "never sets" on the empire of Queen Victoria; "the roll of the British drum" encircles the globe with

A LITTLE BIT OF OLD ENGLAND.

a belt of military music; and it would be quite possible to have an electric wire round this planet with its ends resting upon British soil only. 8. Let us then make a voyage, visiting only British territory. Setting out from Toronto, we enjoy a delightful trip on the blue waters of Lake Ontario, — the last of the magnificent

chain dividing our country from the United States,—and reach at its end the "old limestone city," Kingston. Leaving its fort-environed harbor in the early morning, we seat ourselves near the bow of the boat, for we must not fail to make the best of the next few hours. During our long voyage around the globe we shall not sail on another river so broad and deep as the one which we

LACHINE RAPIDS.

are now entering. Nor shall we see again, till we return to the shores of our own country, such visions of varied and peaceful beauty as await us on passing through the Thousand Islands. For several hours our vessel seems to be in a labyrinth of islands. Here is one only a few feet across, a mere rock, with a single stunted cedar growing from a crevice in its side. There is one containing hundreds of acres. Forests of dense foliage are

on that island to our left, while its nearest neighbor is bare, or covered only with stunted shrubs. Before as and behind is a panorama of ever varying beauty. 9. But these charming scenes are not all that the St. Lawrence has to offer us. We have scarcely finished our exclamations of delight at the wondrous vistas through which we have passed, ere we begin to anticipate the excitement of sweeping down the fearful rapids that lie before us. Rushing down the Long Sault, whirling enraptured over the foaming waters of the Cedars, only prepares us for the fearful leap at Lachine.

10. We do not breathe as our boat pitches past the

VICTORIA BRIDGE, MONTREAL.

rocks into the boiling pool, but we are soon in smooth water, and have barely time to look at the spires and prominent buildings of Montreal, hanging from the sides of its Royal Mountain, ere we are floating under the Victoria Tubular Bridge, the longest in the world.

11. We take an Allan steamer here, and, passing the historic Quebec, with thoughts of the eventful morning when Wolfe and his little army scaled those heights, we sail on out to the Atlantic, which we cross. Landing in the "old land" at Liverpool, we are amazed at its miles of docks, but soon hasten on by train to London, the "Metropolis of the World."

12. Leaving London, we run down the Channel, through

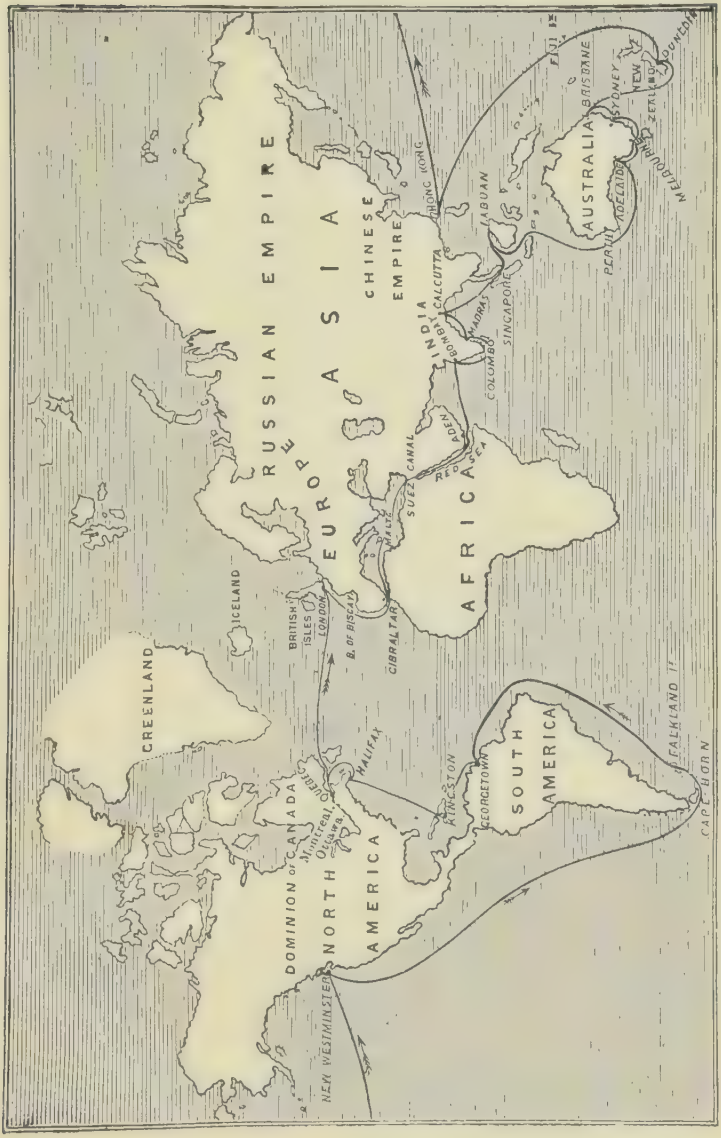
the Bay of Biscay, the stormiest sea in Europe, and reach Gibraltar, the key to the Mediterranean. Gibraltar is an impregnable fortress, and a station for military and naval stores. Sailing through the western basin of the

HARBOR OF VALETTA, MALTA.

Mediterranean, under deep-blue skies and through deep-blue water, we reach Malta, and drop anchor at Valetta. Here we can purchase the most delicious oranges, figs, and olives for a mere trifle. Malta is a great "place of arms," and the key to the eastern Mediterranean.

13. Now we make straight for the Suez Canal, — a feat of engineering performed under the greatest difficulties by M. de Lesseps. Through the canal, and down the hot passage of the sea which lies between Arabia and Africa, we reach the rainless Aden, — another British station, and the key to the Red Sea. Across the Indian Ocean, and we are at Bombay, the best harbor in India, and rapidly rising to be the first commercial port. 14. Here we can buy cotton, silk, indigo, opium, and all kinds of spices. Coasting southward we reach Colombo, the capital of Ceylon, — the poor harbor of a rich island. Pearls, all kinds of spices, and beautiful work in precious stones, hard woods, and ivory, can be purchased here. North to Madras, where there is no harbor: we must land in small boats, piloted through the angry surf which rages eternally upon its shores. Madras stands next to Bombay in commercial importance.

15. The mouth of the Hooghly next receives us, and we are steaming up to Calcutta. Palms, acacias, and other tropical trees, line the banks in thick profusion. And so we reach Calcutta, the capital of Bengal and of India. Sailing down again, we steam for the British settlement at the south end of the peninsula of Malacca, called Singapore. This is the great entrepot of Europe and the East, where the manufactures of the one are exchanged for the growths of the other. 16. Now we steer for Labuan, a small island off the coast of Borneo, where there is an extensive bed of excellent coal; and striking south to Australia, we pass the small town of Perth, and make for Adelaide, the capital of South Australia. Here we can buy plenty of wool and grain. East of it stands Melbourne, the largest town on that small continent. Farther north is Sydney, the capital of New South Wales, the oldest city in Australia; with


RUSSIAN EMPIRE
EUROPE
ASIA
CHINESE EMPIRE
HONG KONG
LABUAN
INDIA
BOMBAY
CALCUTTA
MADRAS
COLOMBO
SINGAPORE
AUSTRALIA
BRISBANE
SYDNEY
NEW ZEALAND
AUCKLAND
MELBOURNE
PERTH
ADELAIDE
FIJI IS.
TONGA
AFRICA
RED SEA
SUEZ CANAL
CAPE TOWN
ICELAND
GREENLAND
BRITISH ISLES
LONDON
B. of BISCAY
GIBRALTAR
MALTA
DOMINION of CANADA
QUEBEC
MONTREAL
OTTAWA
HALIFAX
NEW WESTMINSTER
NORTH AMERICA
KINGSTON
GEORGETOWN
SOUTH AMERICA
FALKLAND I.S
CAPE HORN

pretty villas and neat cottages standing in groves of bananas and orange trees and acacias. North again, and we come to Brisbane, the capital of Queensland, a growing and enterprising town.

17. Crossing now to New Zealand, we arrive at Dunedin, the largest town in this prosperous colony. Anon we strike due north, pass the Fiji Islands, a volcanic group which now belongs to us, and, steering northwest, reach the small island of Hong-Kong, at the mouth of the Canton River. This was taken from the Chinese in 1843. We might now sail right across the broad Pacific, and land at Victoria, the capital of British Columbia. From that point to Halifax, on the Atlantic, is a distance of more than three thousand miles, and all on British soil. But on the sea the Briton is everywhere at home; and so we round Cape Horn, call at the Falkland Islands for coal, and make for Georgetown, the capital of British Guiana. 18. We can next call at Kingston, the capital of Jamaica, where rum, sugar, tobacco, and coffee are daily shipped. From that point we can steam to Halifax, the capital of Nova Scotia. Here we can take the train for home, calling on our way at Ottawa, the capital of the Dominion, to look at the magnificent Parliament buildings.

THE LAND WE LIVE IN.

ADDRESS TO THE NEW ENGLAND SOCIETY OF MONTREAL, ON DECEMBER 22, 1860, THE ANNIVERSARY OF THE LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

Chat′tel, an article to be bought and sold.
Eu′logize, speak very highly of.
Expedi′tious, requiring little time.
Gra′dients, gradual deviations of the surface from a level plane.
Lin′eament, feature.
Lu′bricates, makes smooth.
Luxu′riating, taking great comfort.
Macad′amizes, hardens.
Sal′utary, wholesome, advantageous.

1. I congratulate you and the Society over which you preside, Mr. President, on the recurrence of your favorite anniversary; and not only for your own gratification as our fellow-citizens of Montreal, but in the best interests of all humanity in the New World, let us join in hope that not only the sons of New England, but Americans from all other States settled amongst us, will long be able to join harmoniously in the celebration of the arrival in Massachusetts Bay of the first shipload of emigrants on this day, 240 years ago, — a ship which wafted over the sea as large a cargo of the seeds of a new civilization as any ship ever did, since the famous voyage recorded in the legends of the Greeks. 2. It is rather a hard task this you have set me, Mr. President, of extolling the excellences of "the land we live in," — that is, praising ourselves, — especially at this particular season of the year. If it were midsummer instead of midwinter, when our rapids are flashing, and our glorious river sings its triumphal song from Ontario to the ocean, — when the northern summer, like the resurrection of the just, clothes every lineament of the landscape in beauty and serenity, — it might be easy to say fine things for ourselves, without conflicting with the evidence of our senses. 3. But to

eulogize Canada about Christmas time requires a patriotism akin to the Laplander, when, luxuriating in his train-oil, he declares that "there is no land like Lapland under the sun." Our consolation, however, is that all the snows of the season fall upon our soil for wise and providential purposes. The great workman, Jack Frost, wraps the ploughed land in a warm covering, preserving the late-sown wheat for the first ripening influence of the spring. He macadamizes roads, and bridges brooks and rivers, better than could the manual labor of 100,000 workmen. 4. He forms and lubricates the track through the wilderness by which those sailors of the forest, the lumbermen, are enabled to draw down the annual supply of one of our chief staples to the margins of frozen rivers, which are to bear their rafts to Quebec at the first opening of navigation. This climate of ours, though rigorous, is not unhealthful, since the average of human life in this Province is seven per cent higher than in any other portion of North America; and if the lowness of the glass does sometimes inconvenience individuals, we ought to be compensated and consoled by remembering of how much benefit these annual falls of snow are to the country at large. So much for our climatic difficulties.

5. Let me now say a word or two on our geographical position. Whoever looks at the map — a good map is an invaluable public instructor — not such maps as we used to have, in which Canada was stuck away up at the north pole, but such maps as have lately appeared in this country — will be tempted to regard the Gulf of St. Lawrence as the first of the Canadian lakes, and our magnificent river as only a longer Niagara or Detroit. His eye will follow up through a part of the tidal volume of that river the same parallel of latitude — 50° — which intersects Germany, and cuts through the British

Channel; if he pursues that parallel, it will lead to the valley of the Saskatchewan, and through the Rocky Mountain passes, to the rising settlements of our fellow-subjects on the Pacific. 6. It will lead him through that most interesting country, the Red River territory, 500,000 square miles in extent, with a white population of less than 10,000 souls, — a territory which ought to be "the Out-West" of our youth, — where American enterprise has lately taught us a salutary, though rebuking lesson; for while we were debating about its true limits and the title by which it is held, they were steaming down to Fort Garry, with mails and merchandise from St. Paul. The position of Canada is important as a roadway to the Pacific; the distance from a point on our side of Lake Superior to navigable water on the Fraser River has been shown to be not more than 2,000 miles, — about double that from Boston to Chicago. 7. A railway route, with gradients not much, if at all, exceeding those of the Vermont Central, or the Philadelphia and Pittsburg, has been traced throughout by Mr. Fleming, Mr. Hind, Mr. Dawson, Captain Synge, and Colonel Pailisser; and though neither Canada nor Columbia is able of itself to undertake the connection, we cannot believe that British and American enterprise, which risked so many precious lives to find a practicable passage nearer to the pole, will long leave untried this safest, shortest, and most expeditious overland Northwest Passage. 8. We cannot despair that the dream of Jacques Cartier may yet be fulfilled, and the shortest route from Europe to China be found through the valley of the St. Lawrence. Straight on to the west lies Vancouver's Island, the Cuba of the Pacific; a little to the north, the Amoor, which may be called the Amazon of the Arctic; farther off, but in a right

line, the rich and populous Japanese group, which for wealth and enterprise have been not inaptly called the British Isles of Asia. These, Mr. President, are some of our geographical advantages; there are others that I might refer to, but on an occasion of this kind I know the fewer the details the better.

9. Now, one word more as to our people: the decennial census, to be taken next month, will probably show us to be nearly equal in numbers to the six States of New England, or the great State of New York, deducting New York City. An element, over a third but less than one half of that total, will be found to be of French Canadian origin; the remainder is made up, as the population of New York and New England has been, by British, Irish, German, and other immigrants, and their descendants. 10. Have we advanced materially in the ratio of our American neighbors? I cannot say that we have. Montreal is an older city than Boston, and Kingston an older town than Oswego or Buffalo. Let us confess frankly that in many material things we are half a century behind the Americans, while at the same time — not to give way altogether too much — let us modestly assert that we possess some social advantages which they, perhaps, do not. For example, we believed until lately — we still believe — that such a fiction as a slave, as one man being another man's chattel, was wholly unknown in Canada.* And we still hope that may ever continue to be our boast. 11. In material progress we have something to show, and we trust to have more. All we need, Mr. President, mixed up and

* An allusion to the recent case of Anderson, arrested and tried in Upper Canada on the charge of killing his master while attempting to escape in Missouri. He was finally acquitted by the Upper Canada Court of Appeal, but not until a writ of *habeas corpus* had been issued from the Queen's Bench at Westminster.

divided as we naturally are, is, in my humble opinion, the cultivation of a tolerant spirit on all the delicate controversies of race and religion,—the maintenance of an upright public opinion in our politics and commerce,—the cordial encouragement of every talent and every charity which reveals itself among us,—the expansion of those narrow views and small ambitions which are apt to attend upon provincialism,—and with these amendments, I do think we might make of this "land we live in" one of the most desirable residences in the world for Christian men who wish to bring up their children in the love and fear of God and the law.

T. D. McGee.

NOTE.

Thomas D'Arcy McGee was born on the 13th day of April 1825, at Carlingford, Ireland. At the age of seventeen he left his native country and arrived at Boston, where two years afterwards he was made editor of the Boston Pilot. The year following he became editor of the Dublin Freeman's Journal, and returned to Ireland. At the early age of twenty, owing to the genius he displayed as a poet, orator, and journalist, he took a place of first rank in the Irish press. He again removed to America in 1848, and resumed journalism. In the course of a few years he made Montreal his place of residence, where he was elected member of the Canadian Parliament. In 1862 he was made President of the Council. About this period he published his "History of Ireland." In 1867 he entered the Dominion Parliament. He opposed Fenianism, and made enemies thereby, and was shot dead one night on his way from the House.

Exercises. — Explain the following expressions: 1. Geographical advantages. 2. Cargo of the seeds of a new civilization. 3. River sings its triumphal song. 4. Like the resurrection of the just. 5. Lowness of the glass. 6. Attend upon provincialism. 7. Decennial census. 8. Such a fiction as a slave. 9. The cultivation of a tolerant spirit on all the delicate controversies of race and religion.

SUNSET.

Nature has a thousand ways and means of rising above herself, but incomparably the noblest manifestations of her capability of color are in the sunsets among the high clouds. There is then no limit to the multitude, and no check to the intensity, of the hues assumed. The whole sky, from the zenith to the horizon, becomes one molten, mantling sea of color and fire; every black bar turns into massy gold, every ripple and wave into unsullied, shadowless crimson, and purple, and scarlet, and colors for which there are no words in language and no ideas in the mind, — things which can only be conceived while they are visible, — the intense hollow blue of the upper sky melting through it all, — showing here deep and pure lightness, there modulated by the filmy, formless body of the transparent vapor, till it is lost imperceptibly in its crimson and gold.

Ruskin.

"TILL THE DOCTOR COMES."

Accidents of various kinds occur almost every day, and much suffering has to be endured. Life is often sacrificed, because neither the injured one nor his companions have any knowledge of the means to be adopted for relief. To supply this knowledge in regard to some of the common accidents is the object of the following rules and suggestions.

The first rule, and it is an important one, applies to those who would render help. It is, *keep calm and self-possessed.* "Hasten slowly."

Bleeding and how to Arrest it.

There are two simple methods of arresting bleeding.

First, By *elevating* the wounded part. If the wound is in the head, or neck, put the patient in a sitting or standing posture, unless fainting comes on, and then he must be put in a recumbent position. If the wound is in the foot, leg, hand, or arm, place the patient on his back, and raise the limb as high as possible above the level of the body. In many cases this plan is all that is necessary.

Second, By *pressure*, which is intended to close the vessels from which the blood comes. The *place* where the pressure is to be applied is determined by the character of the blood escaping; if it is of a dark color and flows in a steady stream, it is *venous*, and pressure should be made *upon* the wound. If it is bright red and comes in jets or spurts, it is *arterial*, and pressure must be made *above* the wound, or between it and the heart.

Fig. 1. Jet or spurt of blood from a wounded artery. This jet will appear once for each pulsation or beat of the heart.

There are two methods of applying pressure.

First, The fingers or hand, or a solid pad, folded handkerchief, cap, or stone, held in the hand, is pressed upon the wound, or the course of the artery, with sufficient force to arrest the flow.

Second, If a limb is wounded and the blood is venous, place a pad *upon* the wound; if arterial, place

it upon the *course of the artery;* then over the pad and around the limb tie a piece of rope, cord, or handkerchief, and beneath this insert a piece of stick, and twist it until the bleeding ceases. (Fig. 2.) If the course of the artery is unknown to the operator, omit the pad, and proceed as above described without it.

FIG. 2.

Should it be necessary to remove the patient to his home or a hospital, do so gently, and watch the wound closely. If any oozing commences, increase the pressure. After reaching his destination, keep him quiet "till the doctor comes."

FRACTURED OR BROKEN BONES, AND WHAT TO DO WITH THEM.

Symptoms. — When a bone is broken, a snap is generally felt or heard by the patient, followed by severe pain. A fractured limb is shortened and deformed, and may be moved in almost any direction, except when only one bone of a pair is broken. When moved, the broken ends of the bone grate against each other. The popular belief, that there can be no fracture if the fingers or toes of the limb can be moved, is erroneous. "Till the doctor comes," a broken bone should be kept at rest, in an easy position. But if the patient has to be moved, to be taken to a place of shelter, his home, or a hospital, it is necessary to *secure* the fragments, in order to prevent their sharp ends tearing into the flesh, or penetrating the skin, and thus adding to the fracture a dangerous complication.

To accomplish this, one person will extend the limb

until its full length is attained, and the deformity gone; another will apply temporary splints, such as splinters of wood, bark, twigs, folded coats or waistcoats, and tie them firmly around the limb with handkerchiefs, shoulder braces, pieces of harness, or ropes of twisted hay or straw. (Fig. 3.) If the fractured limb is a leg, fasten it to the sound one, and both to a board beneath. (Fig. 4.) Thus fixed, the patient may be taken to his destination to await a surgeon's attendance.

FIG. 3.

FIG. 4.

The severe pain of broken ribs may be relieved by fastening around the chest a wide cotton or woollen roller.

POISONED BITES.

The bites of mad dogs and poisonous snakes are generally inflicted on the limbs, and should be treated by tying a cord or handkerchief around the limb above the wound and twisting it (Fig. 2), in order to prevent the poison entering the general circulation. The poison should be sucked out, or destroyed by applying to the wound a red-hot iron, strong nitric acid, or caustic. In the case of snake-bites stimulants should be freely given.

POISONS.

As a precautionary measure, keep every bottle, box, or parcel of medicines, or chemicals, labelled, and out of

the reach of children. In every case in which a poisonous substance has been swallowed, induce free vomiting with the least possible delay by tickling the back of the mouth with a feather or finger, or by giving large quantities of lukewarm water, containing a couple of teaspoonfuls of mustard or common salt, and in addition use the following remedies.

Special Poisons.	Remedies.
All acids, such as sulphuric, nitric, &c.	Powdered chalk, lime water, magnesia, soap-suds.
Potash, lye, hartshorn.	Vinegar diluted with water, lemon-juice, sour cider.
Opium, laudanum, paregoric, morphia.	Prevent sleep for twelve or fourteen hours, keep the patient walking, slap the body briskly, give strong tea and coffee.
Arsenic, rat poison, paris-green, &c.	Give milk and raw eggs abundantly, lime-water, or flour and water.
Bug poison, corrosive sublimate.	White of egg mixed with water frequently, and milk in the intervals.
Tobacco.	Strong tea and coffee, and hot applications to the body and limbs.

Insensibility.

Persons become giddy and fall insensible from two directly opposite causes.

First, A *deficiency* of blood in the brain, or fainting, indicated by death-like pallor, and a cold, clammy skin

Treatment. — Put the person upon the back, with the head as low as the body, or even lower than it, dash cold water in the face, and give access to plenty of fresh air.

Second, *Excess* of blood in the brain, or apoplexy. The face is livid, the eyelids puffed, the breathing difficult.

Treatment. — Loosen everything around the neck, place the person in a sitting position, and apply cold water to the head "'till the doctor comes."

Burns and Scalds.

These should always be regarded as very serious accidents, especially when considerable extent of surface is involved, even if the depth of the injury is but trifling.

The indications of treatment are: —

First, *Stop the fire.* Immediately envelop the sufferer with a shawl, coat, piece of carpet, anything to exclude the air, and thus extinguish the flame. Next pour on plenty of cold water; and do the same in case of scalds, for the cinders or boiling water in the clothing may be eating into the flesh.

Second, *Remove the clothing.* With a sharp knife or pair of scissors cut through all the garments, so that they will readily fall off the body. Never *undress* one burned or scalded, for in so doing large portions of injured skin are often removed, and in consequence suffering is increased, and the hope of recovery lessened.

Third, *Put the patient into a warm bed, and exclude the air from the wounds.* To exclude the air apply cotton rags or cotton wool saturated with carron oil (equal parts of linseed oil and lime-water); or warm milk and water (equal parts) with a teaspoonful of baking-soda to the quart; or fine flour.

Fourth, *Give the patient no stimulant but hot coffee and milk* "till the doctor comes."

J. W. McLaughlin, M. D.

QUESTIONS. — 1. How can you decide whether blood is flowing from an artery or a vein? 2. In which case is the blood coming from the heart? 3. Why should pressure be made *above* the wound when blood comes in jets? 4. Why should a bleeding leg or arm be raised? 5. How can you decide whether a bone is broken or not? 6. What should be done before the doctor comes in case of a fracture? 7. How may the pain of a broken rib be relieved? 8. What should be done immediately in case of a poisoned bite? 9. What special treatment should be used in case of snake bites? 10. Where should bottles containing poison be kept? 11. What should be done as soon as possible when poison has been swallowed? 12. Name two easy ways of causing vomiting. 13. Give the two causes of insensibility, and tell how to act in such cases. 14. How would you put out the fire in a person's clothing? 15. Why is it dangerous to take off the clothing in the ordinary way in case of burns or scalds?

CANADIAN CONFEDERATION.

Alle'giance, duty to a government.

Bond'ed goods, goods passed free of duty through one country, intended for use in another.

Cab'inet, the ministry or advisers of the Crown.

Fed'eral U'nion, a union with one supreme government to attend to the interests of the country as a whole, but with local legislatures to deal with the questions affecting the individual provinces or states forming the union.

Haz'ardous, full of risks.

Le'gislative U'nion, a union without provision for local parliaments.

Lin'eage, descent, family.

Negotia'tions, treaties.

Omnis'cience, boundless knowledge, God.

Probabil'ities, chances.

Recipro'city Treaty, a treaty between the United States and Canada for the free interchange of the productions of both countries; made in 1854, repealed in 1866.

1. If we wish to be a great people; if we wish to form a great nationality, commanding the respect of the world,

able to hold our own against all opponents, and to defend those institutions we prize; if we wish to have one system of government, and to establish a commercial union, with unrestricted free trade, between people of the five Provinces, belonging, as they do, to the same nation, obeying the same sovereign, owning the same allegiance, and being, for the most part, of the same blood and lineage; if we wish to be able to afford to each other the means of mutual defence and support against aggression and attack; — this can only be obtained by a union of some kind between the scattered and weak Provinces composing British North America. 2. The very mention of the scheme is fitted to bring with it its own approbation. If we are not blind to our present position, we must see the hazardous situation in which all the great interests of Canada stand in respect to the United States. I am no alarmist; I do not believe in the prospect of immediate war; I believe that the common sense of the two nations will prevent a war; still we cannot trust to probabilities. The government and legislature would be wanting in their duty to the people if they ran any risk. 3. We know that the United States at this moment are engaged in a war of enormous dimensions, — that the occasion of a war with Great Britain has again and again arisen,[1] and may at any time in the future again arise. We cannot foresee what may be the result; we cannot say but that the two nations may drift into a war, as other nations have done before. It would then be too late, when war had commenced, to think of measures for strengthening ourselves, or to begin negotiations for a union with the sister Provinces. 4. At this moment, in consequence of the ill-feeling which has arisen between England and the United States, — a feeling of which Canada was not the cause, — in consequence of the

irritation which now exists, owing to the unhappy state of affairs on this continent, the Reciprocity Treaty, it seems probable, is about to be brought to an end; our trade is hampered by the passport system, and at any moment we may be deprived of permission to carry our goods through United States channels; the bonded goods system may be done away with, and the winter trade through the United States put an end to. Our merchants may be obliged to return to the old system of bringing in during the summer months the supplies for the whole year. 5. With ourselves already threatened, with our trade interrupted, with our intercourse, political and commercial, destroyed, if we do not take warning now, when we have the opportunity, and, while one avenue is threatened to be closed, open another by taking advantage of the present arrangement[2] and the desire of the Lower Provinces to draw closer the alliance between us, we may suffer commercial and political disadvantages that it may take long for us to overcome. 6. The Conference having come to the conclusion that a legislative union, pure and simple, was impracticable, our next attempt was to form a government upon federal principles, which would give to the general government the strength of a legislative and administrative union, while at the same time it preserved that liberty of action for the different sections which is allowed by a federal union. And I am strong in the belief that we have hit upon the happy medium in those resolutions, and that we have formed a scheme of government which unites the advantages of both, giving us the strength of a legislative union and the sectional freedom of a federal union, with protection to local interests. 7. In the first place, by a resolution which meets with the universal approval of the people of this country, we have

provided that for all time to come, so far as we can legislate for the future, we shall have as the head of the executive power, the sovereign of Great Britain. No one can look into futurity and say what will be the destiny of this country. Changes come over nations and peoples in the course of ages. But, so far as we can legislate, we provide that, for all time to come, the sovereign of Great Britain shall be the sovereign of British North America. I believe that it is of the utmost importance to have that principle recognized, so that we shall have a sovereign who is placed above the region of party, — to whom all parties look up, — who is not elevated by the action of one party nor depressed by the action of another, — who is the common head and sovereign of all. 8. In the constitution we propose to continue the system of responsible government, which has existed in this Province since 1841, and which has long prevailed in the mother country. With us the sovereign, or in this country the representative of the sovereign, can act only on the advice of his ministers, those ministers being responsible to the people through Parliament. One argument, but not a strong one, has been used against this Confederation, that it is an advance towards independence. Some are apprehensive that the very fact of our forming this union will hasten the time when we shall be severed from the mother country. I have no apprehension of that kind. I believe it will have the contrary effect. 9. I believe that as we grow stronger, that as it is felt in England we have become a people, able from our union, our strength, our population, and the development of our resources to take our position among the nations of the world, she will be less willing to part with us than she would be now, when we are broken up into a number of insignifi-

cant colonies, subject to attack piecemeal without any concerted action or common organization of defence. When this union takes place, we shall be at the outset no inconsiderable people. We find ourselves with a population approaching four millions of souls. Such a population in Europe would make a second, or at least a third, rate power. 10. And with rapidly increasing numbers, — for I am satisfied that under this union our population will increase in a still greater ratio than ever before, — with increased credit, with a higher position in the eyes of Europe, with the increased security we can offer to emigrants, who would naturally prefer to seek a new home in what is known to them as a great country than in any one little colony or another, — with all this, I am satisfied that, great as has been our increase in the last twenty-five years since the union between Upper and Lower Canada, our future progress during the next quarter of a century will be vastly greater. And when, by means of this rapid increase, we become a nation of eight or nine millions of inhabitants, our alliance will be worthy of being sought by the great nations of the earth. 11. I am proud to believe that our desire for a permanent alliance will be reciprocated in England. I know that there is a party in England — but it is inconsiderable in numbers, though strong in intellect and power — which speaks of the desirability of getting rid of the colonies; but I believe such is not the feeling of the statesmen and the people of England. I believe it will never be the deliberately expressed determination of the government of Great Britain. The colonies are now in a transition state. Gradually a different colonial system is being developed — and it will become, year by year, less a case of dependence on our part and of overruling protection on the part of the mother country,

and more a case of a healthy and cordial alliance. 12. We all feel the advantages we derive from our connection with England. So long as that alliance is maintained, we enjoy, under her protection, the privileges of constitutional liberty according to the British system. We shall enjoy here that which is the great test of constitutional freedom, — we shall have the rights of the minority respected. In all countries the rights of the majority take care of themselves, but it is only in countries like England, enjoying constitutional liberty, and safe from the tyranny of a single despot or of an unbridled democracy, that the rights of minorities are regarded. 13. So long, too, as we form a portion of the British Empire, we shall have the example of her free institutions, of the high standard of the character of her statesmen and public men, of the purity of her legislation, and the upright administration of her laws. In this younger country one great advantage of our connection with Great Britain will be, that, under her auspices, inspired by her example, a portion of her empire, our public men will be actuated by principles similar to those which actuate the statesmen at home. These, although not material, physical benefits, of which you can make an arithmetical calculation, are of such overwhelming advantage to our future interests and standing as a nation, that to obtain them is well worthy of any sacrifices we may be called upon to make, and the people of this country are ready to make them.

Sir John A. Macdonald.

NOTE.

1. The reference is to the war between the Northern and the Southern States, 1861–65. One occurrence that threatened war between Great Britain and the United States was the forcible removal of two Southerners from a British vessel on the high seas by a United States man-of-war.

AMERICAN FUGITIVE SLAVE BILL

Part of an Address delivered at the first anniversary of the Canadian Antislavery Society in Toronto, March, 1852. Fortunately the law so strongly condemned does not now exist in the United States.

1. I recollect when I was a very young man I used to think that, if I had ever to speak before such an audience as this, I would choose African Slavery as my theme, before any other topic. The subject seemed to afford the widest scope for rhetoric, and for fervid appeals to the best of human sympathies. These thoughts, sir, arose far from here, while slavery was a thing at a distance, while the horrors of the system were unrealized, while the mind received it as a tale and discussed it as a principle. 2. But when you have mingled with the thing itself, when you have encountered the atrocities of the system, when you have seen three millions of human beings held as chattels by their Christian countrymen, when you have seen the free institutions, the free press, and the free pulpit of America linked in the unrighteous task of upholding the traffic, — when you have realized the manacle and the lash and the slot-hound, — you think no more of rhetoric. The mind stands appalled at the monstrous iniquity: mere words lose their meaning, and facts, cold facts, are felt to be the only fit argument. 3. I am to speak of the Fugitive Slave Bill of 1851, and if we search the statute-books of the world, I know not where we shall find its parallel. Let me recite the provisions of this infamous enactment. In the first place, it enabled the slaveholder or his agent to seize his "chattel" wherever he found him, *without any warrant*. You cannot arrest a criminal of the deepest dye without a warrant, but a man who is guilty of no crime but his color can be

seized at any moment without any form of law. In the next place, this law forbids the freemen of the North from showing charity to the refugee. What a mockery of liberty! Punish a man as a criminal, in the American republic, because he sympathizes with a bondsman and helps him to be free! 4. Another remarkable feature of this bill is, that the carrying out of its provisions was taken from the State authority, and handed over to the Federal officers. The slaveholders felt that their only safety was in placing the trust in the hands of men looking to Washington for their orders. The United States Marshals were made the chief man-catchers of their respective districts, — the United States Court Commissioners the judges in all cases arising under the bill. And these functionaries are bound by the severest penalties to carry out the law. 5. In all other cases, civil or criminal, sheriffs and other public officers are held responsible only for their fidelity and diligence; it was left for the Fugitive Bill to punish a man for that which he did not do and could not avert. Then, again, the bill compels the free Northerners to turn out at the bidding of any Southern miscreant who claims a colored person for his property, and to aid in hunting him down like a beast of prey, and sending him back to bondage. Let not Northerners speak of their *free* States after this: they have no free States. Theirs is the most degrading of slavery. Professing to abjure the atrocious system, for the sake of their dollars, they permit the South to put its insulting foot upon their necks, they allow their free homesteads to be made the hunting-ground of the man-stealer. 6. The bold villany of the South is not half so revolting as the despicable subserviency of the North. Tell me no more of your free Northern States. Did the true spirit of

liberty exist, an enactment such as this would be laughed to scorn, and an attempt to carry it out would rouse a feeling at the North which would shake the foundations of the "peculiar institution." No, the full guilt of the law rests upon the North. Labored arguments are constantly coming from evangelical Northern pulpits palliating the system, —nice criticisms on God's law in regard to it; but for my part I cannot listen to such arguments; I sweep aside all such theological humbug and find a solution of the whole question in the grand **Christian rule,** "*Do as you would be done by.*"

7. The question is often put, What have we in Canada to do with American slavery? Sir, we have everything to do with it. It is a question of humanity, and no man has a right to refuse his aid, whatever it may be, in ameliorating the woes of his fellow-man. It is a question of Christianity, and no Christian can have a pure conscience who hesitates to lift his voice against a system which, under the sanction of a Christian altar, sets at defiance every principle of Christianity. We have to do with it on the score of self-protection. The leprosy of the atrocious system affects all around it; it leavens the thoughts, the feelings, the institutions, of the people who touch it. It is a barrier to the spread of liberal principles. 8 Who can talk gravely of liberty and equality in the States, while slavery exists? Every intelligent American who professes to be a Christian and upholds slavery, is committed to a glaring infidelity which must lead him continually astray, in trying to square with it his every-day conduct. We are alongside of this great evil; our people mingle with it; we are affected by it now, and every day enhances the evil. In self protection, then, we are bound to use every effort for its abolition, that our people may

not be contaminated by its withering moral influence. 9. And, sir, there is another reason why we have to do with slavery. We are in the habit of calling the people of the United States "the Americans." But we, too, are Americans; on us as well as on them lies the duty of preserving the honor of this continent. On us, as on them, rests the noble trust of shielding free institutions from the reproach of modern tyrants. Who that looks at Europe — given over to the despots, and with but one little island yet left to uphold the flag of freedom — can reflect without emotion that the great republic of this continent nurtures a despotism more base than any other. 10. How crushingly the upholders of tyranny in other lands must turn on the friends of liberty! Look at the American republic," they must say, "proclaiming all men to be born free and equal, and keeping nearly four millions of slaves in the most cruel bondage." The people of Canada are truly free. We have no slaves; all men are alike in the eye of justice. Long may it be so; and it is our duty to raise our voices as freemen against a system which brings so foul a blot on the cause of popular liberty. 11. Our neighbors are wont to boast that monarchy will be swept from this continent: let our effort be that slavery shall be driven from it, that tyranny shall here find not a foothold. Go to the very den of pauper misery in England, go to the bleakest of Scotland's wild rocks, go to the most barren wilderness of Ireland, and ask the famished native, if you can find him, to exchange his starving liberty for well-fed slavery, and observe his answer. He will resent your offer with indignation, and tell you that you may feed him, but so you do your horses, and they are horses still; and that liberty to a Briton, poor and hungry though he be, is liberty still. *Hon. George Brown.*

GEMS FROM GREAT AUTHORS.

An educated man stands, as it were, in the midst of a boundless arsenal and magazine, filled with all the weapons and engines which man's skill has been able to devise, from the earliest time: and he works, accordingly, with a strength borrowed from all past ages.

Carlyle.

First I would have thee cherish truth,
As leading star in virtue's train;
Folly may pass, nor tarnish youth,
But falsehood leaves a stain. *Eliza Cook.*

Allowing the performance of an honorable action to be attended with labor, the labor is soon over, but the honor is immortal: whereas, should even pleasure wait on the commission of what is dishonorable, the pleasure is soon gone, but the dishonor is eternal. *Stewart.*

The drying up a single tear has more
Of honest fame, than shedding seas of gore.

Byron.

He prayeth best, who loveth best
All things, both great and small;
For the dear God who loveth us,
He made and loveth all. *Coleridge.*

A *man* is not to be relieved as your horse or dog may be; it must be done with a sentiment of respect. I would that a man should be pained by having a fellow-being approach him in the humble attitude of a beggar. I would that a flush of ingenuous and sympathizing shame should overspread the brow of the giver. *Dewey.*

Ah! as I listened with a heart forlorn,
The pulses of my being beat anew;
And even as life returns upon the drowned,
Life's joy rekindling roused a throng of pains;—
Keen pangs of Love, awakening as a babe
Turbulent, with an outcry in the heart;
And fears self-willed, that shunned the eye of hope;
And hope that scarce would know itself from fear;
Sense of past youth, and manhood come in vain,
And genius given and knowledge won in vain;
And all which I had culled in wood-walks wild,
And all which patient toil had reared, and all
Commune with thee had opened out, but flowers
Strewed on my corse, for the selfsame grave.

Coleridge.

For if there be a human tear
From passion's dross refined and clear,
'T is that which pious parents shed
Upon a duteous daughter's head. *Scott.*

The mind has a certain vegetative power, which cannot be wholly idle. If it is not laid out and cultivated into a beautiful garden, it will of itself shoot up in weeds or flowers of a wild growth. *Spectator.*

No entertainment is so cheap as reading, nor any pleasure so lasting. *Montague.*

Love Virtue: she alone is free;
She can teach ye how to climb
Higher than the sphery chime;
Or if Virtue feeble were,
Heaven itself would stoop to her. *Milton.*

FOREIGN ELEMENTS IN THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

Norman-French and Latin.

1. The Northmen or Normans were warriors who came from the North of Europe, or Scandinavia. Pressing always farther and farther south, they at length made their way, in 876, to the rich valley of the Seine, which they wrested from its possessors. This band of Northmen was led by Rolf, or Rollo, who was called the *Ganger*, because he was so tall that the small Norwegian ponies could not carry him, as his legs trailed upon the ground. 2. These brave and strong Northmen brought with them their own rough Norwegian or Norsk speech; but after settling in the valley of the Seine, which took from them its name of Normandy, they gradually dropped their own language, and acquired the habit of using French. But this French was not the same as that which we now find in French books, but a kind of French which has received the name of Norman-French. 3. Edward the Confessor was educated at this Norman court, — at the court of the Duke of Normandy; and on his accession to the English Crown, in 1042, he introduced the Norman French language and manners into his own English court at Westminster. Then, in 1066, Duke William of Normandy, who declared that Edward had appointed him heir to the crown, came over to England, fought the battle of Senlac, or Hastings, defeated Harold, and put his Normans in possession of the land, and of every important office in church and state. With his Normans he also introduced Norman French. 4. This language became the language of all courts of law in England, of all military affairs, of the higher priests in the Church: it was also the language which boys in school were compelled to translate their Latin into and to speak in. This state of things lasted for nearly three hundred years, — from 1066 till 1362, — when Edward III. enacted a law permitting cases in court to be pleaded in English. 5. But during these three hundred years Englishmen had been learning and using a large number of French words; and thus many of these words took a place in our language, and have remained with us. Even country people tried to pick up

a few French phrases, and did their best to "speke French for to be more ytold of." Thus it is that there are in our English tongue large numbers of Norman-French words. 6. These words, as has already been said, have not the same form — are not spelled in the same way — as modern French words. Thus, from the Latin *populus* (which gives us our words *popular*, *population*, and others) comes the Norman-French *people*, which in Parisian French is *peuple ;* while the Parisian French *chaise* was in Norman-French written *chaire*, and *loisir* was written *leysir* — and hence our word *leisure*. Thus we can see that, in certain words, Norman-French prefers an *o* to a *u*, an *r* to an *s*, and an *e* to an *o*.

7. The nature of the words contributed to our language by the Norman-French is very significant, and well worthy of note. The simple words for ordinary objects are always English, like *heaven*, *sky*, *sun*, *moon*, and *star ;* but *season*, *autumn*, *hour*, and *minute* are French. The common names for common animals are English, as *fox*, *hound*, *deer ;* but the general (or generic) names, *animal*, *beast*, etc., are French. 8. The names for common things in or about an ordinary house are English, like *stool*, *beam*, *wall*, *fireside*, *hearth ;* but the terms for grander objects, as *palace*, *cabinet*, *curtain*, *goblet*, are French. There is not a single French name for any tool employed in agriculture, — *plough*, *harrow*, *spade*, *flail*, and many more, are pure English. The names for the simpler articles of dress are English, as *woollen shirt*, *hood*, *hat*, *band*, *hose ;* but the abstract and the higher terms are Norman-French, as *garment*, *dress*, *costume*, *armor*, *mail*, and *lace*. 9. Wamba, the country clown in "Ivanhoe," notices that when the animals we eat are alive they have English or Saxon names, but when they are served up at table they take fine Norman names. Thus we have *sheep* and *mutton*, *ox* and *beef*, *calf* and *veal*, *fowl* and *pullet*. The names of things about a ship — as *keel*, *oar*, *sail*, *stern*, *deck*, *mast* — are all English; while the Norman-French contributed only one, the significant name of the *prow*, seated on which the Norman-French invader may be imagined devouring with his eyes the land he was about to conquer. 10. The simpler and well-known names of relatives are all English, — *father*, *mother*, *sister*, *brother*, *son*, and *daughter :* while *family*, *uncle*, *aunt*, *consort*, *ancestors*, and others, are French. The titles of high rank are English, if the dignities existed among the English

before the Normans came, such as *king*, *queen*, *lord*, and *lady*: but *duke*, *marquis*, *viscount*, and the general terms, *dignity*, *peer*, *esquire*, and many others, are French. Again, of names that are names of state only *one* is English, though that one is of great importance, — *kingdom*: but *state*, *court*, *constitution*, *treaty*, *navy*, *army*, and *empire* are all French, because it was under their rule that these things, along with their names, were introduced.

11. The fact that an English word has come into our possession in two different ways — first, by the Norman-French gate (or Latin at second hand, L.[2]), and secondly, by the Latin gate (or Latin at first-hand, L.[1]) - gives rise to the phenomenon of DOUBLETS or BY-FORMS. Thus we have *fact* and *feat* as different forms of the Latin *factum*, a deed, and now different words. Thus also we have: —

Latin.	L.[1]	L.[2] (or N.-Fr.)
Benedictionem	Benediction	Benison
Captivus	Captive	Caitiff
Conceptionem	Conception	Conceit
Defectus	Defect	Defeat
Exemplum	Example	Sample
Factum	Fact	Feat
Factionem	Faction	Fashion
Fabrica	Fabric	Forge
Fragilis	Fragile	Frail
Legalis	Legal	Loyal
Pungentem	Pungent	Poignant
Regalis	Regal	Royal
Senior	Senior	Sir
Separare	Separate	Sever
Traditionem	Tradition	Treason

The following is a list of the most important

NORMAN-FRENCH WORDS,*

WITH SOME EXPLANATION OF THEIR DERIVATIONS.

(1) Abandon, from the French *à bandon*, at liberty, permission. Hence *abandon* means now *to give up*, to leave at liberty.

* A few ordinary French words have been mixed with them.

(2) **Acate.** — This was the Norman-French form of the French *acheter*, to buy (from Low Latin *adcaptare*, to seize). We have lost it; but it survives in the word *cat* in the story of "Whittington and his Cat." Whittington, a Lord Mayor of London, made himself rich by his *acate*, — that is, his purchases, or his commerce.

(3) **Alloy**, to mix one metal with another. From French *à le loi*, according to law. (*Loi* is from Latin *lex*, *leg-is*, a law.)

(4) **Ancestor**, from Old French *ancestre* (French *ancêtre*), from Latin *antecessor*, a person who goes before.

(5) **Approach**, from French *approcher;* from Low Latin *appropiare*, to come near (Latin *prope*, hence English *propinquity*).

(6) **Arrive**, from French *arriver*, to arrive, from Low Latin *adripare*, to get to the bank (*ripa*). *Arrive* — the noun — in Old English meant a landing of troops. Thus Chaucer, who lived in the fourteenth century, says of his knight:

"At many a noble *arrive* had he been."

[The *p* in *ripa* has been changed into *v* in *arrive*, both being lip-letters or labials.]

(7) **Artillery**, from French *artillerie*, weapons of war (from Latin *ars*, art). In the First Book of Samuel, chap. xx. 40, the *bow and arrows*, carried by the servant of Jonathan, are called *artillery*.

(8) **Besiege**, from French *assiéger;* from Low Latin *assedíare* (from Latin *sedes*, seat), to take a seat in front of. The word is French with an English prefix, *be*.

(9) **Beverage**, from Old French *borraige* (*bevre*, to drink); from Low Latin *biberare* (Latin *bibere*, to drink), to keep drinking.

(10) **Biscuit**, French *biscuit;* from Latin *bis*, twice, and *coctus*, cooked. (From *coctus*, we have *concoct*, *decoction*, etc.)

(11) **Cage**, French *caye*, a cage; from Latin *cavea*, a cave.

(12) **Canal**, French *canal*, a pipe; from Latin *canalis*, a water-pipe, from *canna*, a reed. (From the same Latin word come *cannon* and *channel*, the latter of which is a by-form or doublet of *canal*.

(13) **Captain**, French *capitaine;* from Low Latin *capitaneus;* from Latin *caput*, the head. (From the same word comes *capital*.)

(14) **Chamber**, French *chambre*, from Latin *camera*, a room. (Hence also *comrade*, from French *camerade*, a person who occupies *the same room*.) The *b* comes in as a cushion between the two liquid letters *m* and *r*: as in *semblance* from *similis*.

(15) **Chancellor**, from French *chancelier*; from Latin *cancellarius*. The cross-barred gratings which divided the judgment-seat of a judge from the people were called *cancelli*, from *cancer*, a crab, *cancellus*, a little crab, — because the cross-bars were like the claws of crabs.

(16) **Chief**, French *chef*; Latin *caput*, the head. (The *p* is softened into *f*, both being lip-letters or labials. *Cap* is a doublet or by-form of *chef*. Hence also *achieve*, to bring to a *chef*, or head.) See *Captain*.

(17) **Chivalry**, French *cheval*; from Low Latin *caballus*, a horse (*b* and *v* are both lip-letters or labials). In the fourteenth century a military expedition on horseback was called a *chevauchée*; hence, probably, by corruption, the battle of *Chevy Chase*. (There is no such place either in England or Scotland as *Chevy Chase*.)

(18) **Damsel**, French *demoiselle*, a little lady; from French *dame*; from Latin *domina*, a lady. (The Latin *mea domina*, my lady, became in French *madame*, in English *ma'am*, and it has been pared down to *'m* in *Yes'm!* Thus two words of nine letters have been cut down in process of time to *m*.)

(19) **Danger**, French *danger*; from Low Latin *dominiarium* dominion or power. In former times *danger* meant *power*. Thus the phrase went "The debtor is in the creditor's *danger*." In "The Merchant of Venice," Act IV., Sc. 1, Portia says to Antonio, the merchant, speaking of Shylock, "You stand within his danger, do you not?"

(20) **Escape**, from Old French *escaper* (modern French, *échapper*), to get out of the *cape* of a cloak; from Italian *cappa*, a robe.

(21) **Fay**, Norman-French form of French *Fée*, from Low Latin *Fata*, a goddess who presided over our *fate* or destiny. *Fate* is from Latin *fatum* = the thing spoken and not to be recalled: from *fari*, to speak. The same root gives *fable*; *fame* (= talk about a person), *infamous*; *infant* (= a non-speaker).

(22) **Feat**, Norman-French form of French *fait*; Latin *factum*, a thing done. (*Fact* is a doublet of *feat*; but *fact* comes directly from Latin *factum*.)

(23) **Forest**, French *forêt*, from Low Latin *forestis*, an open piece of ground; from Latin *foris*, out of doors. (A *forest* does not therefore necessarily include *trees* in the meaning of it. The old definition is "forestis is a place where the wild beasts are not shut in; a park (*parcus*), where they are shut in.")

(24) **Frank**, French *franc*, free. (There was a powerful tribe of Germans, called by Cæsar Franconanni, who invaded Gaul and gave the name of *France* to it. Their name has also been given to the manly quality of openness, *frank;* and to the right and freedom of voting, *franchise*. Hence also *enfranchise*.)

(25) **Fuel**, from Norman-French *fuayl*, French *feu*; from Latin *focus*, for a hearth or fireplace. (The guttural hard *c* has gradually vanished.)

(26) **Gauntlet**, French *gantelet*, from French *gant*, a glove; from Old Swedish *wanta*, a glove. (The Norman-French people have never been able to pronounce a *w*, and have hence been compelled to change it into *g* or *gu*. Thus the English *ward* has become *guardian; ward, guard; wise* (the noun), *guise; wile, guile; war, guerre;* and *William, Guillaume*.)

(27) **Gawky**, from French *gauche*, left hand. (A gawky person is one who uses his right hand as if it were his left. The French say of an Englishman that "both his hands are left hands, and all his fingers are thumbs.")

(28) **Homage**, spelled in French *hommage*, the state of being the *man* (*homme*), or servant, of another. (The vassal knelt down before his lord, placed his hands together between the hands of his lord, and said, "I become your man.")

(29) **Hotel**, Old French *hostel*; Latin *hospitale*, a large house (from Latin *hospes*, a host or guest). The words *hotel, hospital*, and *hospice* (an Alpine convent used as an inn) are all from the same root. (The keeper of a *hostel* was called the *hosteller*, now changed into *ostler*.)

(30) Jewel, from Old French *joel* (French *joyau*): a diminutive of the French *joie*, in the sense of *trinket*. Latin *gaudia*. (The guttural *c* has vanished.)

(31) Journey, from French *jour*, a day: from Latin *dies*. (*Jour* is derived from the Latin *dies*, and yet there is not a letter in the one that is in the other. The steps are *dies*; adjective, *diurnus*, daily; *jorn* (like Italian *giorno*, a day); *jor*; *jour*.) From the same root come *journal* and *journeyman*.

(32) Judge, French *juge*; Latin *judicem* (= *jus-dic-s*, from *jus*, right, and *dico*, I say. = a person who *utters right* or *law*).

(33) Leisure, Norman-French *leysir* (French *loysir*); from Latin *licēre*, to be lawful (not to work).

(34) Loyal, French *loyal*; from Latin *legalis*, according to law. (The hard *g* has vanished into a *y*. The Norman-French form was *leal*, still found in Scotland. So *regal* was in Norman-French *real* (hence *realm*, *Mont-real*), and *fidelity* was *fealty*.)

(35) Manage, from French *ménage*, "government of a horse"; Old French *mesnage* and *maisnage*; from Latin *manus*, the hand.

(36) March, French *marcher*, to walk or *stamp* with the feet; from Low Latin *marcare*, to hammer, from *marcus*, a hammer.

(37) Marquis (or *Marquess*), Old French *marchis*; from Low Latin *marchensis*, a governor set over the marches or limits of the Empire in the time of Charlemagne. (This word *march* or *mark* is not to be confounded with *march* in 36. It is really a German word which has passed over into French. It came also to mean *country*. Thus *Finnmark* is the country of the Finns, *Denmark*, the country of the Danes; and so on.)

(38) Master, Old French *maistre* (French *maître*); Latin *magister*, from *mag-nus*, great. (It is opposed to *minister*, formerly *minuster*, a smaller man or servant.)

(39) Mayor, a French form of the Latin *major*, greater, from *magnus*, great. (The hard *g* is modified into *j*, and then into *y*.)

(40) Minstrel, from Old French *menestrel*; Low Latin *ministrellus*, a diminutive of *minister*, a servant. (The Latin word used in arithmetic, *minus*, less, gives *minuster*, afterwards *minister*, as opposed to *magister*, from *mag-nus*, great.)

(41) **Number**, from French *nombre*; from Latin *numerus* (which gives *numerous*, *numeration*, etc.). From the same root come *numerous*, *innumerable*, and many others. (The *b* in number is inserted as a cushion between the two liquids *m* and *r*. Cf. *similar* and *semblance*; *dissimilar* and *dissemble*. Sometimes *d* is employed for the same purpose, as in *thunder*, from Old English *thunor*.)

(42) **Orange**, from the Spanish *naranja*, from Persian *naranj*. We derived our word *orange* from the French word *orange*, which ought to be *narange*. But it was mistakenly supposed to be derived from the Latin word *aurum*, gold (in French *or*), and hence to mean golden fruit. The dropping of the *n* may be compared with our word *an adder*, which was originally *a nadder; an apron*, which was *a naperon*.

(43) **Orphan**, from Old French *orphanin* (modern French *orphelin*); from Latin *orphanus*, destitute.

(44) **Overture**, an opening or beginning, from Old French *overir* (modern French *ouvrir*), to open; Latin *aperire*. From the same root come *aperture*, *April* (the *opening* month), etc.

(45) **Palace**, from French *palais*; Latin *palatium*, a palace. (But originally *palatium* meant a large house built by the Emperor Augustus on the Mons Palatinus, one of the seven hills of Rome. The word *Palatium* itself comes from the name of an old Latin pastoral god, *Pales*, the protector of sheep and shepherds.)

(46) **Palfrey**, from Provençal or Southern French *palafroi*; from Low Latin *paraveredus*, a post-horse or spare horse.

(47) **Parliament**, from French *parler*, to speak; Old French *paroler*; Low Latin *parabolare*, to *tell* or *relate* (a parable). The same root gives *parley*, a short conference in war; *parlor*, a room for talking in. (Just as *boudoir* originally meant a room for *sulking in*, from *bouder*, to pout.)

(48) **Pay**, from French *payer*; from Latin *pacare*, to bring to peace (*pax* = *pac-s*). The guttural *c* gradually vanished. (The same idea is contained in the word *acquit* and *quittance*, which comes from Latin *quies*, rest.)

(49) Peasant, from Norman-French *peasan* (modern French *paysan*); from Low Latin *pagensis*, the inhabitant of a *pagus*, or country district. The final *t* is intrusive; as in *sound*, from French *son;* the vulgar *gownd*, etc. (The same Latin root gives *pagan*, as Christianity was first preached in towns, and came only late to the country districts, — an historical fact also contained in the word *heathen*, which originally meant a dweller on a *heath*.)

(50) People, from Norman-French *people* (modern French *peuple*); Latin *populus*, the people.

(51) Perfume, from French *parfum;* from Latin *fumus*, smoke. From the same root come *fume*, *fumigate*, etc.

(52) Poverty, from Norman-French *povre* (modern French *pauvreté*); Latin *paupertatem*. (The same root gives, at first hand from the Latin, *pauper* and *pauperism*.)

(53) Power, from French *pouvoir;* from Low Latin *potere* (Latin *posse*). (The change of the *s* into a double *r* or *w* is very common. Cf. Latin name *Vect-is* (or Isle of *Wight*; *vast* and *waste*, etc. From *potens* (the participle of *posse*), come *potent*, *impotent*, *omnipotent*, *potential*, etc.)

(54) Prairie, French *prairie;* Low Latin *prataria;* Latin *pratum*, a meadow.

(55) Province, French *province;* Latin *provincia*, a conquered country (from *vinco*, I conquer). The Romans called the South of France *Provincia*, and this fact gave it its more modern name of *Provence*.

(56) Prowess, from French *prouesse;* Latin *probus*, good. It hence came to mean *goodness in arms*. (From *probus* comes in a direct line *probity*.)

(57) Quarrel, from French *querelle;* Latin *querela*, a complaint. (From the same root comes *querulous*.)

(58) Quarry, from Norman-French *quarrer* (modern French *carrer*, to square); Latin *quadrare*, to square; from Latin *quatuor*, four. (This word must not be confounded with the word in Milton's line, "The eagle scents his *quarry* from afar." This latter word comes from the French *cuir*, the heart (Latin *cor*), and indicates the heart and entrails which were given to the dogs when the game had been run down.)

(59) **Rear**, from Old French *arrère* (modern French *arrière*); Latin *ad-retro*, behind. (This word must not be confounded with the purely English verb *rear*, which is a by-form or doublet of *rise*, and connected with *raise* and *rouse*.)

(60) **Reign**, from Norman-French *reigne* (modern French *règne*); from Latin *regnum*, a kingdom. (The root is *reg*, which appears in *reg-o* (I rule), *rex* (*reg-s*), etc.; and in the English *reg-ent*, *reg-ular*, *reg-ulation*, *regn-ant*, etc. This word has no connection with *sovereign*, which is only a corrupt and mistaken spelling of *sovran*, from Low Latin *superaneus*, above.)

(61) **Rein**, from French *rène;* from Low Latin *retina*, a bridle; from Latin *retinere*, to hold back. The same word gives *retain*, *retention*, *retentive*, etc.

(62) **Roll**, from French *rouler*, to roll or wheel; from Low Latin *rotulare*, to keep turning; from Latin *rota*, a wheel. The same word gives *rotation*, *roller*, *enroll*, etc.

(63) **Route**, French *route*, a road; Latin *rupta* (*via*, a way) *broken* or cut through the primeval forest. (From the same word comes *routine* = the following of a route; and *Rotten Row*, in Hyde Park, which was originally *Route au Roi* = the road for the king.)

(64) **Sage**, French *sage*, wise; Latin *sap-ere*, to taste, or to be wise. From the same root come *savor*, *savory* (Latin *sapor*).

(65) **Salary**, from French *salaire;* Latin *salarium*, an allowance made to the Roman soldiers for *sal*, salt. From the same root come *salad*, *sauce* (*u* for *l*, as in *mou*, *mol;* *vieux*, *vieil*, etc.), *sausage* (Low Latin *salsitia*), etc.

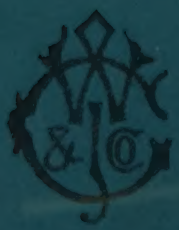
(66) **Sound**, from French *son*, Latin *sonus*, a sound. (For note on intrusive *d* see *Peasant*.) There are *four* words in the English language with the spelling *sound*. The others are: *sound*, from Old English *sund*, connected with Latin *sanus*, (which also gives *sane* and *sanity*); *sound*, a strait, connected with *swim*, and = what may be swum across; and hence a second meaning of this is the *swimming bladder* of a fish; and *sound*, from French *sonder*, Low Latin *subundare*, to dive under the wave.

(67) **Tailor**, from French *tailler*, to cut. A sword-smith was called *taille-fer* = cut-iron (from Latin *ferrum*, iron, from which comes the proper name *Telfer*).

(68) **Trouble**, from French *troubler*; Low Latin *turbulare*, to make muddy. (The letter *r* is a very shifty letter. Cf. *Three, third; turn, trundle; burn, brunt.*)

(69) **Turbot**, French *turbot*; from Latin *turbo*, a top, afterwards a turbot, from the likeness of the fish to the shape of a top. (Similarly the Greeks had the same word for a top and a turbot, — *rhombos.*)

(70) **Varlet**, from Old French *varlet*; from Low Latin *vassaletus*, a diminution of *vassalus*, a vassal. From the same root come *vassal*, *valet*, and *varasour*, an inferior vassal.

(71) **View**, Norman-French *view* (modern French *vue*); from Latin *vid-ere*, to see. (From the same Latin root come at first hand *vision*, *visible*; *provide*, *provision*; *supervision*; and, at second hand, through French *en-vy*, *interview*, etc.)

(72) **Villain**, from Old French *vilain*, a farmer; from Latin *villanus*, a farm-servant, or one attached to a *villa*, a farm. From the same root comes *village* (from Low Latin *villaticum*, a collection of small farms). Milton calls barn-door fowl *villatic fowl.*